

DRILL AND CEREMONIES

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**DECEMBER 1986
HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

FIELD MANUAL
NO. 22-5

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 8 December 1986

DRILL AND CEREMONIES

CONTENTS

	Page
Preface	ii
Foreword	iii
CHAPTER 1. Drill Instruction	1-1
2. Commands and the Command Voice	2-1
3. Individual Drill	3-1
4. Individual Drill with Weapons	4-1
5. Squad Drill	5-1
6. Platoon Drill	6-1
7. Company Drill	7-1
8. Battalion and Brigade Formation	8-1
9. Ceremonies	9-1
APPENDIX A. Saluting	A-1
B. Symbols	B-1
C. Manual of the Guidon	C-1
D. Mounted Drill	D-1
E. Flags and Colors	E-1
F. Manual of Arms — M249E1 Squad Automatic Weapon	F-1
G. Manual of Arms — M14 and M14A1 Rifles	G-1
H. Manual of Arms — Shotgun (Riot)	H-1
I. Manual of Arms — Automatic Pistols	I-1
J. Manual of Arms — Revolver	J-1
K. Manual of Arms — Saber and Sword	K-1
GLOSSARY	Glossary-1
REFERENCES	References-1
INDEX	Index-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: 'Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.'

*This publication supersedes FM 22-5, 8 October 1984.

Preface

This field manual provides guidance for Armywide uniformity in the conduct of drill and ceremonies. It includes methods of instructing drill, teaching techniques, individual and unit drill, manual of arms for infantry weapons, and various other aspects of basic drill instruction.

This manual is designed for use by soldiers of all military occupational skills, to include the new soldier in the initial entry training environment. Since exact procedures covering all situations or eventualities pertaining to drill and ceremonies cannot be foreseen, commanders may find it necessary to adjust the procedures to local conditions. However, with the view toward maintaining consistency throughout the Army, the procedures prescribed herein should be adhered to as closely as possible.

Personnel preparing to give drill instruction must be thoroughly familiar with Chapters 1 through 5 before attempting to teach material in Chapters 6 and 7.

For ease in distinguishing a preparatory command from a command of execution, the commands of execution are printed in **BOLD CAP** letters and preparatory commands are printed in ***Bold Italic*** letters. Reference to positions and movements are printed in *italics*.

A reference diagram for symbols used in illustrations appears in Appendix B.

AR 670-1 should be used as a reference for the proper wearing of uniforms and insignia.

Users of this manual are encouraged to submit recommendations to improve the publication. Comments should be keyed to the page, paragraph, and line(s) of the text where a change is recommended. Reasons should be provided for each comment to insure understanding and complete evaluation. Comments should be prepared using DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forwarded to the Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-I-V, Fort Benning, Georgia 31905-5000.

Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine gender is used, both men and women are included.

Foreword

“Gentlemen: you have now reached the last point. If anyone of you doesn’t mean business let him say so now. An hour from now will be too late to back out. Once in, you ’ve got to see it through. You’ve got to perform without flinching whatever duty is assigned you, regardless of the difficulty or the danger attending it. If it is garrison duty, you must attend to it. If it is meeting fever, you must be willing. If it is the closest kind of fighting, anxious for it. You must know how to ride, how to shoot, how to live in the open. Absolute obedience to every command is your first lesson. No matter what comes you mustn’t squeal. Think it over — all of you. If any man wishes to withdraw he will be gladly excused, for others are ready to take his place.”

Theodore Roosevelt, Remarks to Recruits, 1898

PURPOSE

The purpose of drill is to:

- Enable a commander to move his unit from one place to another in an orderly manner.
- Aid in disciplinary training by instilling habits of precision and response to the leader’s orders.
- Provide a means, through ceremonies, of enhancing the morale of troops, developing the spirit of cohesion, and presenting traditional, interesting and well-executed military parades.
- Provide for the development of all soldiers in the practice of commanding troops.

History

Military history reveals that armies throughout the world have participated in some form of drill. The primary value of drill historically has been to prepare troops for battle. For the most part, the drill procedures practiced have been identical to the tactical maneuvers employed on the battlefield. Drill has enabled commanders to quickly move their forces from one point to another, mass their forces into a battle formation that afforded maximum firepower, and maneuver those forces as the situation developed.

In 1775, when this country was striving for independence and existence, the nation’s leaders were confronted with the problem of not only establishing a government but also of organizing an army that was already engaged in war. From the “shot heard around the world,” on 19 April 1775, until Valley Forge in 1778, revolutionary forces were little more than a group of civilians fighting Indian-style against well-trained, highly disciplined British Redcoats. For three years, General George Washington’s troops had endured many hardships—lack of funds, rations, clothing, and equipment. In addition, they had suffered loss after loss to the superior British forces. These hardships and losses mostly stemmed from the lack of a military

atmosphere in country. Thus, an army was created with little or no organization, control, discipline, or teamwork.

Recognizing the crisis, General Washington, through Benjamin Franklin, the American Ambassador to France, enlisted the aid of a Prussian officer, Baron Friedrich von Steuben. Upon his arrival at Valley Forge on 23 February 1778, von Steuben, a former staff officer with Frederick the Great, met an army of several thousand half-starved, wretched men in rags. He commented that a European army could not be kept together in such a state. To correct the conditions that prevailed, he set to work immediately and wrote drill movements and regulations at night and taught them the following day to a model company of 120 men selected from the line.

Discipline became a part of military life for these selected individuals as they learned to respond to command without hesitation. This new discipline instilled in the individual a sense of alertness, urgency, and attention to detail. Confidence in himself and his weapon grew as each man perfected the fifteen 1-second movements required to load and fire his musket. As the Americans mastered the art of drill, they began to work as a team and to develop a sense of pride in themselves and in their unit.

Watching this model company drill, observers were amazed to see how quickly and orderly the troops could be massed and maneuvered into different battle formations. Officers observed that organization, chain of command, and control were improved as each man had a specific place and task within the formation. Later, the members of the model company were distributed throughout the Army to teach drill. Through drill, they improved the overall effectiveness and efficiency of the Army.

To ensure continuity and uniformity, von Steuben, by then a major general and the Army Inspector General, wrote the first Army field manual in 1779, *The Regulations for the Order and Discipline of the Troops of the United States*, commonly referred to as the Blue Book. The drill procedures initiated at Valley Forge were not changed for 85 years, until the American Civil War, and many of the drill terms and procedures are in effect today.

Drill commands are about the same as at the time of the War of 1812, except that then the officers and noncommissioned officers began them by saying, "Take care to face to the right, right, face." Also, during the American revolutionary period, troops marched at a cadence of 76 steps a minute instead of the current cadence of 120 steps. Then units performed precise movement on the battlefield, and the army that could perform them best was often able to get behind the enemy, or on his flank, and thus beat him. Speed spoiled the winning exactness. Also, firearms did not shoot far or accurately in 1776, so troop formations could take more time to approach the enemy.

As armament and weaponry have improved, drill has had to adapt to new tactical concepts. Although the procedures taught in drill today are not normally employed on the battlefield, the objectives accomplished by drill — teamwork, confidence, pride, alertness, attention to detail, esprit de corps, and discipline — are just as important to the modern Army as they were to the Continental Army.

Military music

Origins

The earliest surviving pictorial, sculptured, and written records show musical or quasimusical instruments employed in connection with military activity for signaling during encampments, parades, and combat. Because the sounds were produced in the open air, the instruments have tended to be brass and percussion types. Oriental, Egyptian, Greek, Roman, and American Indian chronicles and pictorial remains show trumpets and drums of many varieties allied to soldiers and battles

Bugle Calls

These are used in US military service as the result of the Continental Army's contact with the soldiers and armies from Europe during the revolutionary period. After the American Revolution, many of the French (and English) bugle calls and drum beats were adopted by the United States Army.

Attention

This is taken from the British "Alarm," at which call the troops turned out under arms.

Adjutant's Call

This indicates that the adjutant is about to form the guard, battalion, or regiment.

To the Color

The old cavalry call, "To the Standard," in use from about 1835, was replaced by the present call of "To the Color."

National Anthem

"The Star-Spangled Banner" officially became the National Anthem by law on 3 March 1931, in title 36, United States Code 170.

Sound Off

The band, in place, plays "Sound Off" (three chords). It then moves forward and, changing direction while playing a stirring march, troops the line and marches past the soldiers in formation, then returns to its post. Upon halting, the band again plays three chords.

Retreat

It is the ceremony that pays honors to the national flag when it is lowered in the evening.

Official Army Song

The official song was formally dedicated by the Secretary of the Army on Veterans Day, 11 November 1956, and officially announced (AR 28-76) on 12 December 1957. In addition to standing while the National Anthem is played, Army personnel stand at attention whenever the official song is played. There is no Department of the Army directive in this regard; however, commanders, other officers, and other personnel can encourage the tribute to the Army by setting the example for others and standing at attention when the band plays “The Army Goes Rolling Along.”

CHAPTER 1

Drill Instructions

"Troops who march in an irregular and disorderly manner are always in great danger of being defeated. "

Vegetius: De Re Militari: A.D. 378

CONTENTS

Section I INSTRUCTIONAL METHODS

Paragraph	PAGE
1-1 General	1-1
1-2 Explanation	1-2
1-3 Demonstration	1-2
1-4 Practice	1-5

Section II INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUES

1-5 General	1-6
1-6 Formations	1-6
1-7 Instructors	1-6
1-8 Cadence Counting	1-7

Section I INSTRUCTIONAL METHODS

1-1. General

- a. The progress made by individuals and units in precise and unified action in drill is determined by the following:
 - (1) The methods of instruction and the thoroughness of the instructor.
 - (2) The organization of soldiers into units of the most effective instructional size.
- b. There are three methods of instruction used to teach drill to soldiers: step-by-step, talk-through, and by-the-numbers. The character of the particular movement being taught will indicate the most effective method to use. As a rule, marching movements are taught by using the step-by-step method. Movements that require numerous or simultaneous actions by an individual or unit are best taught by the talk-through method. Movements that have two or more counts are taught by using the by-the-numbers method.

- c. To ensure that a soldier develops satisfactory proficiency during the time allotted, and to ensure a complete and consistent presentation by the drill instructor, each movement (regardless of the method used) should be presented using three teaching stages: explanation, demonstration, and practice.

1-2. Explanation

- a. In the explanation stage, the instructor must:
 - (1) Give the name of the movement.
 - (2) Give the practical use for the movement.
 - (3) Give the command(s) for the movement and explain its elements: the preparatory command and the command of execution. He must also discuss the command(s) necessary to terminate the movement. (Supplementary commands are discussed where appropriate in the explanations.)
- b. This is how an instructor teaches a marching movement using the first teaching stage.

“Platoon, ATTENTION. AT EASE. The next movement (position), which I will name, explain, and have demonstrated, and which you will conduct practical work on, is the 30-inch step from the *halt*. This movement is used to *march* an element from point A to point B in a uniform manner. The command to execute this movement is **Forward, MARCH**. This is a two-part command, **Forward** being the preparatory command, and **MARCH** the command of execution. The command to terminate this movement is **HALT**. **HALT** is also a two-part command when preceded by a preparatory command such as **Squad**, or **Platoon**. I will use **Demonstrator** as the preparatory command and **HALT** as the command of execution. When given, these commands are as follows: **Forward, MARCH; Demonstrator, HALT.**”

1-3. Demonstration

NOTE: The instructor may demonstrate the movement himself, modifying his position when necessary to maintain eye-to-eye contact with personnel being instructed.

- a. **Step-by-Step Method of Instruction.** The explanation and demonstration are combined. The movements are taught one step at a time using the step-by-step method of instruction, as described in subparagraph (2).
 - (1) The instructor explains that on the command of execution, the demonstrator takes only one step and then stops in position until the command **Ready, STEP** (for the next step) is given. While the demonstrator is stopped in position, the instructor makes on-the-spot corrections and explains the actions to be taken on the next step. The instructor then has the demonstrator execute the movement at normal cadence.
 - (2) This is how an instructor teaches the demonstration stage when using the step-by-step method of instruction:
 - **“Demonstrator, POST.** I will use the step-by-step method of instruction. On the preparatory command **Forward** of **Forward, MARCH**, without

noticeable movement, shift the weight of the body onto the right foot. **Forward.”**

- “On the command of execution **MARCH** of **Forward, MARCH**, step forward 30 inches with the left foot. The head, eyes, and body remain as in the position of *attention*. The arms swing in natural motion, without exaggeration and without bending the elbows, about 9 inches straight to the front and 6 inches straight to the rear of the trouser seams. The fingers and thumbs are curled as in the position of *attention*, just barely clearing the trousers. **MARCH.”**
- “On the command of execution **STEP** of **Ready, STEP**, execute a 30-inch step with the trail foot. Once again, ensure that the head, eyes, and body remain as in the position of *attention*, and that the arms swing naturally, without exaggeration and without bending the elbows, about 9 inches straight to the front and 6 inches straight to the rear of the trouser seams. The fingers and thumbs are curled, as in the position of *attention*, barely clearing the trousers. **Ready, STEP**. Notice that there are two steps explained: one from the *halt* and one while *marching*.”
- “The command to terminate this movement is **HALT**. The preparatory command **Demonstrator** of **Demonstrator, HALT**, may be given as either foot strikes the marching surface. However, the command of execution **HALT** of **Demonstrator, HALT**, must be given the next time that same foot strikes the marching surface. The *halt* is executed in two counts.”
- “On the command of execution **STEP** of **Ready, STEP**, execute a 30-inch step with the trail foot. When that foot strikes the marching surface, the demonstrator will receive the preparatory command **Demonstrator** of **Demonstrator, HALT. Ready, STEP. Demonstrator. ”**
- “On the command of execution **STEP** of **Ready, STEP**, execute a 30-inch step with the trail foot. This is the intermediate (or thinking) step required between the preparatory command and the command of execution. **Ready, STEP.”**
- “On the command of execution **STEP** of **Ready, STEP**, execute a 30-inch step with the trail foot. When the foot strikes the marching surface, the demonstrator will receive the command of execution **HALT** of **Demonstrator, HALT. Ready, STEP. HALT**. The *halt* is executed in two counts.”
- “On the command of execution **STEP** of **Ready, STEP**, execute a 30-inch step with the trail foot, this being the additional step required after the command of execution. **Ready, STEP.”**
- “On the command of execution **STEP** of **Ready, STEP**, bring the trail foot alongside the lead foot, reassuming the position of *attention*, thus terminating this movement. **(Ready, STEP. RE-FORM.)** At normal cadence, this movement would look as follows: **Forward, MARCH. Demonstrator, HALT, AT EASE.”**

- “Platoon, what are your questions pertaining to this movement when executed at normal cadence or when using the step-by-step method of instruction? (Clarify all questions.)”
- **“Demonstrator, ATTENTION.** You will now become my assistant instructor. **FALL OUT.”**

NOTE: Notice that, when *marching*, there are five steps in the step-by-step method of instruction: 1 — preparatory command step; 2 — intermediate step; 3 — command of execution step; 4 — additional step; and 5 — execute the movement. ”

b. **Talk-Through Method of Instruction.** The explanation and demonstration are combined. Each movement or action by the individual is executed as it is orally described, as discussed in subparagraph (2).

- (1) The instructor simply tells the demonstrator how and what he wants him to do. The demonstrator executes the movement as the instructor describes it. Then the instructor has the demonstrator execute the movement at normal cadence.
- (2) This is how an instructor teaches the demonstration stage when using the talk-through method of instruction:
 - **“Demonstrator, POST.** I will use the talk-through method of instruction. On the command of execution **ATTENTION** or **FALL IN**, sharply bring the heels together and on line, with the toes forming a 45-degree angle. Rest the weight of the body equally on the heels and balls of both feet. The legs are straight without locking the knees; the body is erect; hips level; chest, lifted and arched; and shoulders, square and even. The head is square and erect, looking straight to the front. The chin is drawn in so that the axis of the neck and head is vertical. The arms hang straight without stiffness. The fingers are curled so that the tips of the thumbs are alongside and touching the first joint of the forefingers. Keep the thumbs straight along the seams of the trousers with the first joint of the fingers touching the trouser legs. Remain silent and do not move unless otherwise directed.”
 - **“AT EASE.** This position, executed at normal cadence, is as follows: **Demonstrator, ATTENTION. AT EASE. FALL IN. AT EASE.”**
 - “Platoon, what are your questions pertaining to the position of *attention* when executed at normal cadence or when executed using the talk-through method of instruction? (Clarify all questions.)”
 - **Demonstrator, ATTENTION.** You will be my assistant instructor, **FALL OUT.”**

NOTE: When teaching squad, platoon, or company drills, this method should be modified so that individuals are talked into position rather than through the position.

c. **By-the-Numbers Method of Instruction.** The explanation and demonstration are combined. Movements are explained and demonstrated one count at a time, as described in subparagraph (2).

- (1) The instructor has the demonstrator execute the movement by the-numbers

(one count at a time). The instructor then has the demonstrator execute the movement at normal cadence.

(2) This is how an instructor teaches the demonstration stage using the by-the-numbers method of instruction:

- **“Demonstrator, POST.** I will use the by-the-numbers method of instruction. *Port arms* from *order arms* is a two-count movement. On the command of execution **ARMS of Port, ARMS**, this being count one, grasp the barrel of the rifle with the right hand and raise the rifle diagonally across the body, ensuring that the right elbow remains down without strain. Simultaneously, grasp the rifle with the left hand at the handguard just forward of the sling, keeping the rifle about 4 inches from the belt. **By-the-numbers, Port, ARMS.”**
- “On count two, release the grasp of the rifle with the right hand and regasp the rifle at the small of the stock. Keep the rifle held diagonally across the body, about 4 inches from the belt, elbows drawn in at the sides, and ensure the right forearm is horizontal, thus assuming the position of *port arms*. **Ready, TWO.”**
- “*Order arms* from *port arms* is a three-count movement. On the command of execution **ARMS of Order, ARMS**, this being count one, release the grasp of the rifle with the right hand and move the right hand up and across the body, approaching the front sight assembly from the right front, and firmly grasp the barrel without moving the rifle. Ensure the right elbow remains down without strain. **Order, ARMS.”**
- “On count two, release the grasp of the rifle with the left hand, and with the right hand lower the rifle to the right side until it is about 1 inch off the marching surface. At the same time, guide the rifle into place with the left hand at the flash suppressor, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm facing the rear. **Ready, TWO.”**
- “On count three, sharply move the left hand to the left side as in the position of *attention* and, at the same time gently lower the rifle to the marching surface with the right hand, assuming the position of *order arms*. **Ready, THREE.”**
- “At normal cadence, these commands (movements) are as follows: **Without-the-numbers, Port, ARMS. Order, ARMS. AT EASE”**
- “Platoon, what are your questions pertaining to *port arms* from *order arms* and *order arms* from *port arms* when executed at normal cadence or when executed *by-the-numbers* ? (Clarify all questions.)”
- **“Demonstrator, ATTENTION.** You will be my assistant instructor. **FALL OUT.** (Notice that there is no **Ready, ONE** command. Also notice that a double preparatory command is given to execute and terminate the *by-the-numbers* method of instruction.)”

1-4. Practice

The practice stage is executed in the same manner as the demonstration stage except that the instructor uses the proper designator for the size of his element.

However, the instructor does not have his element execute the movement at normal cadence until his element has shown a satisfactory degree of proficiency executing the movement using the selected method of instruction.

Section II

INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUES

1-5. General

Basic drill instruction includes line and U-formations, stationary and moving cadence counts, and dedicated instruction to units and individuals.

1-6. Formations

- a. Instruction and practical work, in all phases of drill, can best be presented by using the U-formation or line formation. As a rule, stationary movements are taught using the U-formation; marching movements, to include squad, platoon, and company drills, are best taught from the line formation. Soldiers should be taught in the smallest formation possible to ensure individual attention; however, squad drill, whenever possible, should be taught to squad-size units, platoon drill to platoon-size units, and company drill to company-size units.
- b. The U-formation is formed by the instructor commanding ***First and second squads, FALL OUT*** (pause); ***U-formation, FALL IN***. On these commands, the third squad *stands fast*, and the first and second squads *fall out* and *fall in* facing each other so that the last man in the first squad and the squad leader of the second squad are one step in front of and one step outside the flanks of the third squad. Simultaneously, the fourth squad executes one step to the left. To *re-form* the platoon in a line formation, the commands are: **FALL OUT** (pause); **FALL IN**.
- c. When instructing, using the line formation, at *normal interval*, it is recommended that the first rank kneel (right knee), second rank *stand fast*, third rank take one step to the right, and fourth rank take one step to the left. The instructor adjusts the fourth rank as necessary to ensure they are *uncovered*. This formation can quickly be formed by commanding ***Instructional formation, MARCH***. To *re-form* the unit into a line formation, the command is **FALL IN**.

NOTE: When conditions do not warrant this formation, soldiers may be directed to remain standing and to *uncover*. To assemble the unit, the command **FALL IN** is given.

1-7. Instructors

When acting as instructors or assistant instructors, officers and noncommissioned officers go wherever they are needed. They correct mistakes and ensure steadiness and proper performance in ranks. When an individual shows that he is unable to execute the proper movements or assume the proper position, the instructor may physically assist the soldier.

1-8. Cadence counting

- a. To enable the soldier to learn or maintain cadence and develop rhythm, the instructor should have the soldier *count cadence* while *marching*. To *count cadence* while *marching* at *quick time*, the instructor gives the preparatory command, **Count cadence**, as the left foot strikes the marching surface, and the command of execution, **COUNT**, the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface. The soldier begins to count the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface and counts as each foot strikes the marching surface; **ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR; ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR**. To count cadence while *double timing*, the procedures are basically the same, except the soldier only counts each time the left foot strikes the marching surface. To maintain cadence when *marching*, soldiers will be allowed to sing, or a drummer's beat may provide cadence.
- b. For stationary movements of two or more counts, the instructor commands **In cadence, right, FACE**. The soldier simultaneously executes the first count of the movement on the command of execution and sounds off, **ONE**; as he executes the second count he sounds off, **TWO**.

NOTE: To *halt* execution of movements in cadence, command **Without cadence**, and resume normal drill methods.

- c. As soldiers begin to master the art of drill, instructors try to create a spirit of competition among individuals and between units. Although repetition is necessary when teaching drill, instructors use competitive drill exercises to ensure that drill does not become boring or monotonous.
- d. Mass commands are used to develop confidence and promote enthusiasm. They are effective in developing a command voice when instructing a leadership course. Procedures for using mass commands are discussed in Chapter 2.

CHAPTER 2

Commands and the Command Voice

“The spirit of discipline, as distinct from its outward and visible guises, is the result of association with martial traditions and their living embodiment.”

B. H. Liddell Hart, Thoughts on War, 1944

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Section I COMMANDS	
Paragraph	
2-1 General	2-1
2-2 Two-Part Commands	2-2
2-3 Combined Commands	2-2
2-4 Supplementary Commands	2-2
2-5 Mass Commands	2-3
2-6 Directives	2-4
 Section II THE COMMAND VOICE	
2-7 General	2-4
2-8 Voice Control	2-4
2-9 Distinctiveness	2-5
2-10 Inflection	2-5
2-11 Cadence	2-6

Section I

COMMANDS

2-1. General

- a. A drill command is an oral order of a commander or leader. The precision with which a movement is executed is affected by the manner in which the command is given.
- b. The following rules for giving commands apply to the commander when the unit drills as a separate unit and not as part of a larger formation.
 - (1) When at the *halt*, the commander *faces* the troops when giving commands. On commands that set the unit in motion (*marching* from one point to

another), the commander moves simultaneously with the unit to maintain correct position within the formation.

- (2) When *marching*, the commander turns his head in the direction of the troops to give commands.
 - (3) Exceptions to these rules occur during ceremonies, which is discussed in Chapter 9.
- c. When elements drill as part of a larger unit, the rules for supplementary commands apply (paragraph 2-4).
 - d. The commander gives the command **AS YOU WERE** to revoke a preparatory command that he has given. The command **AS YOU WERE** must be given prior to the command of execution. The commander cannot cancel the command of execution with **AS YOU WERE**. If an improper command is not revoked, the personnel execute the movement in the best manner possible.

2-2. Two-Part Commands

- a. Most drill commands have two parts: the preparatory command and the command of execution. Neither part is a command by itself, but the parts are termed commands to simplify instruction. The commands **Ready, port, ARMS**, and **Ready, aim, FIRE**, are considered to be two-part commands even though they contain two preparatory commands.
 - (1) The preparatory command states the movement to be carried out and mentally prepares the soldier for its execution. In the command **Forward, MARCH**, the preparatory command is **Forward**.
 - (2) The command of execution tells when the movement is to be carried out. In **Forward, MARCH**, the command of execution is **MARCH**.
- b. To change direction of a unit when *marching*, the preparatory command and command of execution for each movement are given so they begin and end on the foot in the direction of the turn: **Right flank, MARCH** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface, and **Left flank, MARCH** as the left foot strikes the marching surface. The interval between the preparatory command and the command of execution is normally one step or count.

2-3. Combined Commands

In some commands, the preparatory command and the command of execution are combined; for example, **FALL IN, AT EASE**, and **REST**. These commands are given without inflection and at a uniformly high pitch and loudness comparable to that for a normal command of execution.

2-4. Supplementary Commands

- a. Supplementary commands are oral orders given by a subordinate leader that reinforce and complement a commander's order. They ensure proper understanding and execution of a movement. They extend to the lowest subordinate

leader exercising control over an element affected by the command as a separate element within the same formation.

- b. A supplementary command may be a preparatory command, a portion of a preparatory command, or a two-part command. It is normally given between the preparatory command and the command of execution. However, when a command requires an element of a unit to execute a movement different from other elements within the same formation, or the same movement at a different time, subordinate leaders give their supplementary commands at the time prescribed by the procedures covering that particular movement. Example The platoon is in column formation, and the platoon leader commands **Column of twos from the left** (pause), **MARCH**. The first and second squad leaders command **Forward**, the third and fourth squad leaders command **STAND FAST**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the first and second squads march forward. At the appropriate time, the squad leader (third squad) nearest the moving element commands **Column half left, MARCH** (for both remaining squads). As the third and fourth squad leaders reach the line of march, they automatically execute a *column half right* and obtain *normal distance* behind the first and second squads.
- c. A subordinate leader gives all supplementary commands over his right shoulder except when his command is based on the actions of an element on his left or when the subelement is to execute a *column left (half left)* or *left flank*. Giving commands over the left shoulder occurs when changing configuration or a formation, such as forming a file or a column of fours and *re-forming*.

NOTE: When in formation at *present arms* and the preparatory command **Order of Order, Arms**, is given, subordinate leaders terminate their *salute* before giving their supplementary command.

- d. Supplementary commands are not given by a subordinate leader for the combined commands **FALL IN, AT EASE, REST** or for mass drill when his element forms as part of a massed formation. However, supplementary commands are given when forming a mass or when forming a column from a mass (see note following paragraph 3-3d).
- e. Except for commands while in mass formation, platoon leaders give supplementary commands following all preparatory commands of the commander. When the preparatory command is **Company**, the platoon leaders immediately come to *attention* and command **Platoon**. The company commander allows for all supplementary commands before giving the command of execution.
- f. When no direction is given, the response is understood to be *forward*; when no rate of march is given, the response is *quick time*. Normally, when a direction or rate of march is included in the preparatory command, only the direction or rate of march is given as a supplementary command.

2-5. Mass Commands

- a. Mass commands may be used to develop confidence and promote enthusiasm. (They are definitely effective in developing a command voice when instructing a leadership course.)

- b. When the instructor wants the unit to use mass commands, he commands **AT YOUR COMMAND**. The instructor gives a preparatory command describing the movement to be performed; for example, *face* the platoon to the right. The command of execution is **COMMAND**. When the instructor says **COMMAND**, all personnel in the unit give the command **Right, FACE**, in unison, and simultaneously execute the movement.
- c. To give mass commands while *marching*, the instructor gives the preparatory command for the movement and substitutes **COMMAND** for the command of execution **MARCH**; for example, **Column right, COMMAND; Rear, COMMAND**.
- d. Mass commands for the execution of the manual of arms are given in the same manner as described in subparagraph a-c.
- e. When the instructor wants to stop mass commands, he commands **AT MY COMMAND**. The normal method of drilling is then resumed.

2-6. Directives

- a. Directives are oral orders given by the commander that direct or cause a subordinate leader to take action.
- b. The commander gives directives rather than commands when it is more appropriate for subordinate elements to execute a movement or perform a task as independent elements of the same formation.
- c. Directives are given in sentence form and are normally prefixed by the terms **HAVE YOUR UNITS** or **BRING YOUR UNITS**. Example: **HAVE YOUR UNITS OPEN RANKS AND STACK ARMS; BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS**.
- d. **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS** is the only directive on which a commander relinquishes his command and on which *salutes* are exchanged.

Section II THE COMMAND VOICE

2-7. General

A correctly delivered command will be understood by everyone in the unit. Correct commands have a tone, cadence, and snap that demand willing, correct, and immediate response.

2-8. Voice Control

- a. The loudness of a command is adjusted to the number of soldiers in the unit. Normally, the commander is to the front and center of the unit and speaks *facing* the unit so that his voice reaches everyone.
- b. It is necessary for the voice to have carrying power, but excessive exertion is unnecessary and harmful. A typical result of trying too hard is the almost

unconscious tightening of the neck muscles to force sound out. This produces strain, hoarseness, sore throat, and worst of all, indistinct and jumbled sounds instead of clear commands. Ease is achieved through good posture, proper breathing, and correct adjustment of throat and mouth muscles, and confidence.

- c. The best posture for giving commands is the position of *attention*. Soldiers in formation notice the posture of their leader. If his posture is unmilitary (relaxed, slouched, stiff, or uneasy), the subordinates will imitate it.
- d. The most important muscle used in breathing is the diaphragm — the large muscle that separates the chest cavity from the abdominal cavity. The diaphragm automatically controls normal breathing and is used to control the breath in giving commands.
- e. The throat, mouth, and nose act as amplifiers and help to give fullness (resonance) and projection to the voice.

2-9. Distinctiveness

- a. Distinctiveness depends on the correct use of the tongue, lips, and teeth, which form the separate sounds of a word and group the sounds into syllables. Distinct commands are effective; indistinct commands cause confusion. All commands can be pronounced correctly without loss of effect. Emphasize correct enunciation (distinctiveness). To enunciate clearly, make full use of the lips, tongue, and lower jaw.
- b. To develop the ability to give clear, distinct commands, practice giving commands slowly and carefully, prolonging the syllables. Then, gradually increase the rate of delivery to develop proper cadence, still enunciating each syllable distinctly.

2-10. Inflection

Inflection is the rise and fall in pitch and the tone changes of the voice.

- a. The preparatory command is the command that indicates movement. Pronounce each preparatory command with a rising inflection. The most desirable pitch, when beginning a preparatory command, is near the level of the natural speaking voice. A common fault with beginners is to start the preparatory command in a pitch so high that, after employing a rising inflection for the preparatory command, it is impossible to give the command of execution with clarity or without strain. A good rule to remember is to begin a command near the natural pitch of the voice (Figure 2-1).
- b. The command of execution is the command that indicates when a movement is to be executed. Give it in a sharper tone and in a slightly higher pitch than the last syllable of the preparatory command. It must be given with plenty of snap. The best way to develop a command voice is to practice.
- c. In combined commands, such as **FALL IN** and **FALL OUT**, the preparatory command and command of execution are combined. Give these commands without inflection and with the uniform high pitch and loudness of a normal command of execution.

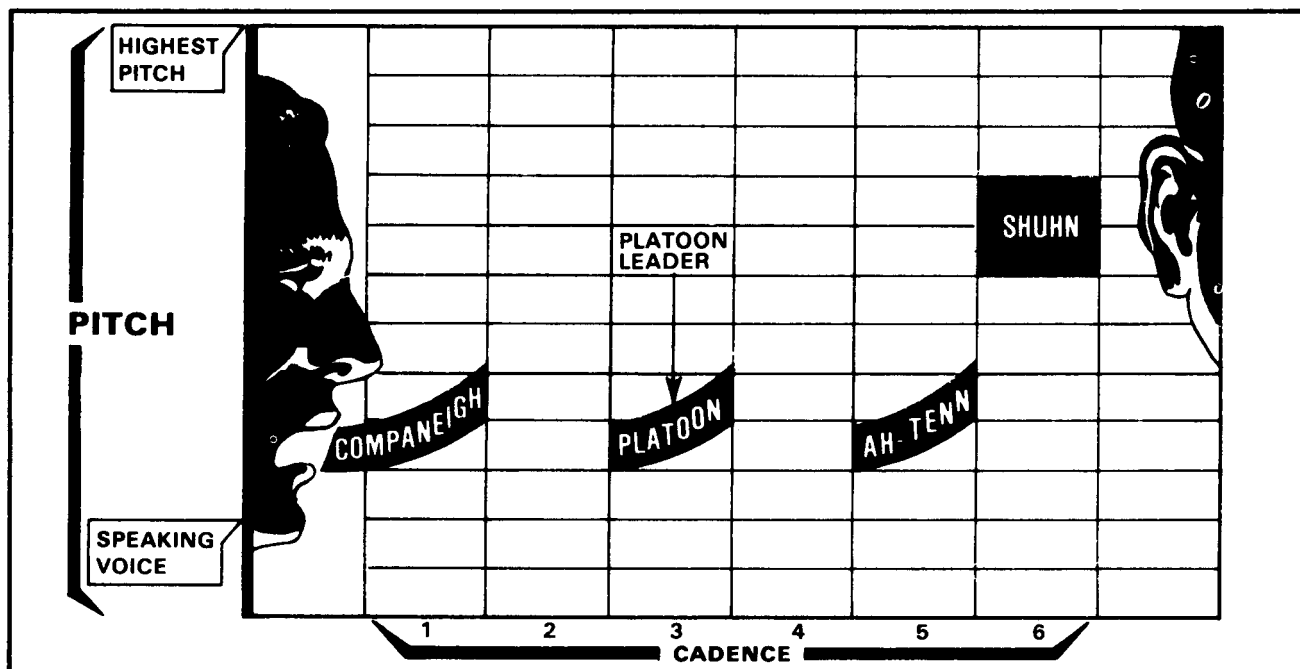


Figure 2-1. Diagram of a Command

2-11. Cadence

- a. Cadence, in commands, means a uniform and rhythmic flow of words. The interval between commands is uniform in length for any given troop unit. This is necessary so that everyone in the unit will be able to understand the preparatory command and will know when to expect the command of execution. For the squad or platoon in *march*, except when supplementary commands need to be given, the interval of time is that which allows one step (or count) between the preparatory command and the command of execution. The same interval is used for commands given at the *halt*. Longer commands, such as ***Right flank, MARCH***, must be started so that the preparatory command will end on the proper foot, and leave a full count between the preparatory command and command of execution.
- b. When supplementary commands are necessary, the commander should allow for one count between the preparatory command and the subordinate leader's supplementary command, and an additional count after the subordinate command but before the command of execution.

CHAPTER 3

Individual Drill

“Maintain discipline and caution above all things, and be on the alert to obey the word of command. It is both the noblest and the safest thing for a great army to be visibly animated by one spirit. ”

Archidamus of Sparta: To the Lacaedaemonian expeditionary force departing for Athens, 431 B.C.

CONTENTS

Section I STATIONARY MOVEMENTS

Paragraph	PAGE
3-1 General	3-1
3-2 Position of Attention	3-2
3-3 Rest Positions at the Halt	3-3
3-4 Facing at the Halt	3-4
3-5 Hand Salute	3-5

Section II STEPS AND MARCHING

3-6 General	3-6
3-7 The 30-Inch Step	3-7
3-8 Change Step	3-7
3-9 Rest Movement, 30-Inch Step	3-8
3-10 The 15-Inch Step, Forward/Half Step	3-8
3-11 Marching in Place	3-8
3-12 The 15-Inch Step, Right/Left	3-9
3-13 The 15-Inch Step, Backward	3-9
3-14 The 30-Inch Step, Double Time	3-9
3-15 Facing in Marching	3-10

Section I STATIONARY MOVEMENTS

3-1. General

- a. This section contains most of the individual positions and stationary movements required in drill. These positions and the correct execution of the movement, in every detail, should be relearned before proceeding to other drill movements.

- b. Movements are initiated from the position of *attention*. However, some *rest* movements may be executed from other *rest* positions.
- c. The explanation of a movement that may be executed toward either *flank* is given in this chapter for only one *flank*. To execute the movement toward the opposite *flank*, substitute *left* for *right*, or *right* for *left*, in the explanation.

3-2. Position of Attention

- a. Assume the position of *attention* on the command **FALL IN** or the command **Squad (platoon), ATTENTION** (see note following paragraph 3-3d).
- b. To assume this position, bring the heels together sharply on line, with the toes pointing out equally, forming an angle of 45 degrees. Rest the weight of the body evenly on the heels and balls of both feet. Keep the legs straight without locking the knees. Hold the body erect with the hips level, chest lifted and arched, and the shoulders square.
- c. Keep the head erect and *face* straight to the front with the chin drawn in so that alignment of the head and neck is vertical.
- d. Let the arms hang straight without stiffness. Curl the fingers so that the tips of the thumbs are alongside and touching the first joint of the forefingers. Keep the thumbs straight along the seams of the trouser leg with the first joint of the fingers touching the trousers (Figure 3-1).
- e. Remain silent and do not move unless otherwise directed.

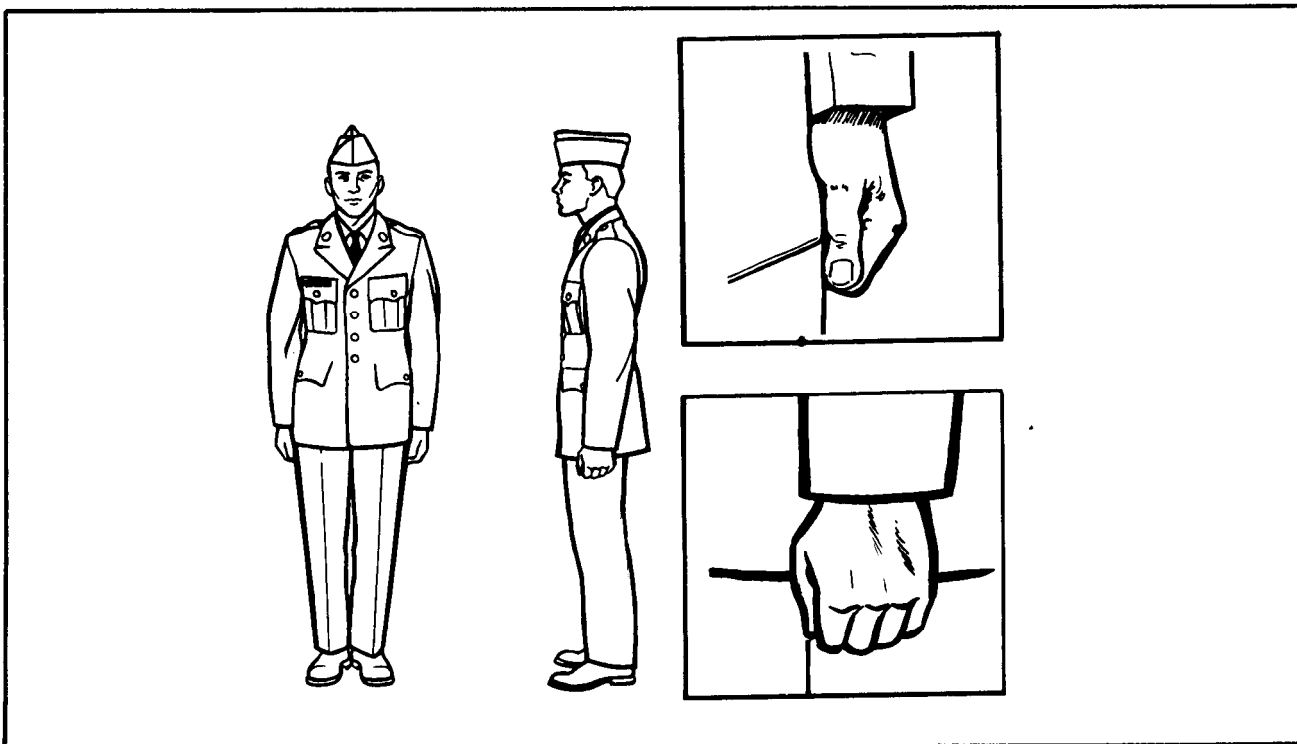


Figure 3-1. Position of Attention

3-3. Rest Positions at the Halt

NOTE: Any of the positions of *rest* may be commanded and executed from the position of *attention*.

- a. **Parade Rest.** *Parade rest* is commanded only from the position of *attention*. The command for this movement is **Parade, REST**. On the command of execution **REST**, move the left foot about 10 inches to the left of the right foot. Keep the legs straight without locking the knees, resting the weight of the body equally on the heels and balls of the feet. Simultaneously, place the hands at the small of the back and centered on the belt. Keep the fingers of both hands extended and joined, interlocking the thumbs so that the palm of the right hand is outward (Figure 3-2). Keep the head and eyes as in the position of *attention*. Remain silent and do not move unless otherwise directed. *Stand at ease*, *at ease*, and *rest* may be executed from this position.

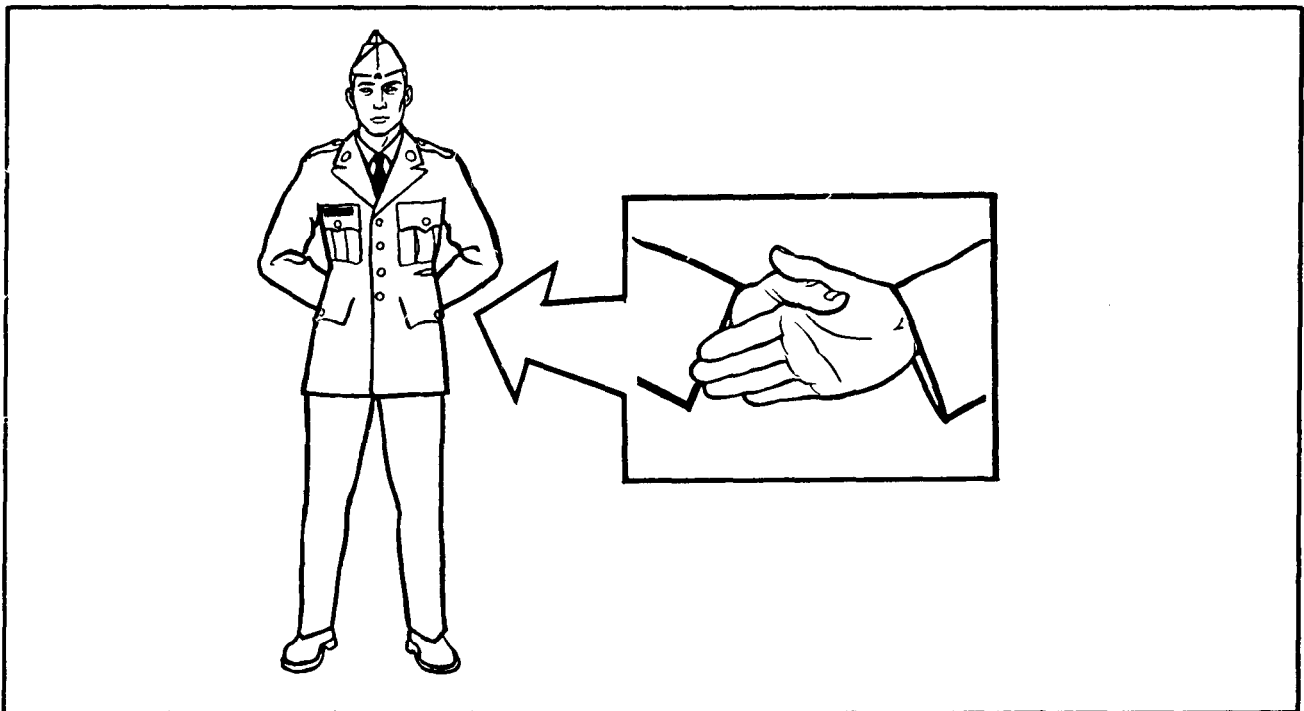


Figure 3-2. Parade Rest

- b. **Stand At Ease.** The command for this movement is **Stand at, EASE**. On the command of execution **EASE**, execute *parade rest*, but turn the head and eyes directly toward the person in charge of the formation. *At ease* or *rest* may be executed from this position.
- c. **At Ease.** The command for this movement is **AT EASE**. On the command **AT EASE**, the soldier may move; however, he must remain standing and silent with his right foot in place. *Rest* may be executed from this position.
- d. **Rest.** The command for this movement is **REST**. On the command **REST**, the soldier may move, talk, smoke, or drink unless otherwise directed. He must remain standing with his right foot in place. *At ease* may be executed from this position.

NOTE: On the preparatory command for *attention*, immediately assume *parade rest* when at the position of *stand at ease*, *at ease*, or *rest*. If, for some reason, a subordinate element is already at *attention*, the members of the element remain so and do not execute *parade rest* on the preparatory command, nor does the subordinate leader give a supplementary command.

3-4. Facing at the Halt

- a. *Facing* to the flank is a two-count movement. The command is **Left (Right), FACE**. On the command of execution **FACE**, slightly raise the right heel and left toe, and turn 90 degrees to the left on the left heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the right foot. Keep the left leg straight without stiffness and allow the right leg to bend naturally. On the second count, place the right foot beside the left foot, resuming the position of *attention*. Arms remain at the sides, as in the position of *attention*, throughout this movement (Figure 3-3).

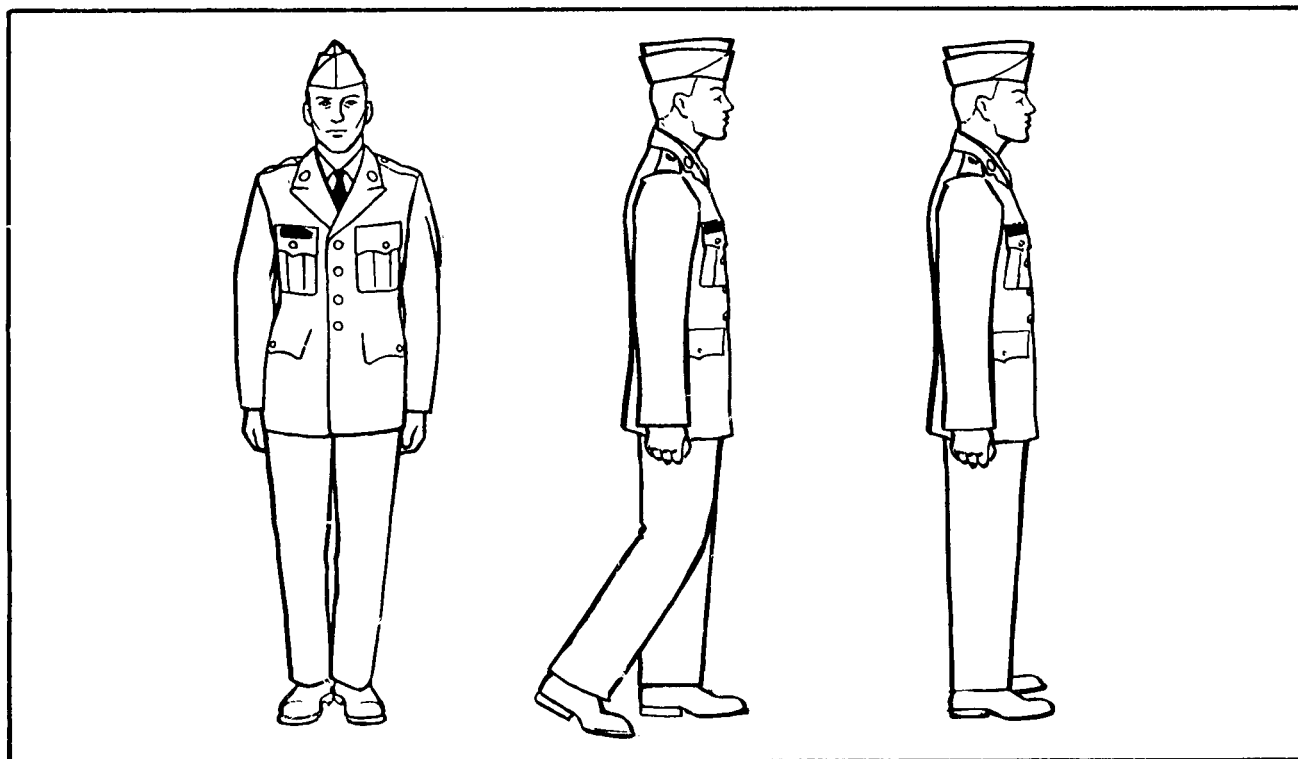


Figure 3-3. Left Face

- b. *Facing* to the rear is a two-count movement. The command is **About, FACE**. On the command of execution **FACE**, move the toe of the right foot to a point touching the marching surface about half the length of the foot to the rear and slightly to the left of the left heel. Rest most of the weight of the body on the heel of the left foot and allow the right knee to bend naturally. On the second count, turn to the right 180 degrees on the left heel and ball of the right foot, resuming the position of *attention*. Arms remain at the sides, as in the position of *attention*, throughout this movement (Figure 3-4).

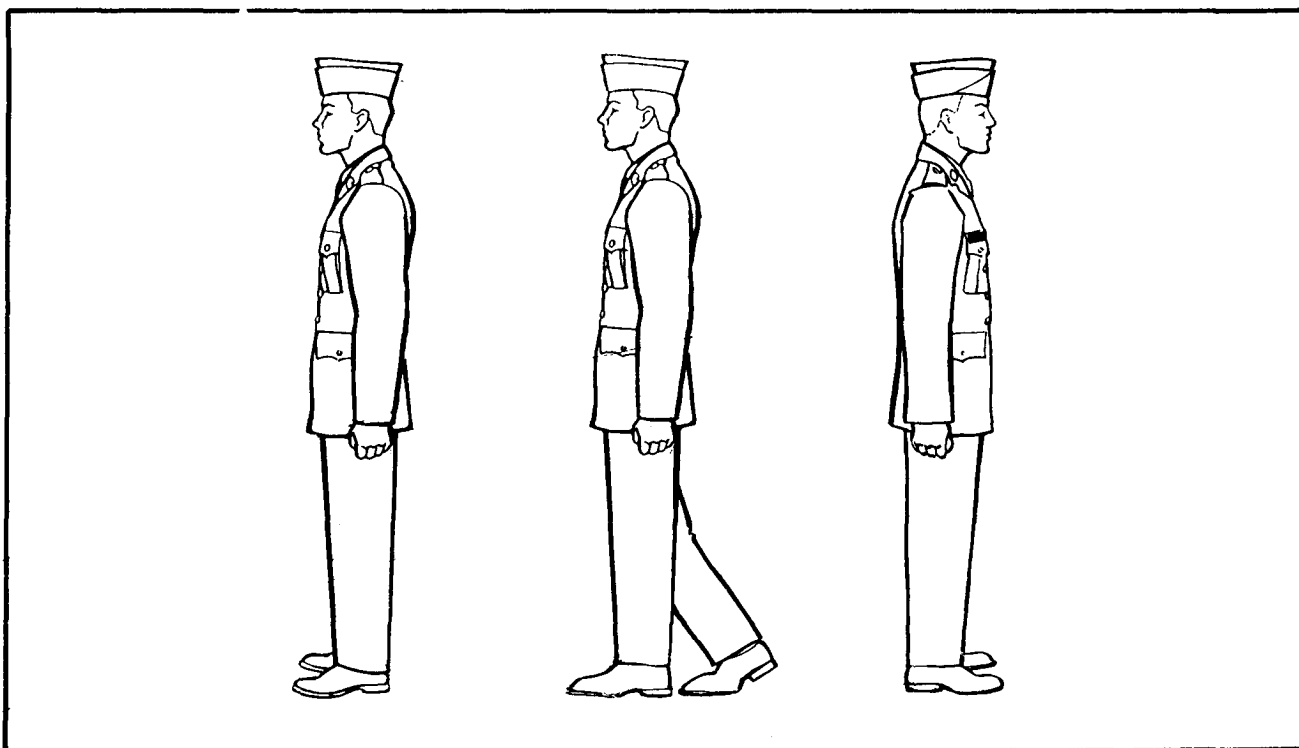


Figure 3-4. About Face

NOTE: Throughout these movements, the remainder of the body remains as in the position of *attention*.

3-5. Hand Salute

- a. The *hand salute* is a one-count movement. The command is **Present, ARMS**. When wearing headgear with a visor (with or without glasses), on the command of execution **ARMS**, raise the right hand sharply, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm facing down, and place the tip of the right forefinger on the rim of the visor slightly to the right of the right eye. The outer edge of the hand is barely canted downward so that neither the back of the hand nor the palm is clearly visible from the front. The hand and wrist are straight, the elbow inclined slightly forward, and the upper arm horizontal (1, Figure 3-5).
- b. When wearing headgear without a visor (or uncovered) and not wearing glasses, execute the *hand salute* in the same manner as previously described in subparagraph a, except touch the tip of the right forefinger to the forehead near and slightly to the right of the right eyebrow (3, Figure 3-5).
- c. When wearing headgear without a visor (or uncovered) and wearing glasses, execute the *hand salute* in the same manner as described in subparagraph a, except touch the tip of the right forefinger to that point on the glasses where the temple piece of the frame meets the right edge of the right brow (2, Figure 3-5).
- d. *Order arms* from the *hand salute* is a one-count movement. The command is **Order, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, return the hand sharply to the side, resuming the position of *attention*.

- e. When reporting or rendering courtesy to an individual, turn the head and eyes toward the person addressed and simultaneously *salute*. In this situation, the actions are executed without command. The *salute* is initiated by the subordinate at the appropriate time and terminated upon acknowledgment (4, Figure 3-5).
- f. The *hand salute* may be executed while *marching*. When *double timing*, a soldier must come to *quick time* before *saluting*.

NOTE: When a formation is *marching* at *double time*, only the individual in charge assumes *quick time* and *salutes*.

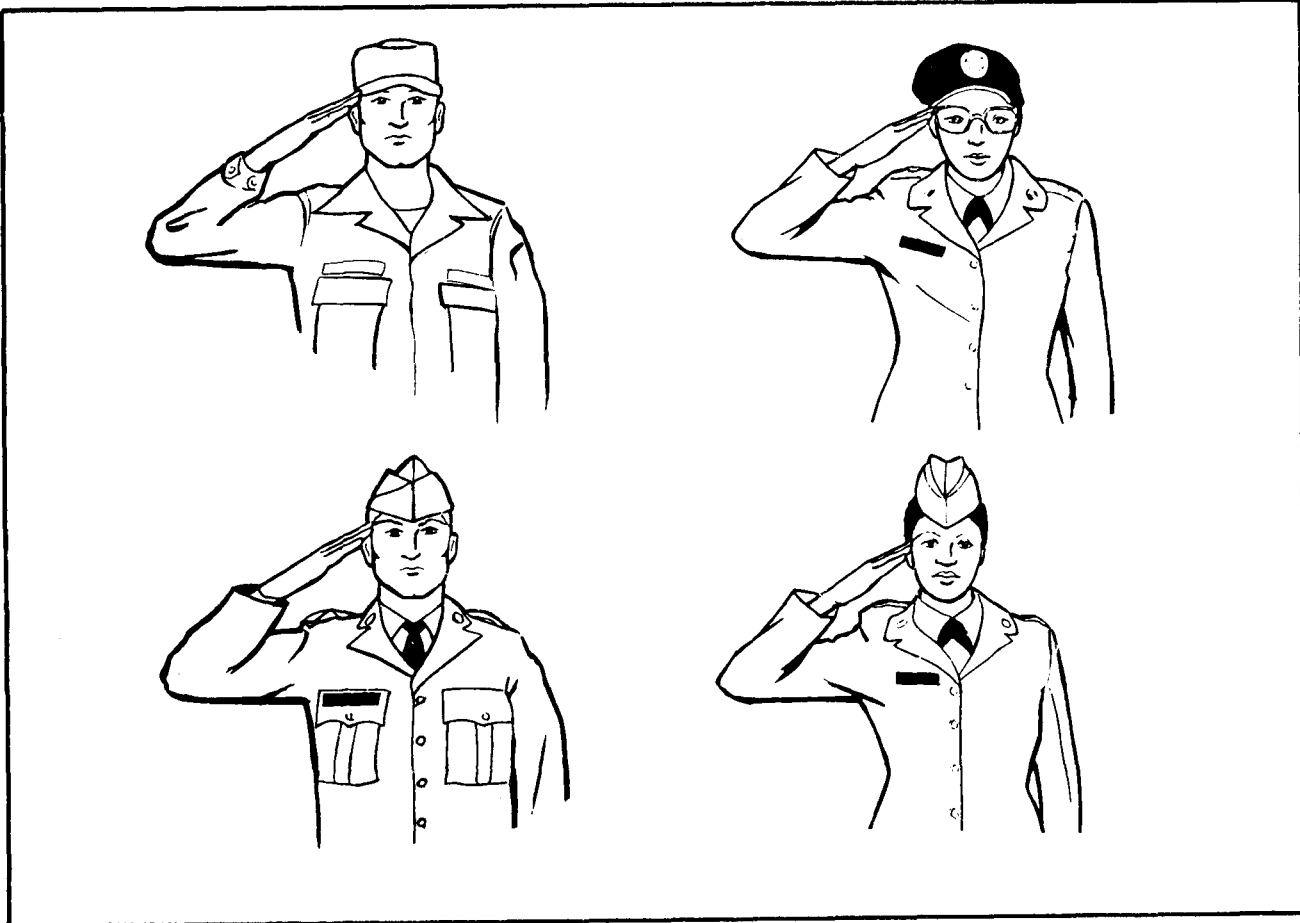


Figure 3-5. Hand Salute

Section II

STEPS AND MARCHING

3-6. General.

- a. This section contains all of the steps in *marching* of the individual soldier. These steps should be learned thoroughly before proceeding to unit drill.
- b. All marching movements executed from the *halt* are initiated from the position of *attention*.

- c. Except for *route step march* and *at ease march*, all marching movements are executed while *marching at attention*. *Marching at attention* is the combination of the position of *attention* and the procedures for the prescribed step executed simultaneously.
- d. When executed from the *halt*, all steps except *right step* begin with the left foot.
- e. For short-distance marching movements, the commander may designate the number of steps forward, backward, or sideward by giving the appropriate command: **One step to the right (left), MARCH**; or, **Two steps backward (forward), MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, step off with the appropriate foot, and *halt* automatically after completing the number of steps designated. Unless otherwise specified, when directed to execute steps forward, the steps will be 30-inch steps.
- f. All marching movements are executed in the cadence of *quick time* (120 steps per minute), except the 30-inch step, which may be executed in the cadence of 180 steps per minute on the command **Double time, MARCH**.
- g. A step is the prescribed distance from one heel to the other heel of a marching soldier.
- h. All 15-inch steps are executed for a short distance only.

3-7. The 30-Inch Step

- a. To *march* with a 30-inch step from the *halt*, the command is **Forward, MARCH**. On the preparatory command **Forward**, shift the weight of the body to the right foot without noticeable movement. On the command of execution **MARCH**, step forward 30 inches with the left foot and continue *marching* with 30-inch steps, keeping the head and eyes fixed to the front. The arms swing in a natural motion, without exaggeration and without bending at the elbows, approximately 9 inches straight to the front and 6 inches straight to the rear of the trouser seams. Keep the fingers curled as in the position of *attention* so that the fingers just clear the trousers.
- b. To *halt* while *marching*, the command **Squad (Platoon), HALT** is given. The preparatory command **Squad (Platoon)** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface as long as the command of execution **HALT** is given the next time that foot strikes the marching surface. The *halt* is executed in two counts. After **HALT** is commanded, execute the additional step required after the command of execution and then bring the trail foot alongside the lead foot, assuming the position of *attention* and terminating the movement.

NOTE: When *marching*, there are five steps in the step-by-step method: (1) preparatory command step, (2) intermediate step or thinking step, (3) command of execution step, (4) additional step after command of execution, (5) execution of the movement that was commanded. This method is fully described in paragraph 1-3.

3-8. Change Step

- a. To *change step* while *marching*, the command **Change step, MARCH** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution

MARCH, take one more step with the left foot, then in one count place the right toe near the heel of the left foot and step off again with the left foot. The arms swing naturally.

- b. This movement is executed automatically whenever a soldier finds himself out of step with all other members of the formation.

3-9. Rest Movement, 30-Inch Step

- a. **At Ease March.** The command **At ease, MARCH** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the soldier is no longer required to retain cadence; however, silence and the approximate interval and distance are maintained. **Quick time, MARCH** and **Route step, MARCH** are the only commands that can be given while *marching at ease*.
- b. **Route Step March.** *Route step* is executed exactly the same as *at ease march* except that the soldier may drink from his canteen and talk.

NOTE: To change the direction of march while *marching at route step* or *at ease march*, the commander informally directs the lead element to turn in the desired direction. Before precision movements may be executed, the unit must resume *marching* in cadence. The troops automatically resume *marching at attention* on the command **Quick time, MARCH**, as the commander reestablishes the cadence by counting for eight steps.

3-10. The 15-Inch Step, Forward/Half Step

- a. To *march* with a 15-inch step from the *halt*, the command is **Half step, MARCH**. On the preparatory command **Half step**, shift the weight of the body to the right foot without noticeable movement. On the command of execution **MARCH**, step forward 15 inches with the left foot and continue *marching* with 15-inch steps. The arms swing as in *marching* with a 30-inch step.
- b. To alter the *march* to a 15-inch step while *marching* with a 30-inch step, the command is **Half step, MARCH**. This command may be given as either foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take one more 30-inch step and then begin *marching* with a 15-inch step. The arms swing as in *marching* with a 30-inch step.
- c. To resume *marching* with a 30-inch step, the command **Forward, MARCH** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take one more 15-inch step and then begin *marching* with a 30-inch step.
- d. The *halt* while *marching* at the *half step* is executed in two counts, the same as the *halt* from the 30-inch step.
- e. While *marching* at the *half step*, the only commands that may be given are: **Mark time, MARCH**; **Forward, MARCH**; **Extend, MARCH**; and **HALT**.

3-11. Marching in Place

- a. To *march* in place, the command **Mark time, MARCH** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface and only while *marching* with a 30-inch or 15-inch

step forward. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take one more step, bring the trailing foot alongside the leading foot, and begin to *march* in place. Raise each foot (alternately) 2 inches off the marching surface; the arms swing naturally, as in *marching* with a 30-inch step forward.

NOTE: While *marking time* in formation, the soldier adjusts position to ensure proper alignment and cover.

- b. To resume *marching* with a 30-inch step, the command **Forward, MARCH** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take one more step in place and then step off with a 30-inch step.
- c. The *halt* from *mark time* is executed in two counts, basically the same as the *halt* from the 30-inch step.

3-12. The 15-Inch Step, Right/Left

- a. To *march* with a 15-inch step right (left), the command is **Right (Left) step, MARCH**. The command is given only while at the *halt*. On the preparatory command of **Right (Left) step**, shift the weight of the body without noticeable movement onto the left (right) foot. On the command of execution **MARCH**, bend the right knee slightly and raise the right foot only high enough to allow freedom of movement. Place the right foot 15 inches to the right of the left foot, and then move the left foot (keeping the left leg straight) alongside the right foot as in the position of *attention*. Continue this movement, keeping the arms at the sides as in the position of *attention*.
- b. To *halt* when executing *right* or *left step*, the command is **Squad (Platoon), HALT**. This movement is executed in two counts. The preparatory command is given when the heels are together the command of execution **HALT** is given the next time the heels are together. On the command of execution **HALT**, take one more step with the lead foot and then place the trailing foot alongside the lead foot, resuming the position of *attention*.

3-13. The 15-Inch Step, Backward

- a. To *march* with a 15-inch step backward, the command is **Backward, MARCH**. The command is given only while at the *halt*. On the preparatory command **Backward**, shift the weight of the body without noticeable movement onto the right foot. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take a 15-inch step backward with the left foot and continue *marching* backward with 15-inch steps. The arms swing naturally.
- b. The *halt* from *backward march* is executed in two counts, basically the same as the *halt* from the 30-inch step.

3-14. The 30-Inch Step, Double Time

- a. To *march* in the cadence of 180 steps per minute with a 30-inch step, the command is **Double time, MARCH**. It may be commanded while at the *halt* or while *marching* at *quick time* with a 30-inch step.

- b. When at the *halt* and the preparatory command **Double time** is given, shift the weight of the body to the right foot without noticeable movement. On the command of execution **MARCH**, raise the forearms to a horizontal position, with the fingers and thumbs closed, knuckles out, and simultaneously step off with the left foot. Continue to *march* with 30-inch steps at the cadence of *double time*. The arms swing naturally to the front and rear with the forearms kept horizontal. (When armed, soldiers will come to *port arms* on receiving the preparatory command of **Double time**.) Guides, when at *sling arms*, will *double time* with their weapons at *sling arms* upon receiving the directive **GUIDE ON LINE**.
- c. When *marching* with a 30-inch step in the cadence of *quick time*, the command **Double time, MARCH** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take one more 30-inch step at *quick time*, and step off with the trailing foot, *double timing* as previously described.
- d. To resume *marching* with a 30-inch step at *quick time*, the command **Quick time, MARCH** is given as either foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, take two more 30-inch steps at *double time*, lower the arms to the sides, and resume *marching* with a 30-inch step at *quick time*.

NOTE: *Quick time*, *column half left (right)*, and *column left (right)* are the only movements that can be executed while *double timing*. Armed troops must be at either *sling arms* or *port arms* before the command **Double time, MARCH** is given.

3-15. Facing in Marching

- a. *Facings* in *marching* from a *halt* are important parts of the following movements: alignments, column movements, inspecting soldiers in ranks, and changing from *normal interval* to *double interval* or *double interval* to *normal interval*. For instructional purposes only, the command **Face to the right (left) in marching, MARCH** may be used to teach the individual to execute the movement properly. On the preparatory command **Face to the right (left) in marching**, shift the weight of the body without noticeable movement onto the right foot. On the command of execution **MARCH**, pivot to the right (left) on the ball of the right foot (90 degrees) and step off in the indicated direction with the left foot. Execute the pivot and step in one count, and continue *marching* in the new direction.
- b. *Facing* to the *half-right (half-left)* in *marching* from the *halt* is executed in the same manner as *facing* to the *right (left)* in *marching* from a *halt*, except the facing movement is made at a 45-degree angle to the right (left).
- c. The *halt* from *facing* in *marching* is executed in two counts, the same as the *halt* from the 30-inch step.

CHAPTER 4
Individual Drill with Weapons

Feed ‘em up and give ‘em hell. Teach ‘em where they are. Make ‘em so mad they’ll eat steel rather than get dressing from you. Make ‘em hard but don’t break ‘em.

Laurence Stallings: What Price Glory? 1926

CONTENTS	
Section I MANUAL OF ARMS—M16 SERIES RIFLE	
Paragraph	PAGE
4-1 General	4-1
4-2 Order Arms	4-3
4-3 Rest Position	4-4
4-4 Port Arms	4-4
4-5 Present Arms	4-5
4-6 Inspection Arms	4-6
4-7 Right Shoulder Arms	4-7
4-8 Left Shoulder Arms	4-9
4-9 Changing Positions	4-10
4-10 Fix and Unfix Bayonets	4-11
4-11 Carry Position	4-12
Section II SLING ARMS—M16 SERIES RIFLE	
4-12 General	4-12
4-13 Sling Arms	4-13
4-14 Salute at Sling Arms	4-14
4-15 Port Arms from Sling Arms	4-15
4-16 Inspection Arms from Sling Arms	4-15
Section III SLING ARMS—M203 GRENADE LAUNCHER	
4-17 General	4-16
4-18 Manual Movements	4-16

Section I
MANUAL OF ARMS—M16 SERIES RIFLE

4-1. General

- a. This section contains procedures for executing the manual of arms with the M16 series rifle (FM 23-9) in conjunction with individual and unit drill movements (Figure 4-1).

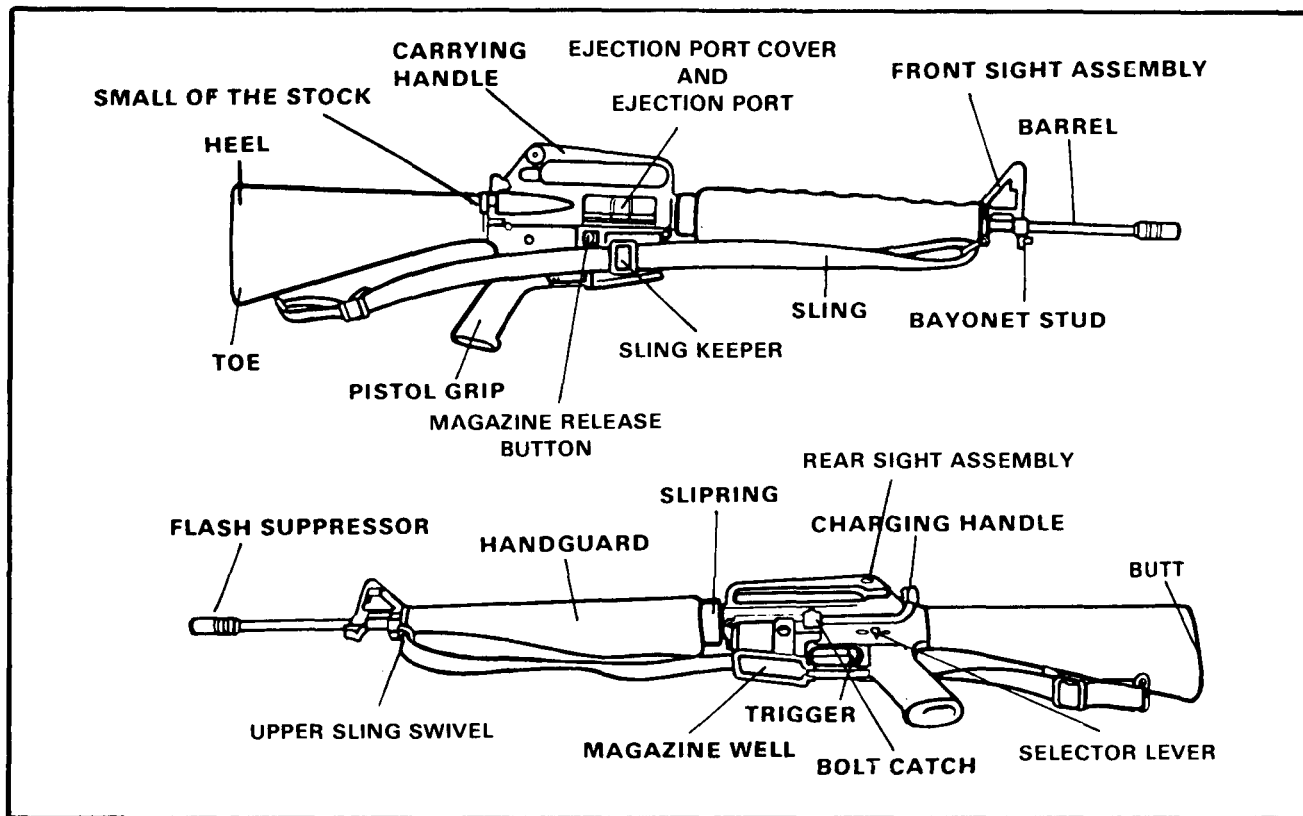


Figure 4-1. Nomenclature, M16 Series Rifle

- b. At the *halt*, all movements are initiated from *order arms* or *sling arms*, which are the positions of *attention* with the rifle.
- c. All precision movements are executed in *quick-time* cadence.
- d. For drill purposes, the magazine is not carried in the rifle. When performing duty requiring the use of the magazine, the rifle is carried at *sling arms*.
- e. The command **Port, ARMS** or **Sling, ARMS** must be given prior to the command for *double time*.
- f. *Facings*, alignments, and short-distance marching movements are executed from *order arms* or *sling arms*. When these movements are commanded while at *order arms*, it is necessary to automatically raise the rifle about 1 inch off the marching surface on the command of execution. When the movement has been completed, automatically return the rifle to *order arms*.
- g. Facing movements are executed from *order arms* or *sling arms*. When a *facing* is necessary to establish the direction of march, the facing movement is executed before the command for the manual of arms. After a marching movement has been completed, **Order, ARMS** or **Sling, ARMS** is commanded prior to the command for the *facing* movement.
- h. **Ready, Port, ARMS** must be commanded following *inspection arms* and before any other movements can be commanded.

- i. *Port arms* is the key position assumed in most manual of arms movements from one position to another except *right shoulder arms* from *order arms* and *order arms* from *right shoulder arms*.
- j. Manual of arms movements are a combination of the position of *attention* and the procedures for the prescribed movement. Most manual of arms movements are executed with the head, eyes, and body as in the position of *attention*.

NOTE: Paragraphs 4-2 through 4-11 refer to slings tight. However, all individual and unit drill movements may be executed with slings loose except when executing *fix* and *unfix bayonets*.

4-2. Order Arms

- a. Assume *order arms* on the command **FALL IN** or from *parade rest* on the command of execution **ATTENTION**.
- b. At *order arms*, maintain the position of *attention* with the rifle. Place the butt of the rifle on the marching surface, centered on the right foot, with sights to the rear. The toe of the butt touches the foot so that the rear sight and pistol grip form a straight line to the front. Secure the rifle with the right hand in a "U" formed by the fingers (extended and joined) and thumb. Hold the rifle above the front sight assembly with the right thumb and forefinger pointed downward, and on line with the flat surface of the handguard. Keep the right hand and arm behind the rifle so that the thumb is straight along the seam of the trouser leg (Figure 4-2).

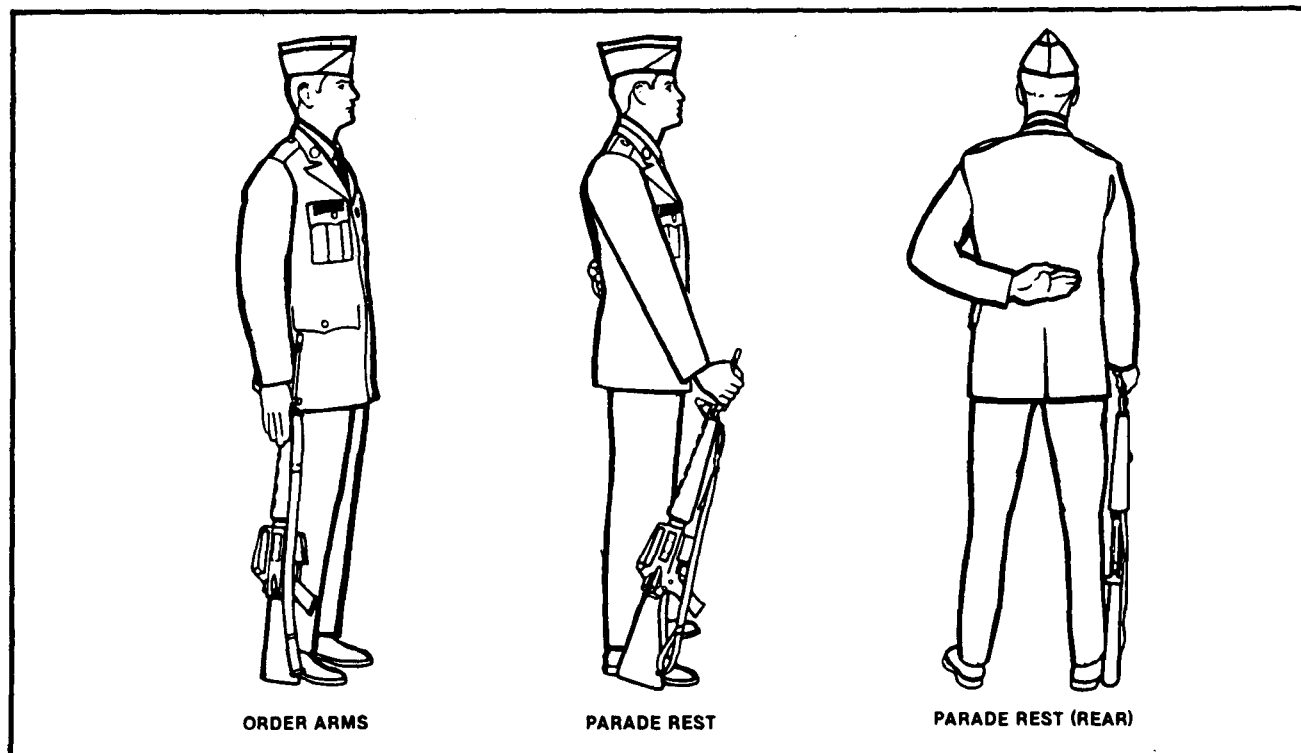


Figure 4-2. Order Arms and Parade Rest

4-3. Rest Position

The rifle *rest* positions are commanded and executed the same as individual drill with the following additions:

- a. On the command of execution **REST** of **Parade, REST**, thrust the muzzle forward, simultaneously changing the grip of the right hand to grasp the barrel, keeping the toe of the butt of the rifle on the marching surface and the right arm straight.
- b. Execute *stand at ease* in the same manner as *parade rest* with the rifle except turn the head and eyes toward the commander.
- c. On the command **AT EASE** or **REST**, keep the butt of the rifle in place as in *parade rest*.

4-4. Port Arms

- a. *Port arms* from *order arms* is a two-count movement. The command is **Port, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and raise the rifle diagonally across the body, keeping the right elbow down (without strain). With the left hand, simultaneously grasp the handguard just forward of the sling so that the rifle is about 4 inches from the waist. On the second count, regrasp the rifle at the small of the stock with the right hand. Hold the rifle diagonally across the body, about 4 inches from the waist, the right forearm horizontal, and the elbows close to the sides (Figure 4-3).

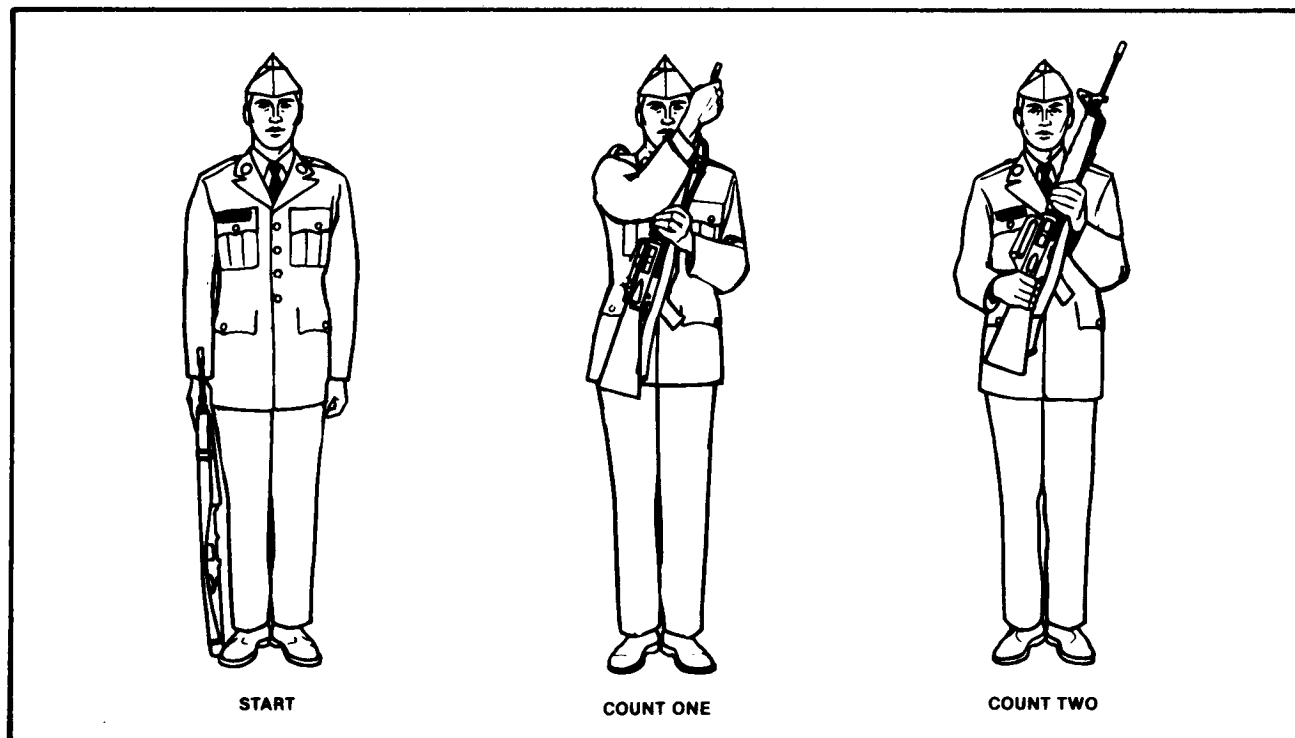


Figure 4-3. Port Arms

- b. *Order arms from port arms* is executed in three counts. The command is **Order, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, move the right hand up and across the body to the right front of the front sight assembly, grasp the barrel firmly without moving the rifle, and keep the right elbow down without strain. On the second count, move the left hand from the handguard and lower the rifle to the right side until it is about 1 inch from the marching surface. Guide the rifle to the side by placing the forefinger of the left hand at the flash suppressor, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm to the rear. On the third count, move the left hand sharply to the left side, lower the rifle gently to the marching surface, and resume the position of *order arms* (Figure 4-4).

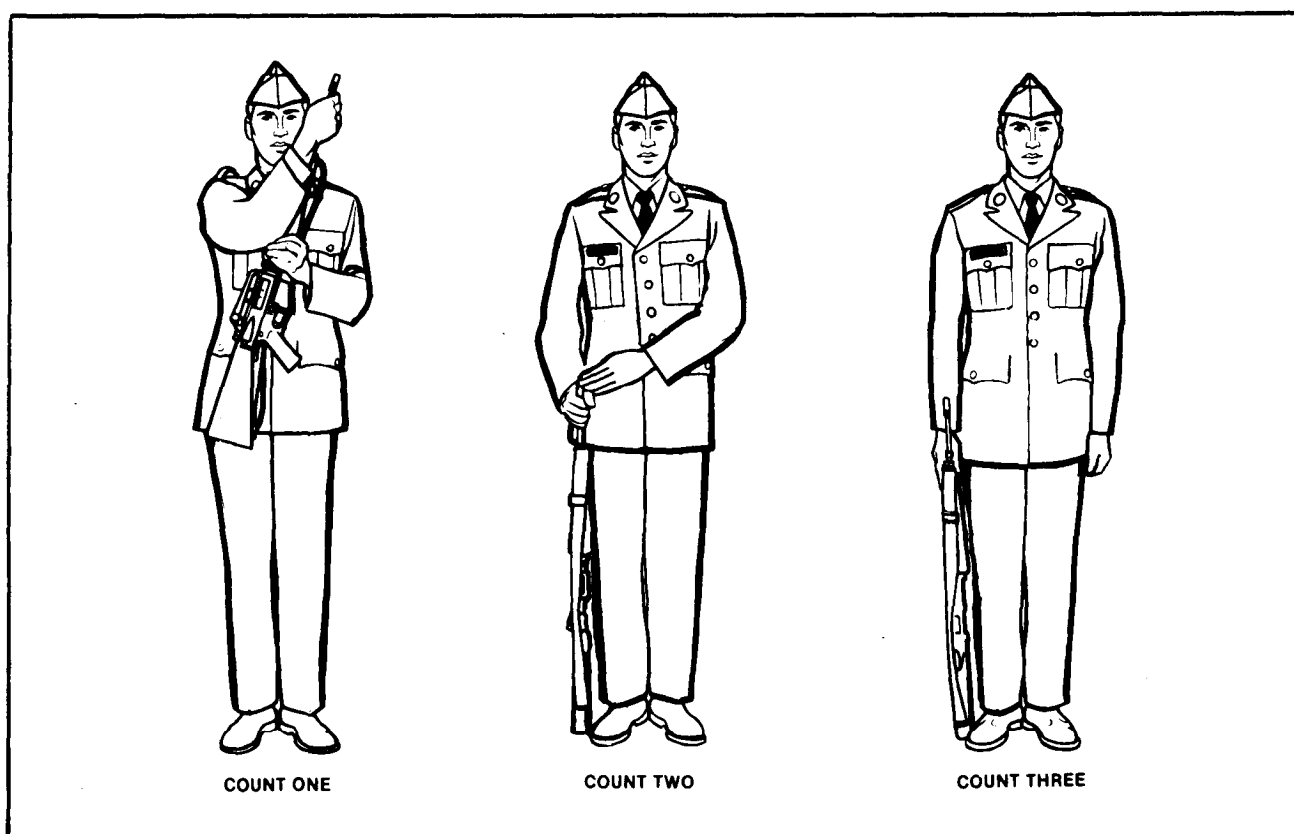


Figure 4-4. Order Arms

4-5. Present Arms

- a. *Present arms from order arms* is a three-count movement. The command is **Present, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* in two counts. On the third count, twist the rifle with the right hand so that the magazine well is to the front, and move the rifle to a vertical position with the carrying handle about 4 inches in front of and centered on the body. Lower the rifle until the left forearm is horizontal; keep the elbows in at the sides.

- b. *Order arms* from *present arms* is a four-count movement. The command is **Order, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, return the rifle to *port arms*. Counts two, three, and four are the same as *order arms* from *port arms*.
- c. *Port arms* is assumed en route to or from *present arms* when going to or from *right shoulder* or *left shoulder arms*. *Present arms* from or to *port arms* is a one-count movement.
- d. When rendering reports or courtesy to an individual from *order arms*, execute *present arms* and turn the head and eyes toward the individual addressed. *Order arms* is executed automatically upon acknowledgment of the *salute*.
- e. When rendering courtesy to an individual with the rifle at *right shoulder*, *left shoulder*, or *port arms* and not in formation, execute *present arms*. Upon acknowledgment of the *salute*, automatically return to the original position.
- f. To render courtesy with the rifle at the *carry* position, execute *present arms* from either the *right* or *left-hand carry* position. Bring the rifle in the most convenient manner to *port arms*, and then execute *present arms* in one count. To assume the *carry* position from *present arms*, execute *port arms* in one count and then return the rifle in the most convenient manner to the *carry* position (Figure 4-5).
- g. When *double timing* (not in formation), come to *quick time* prior to rendering the courtesy.

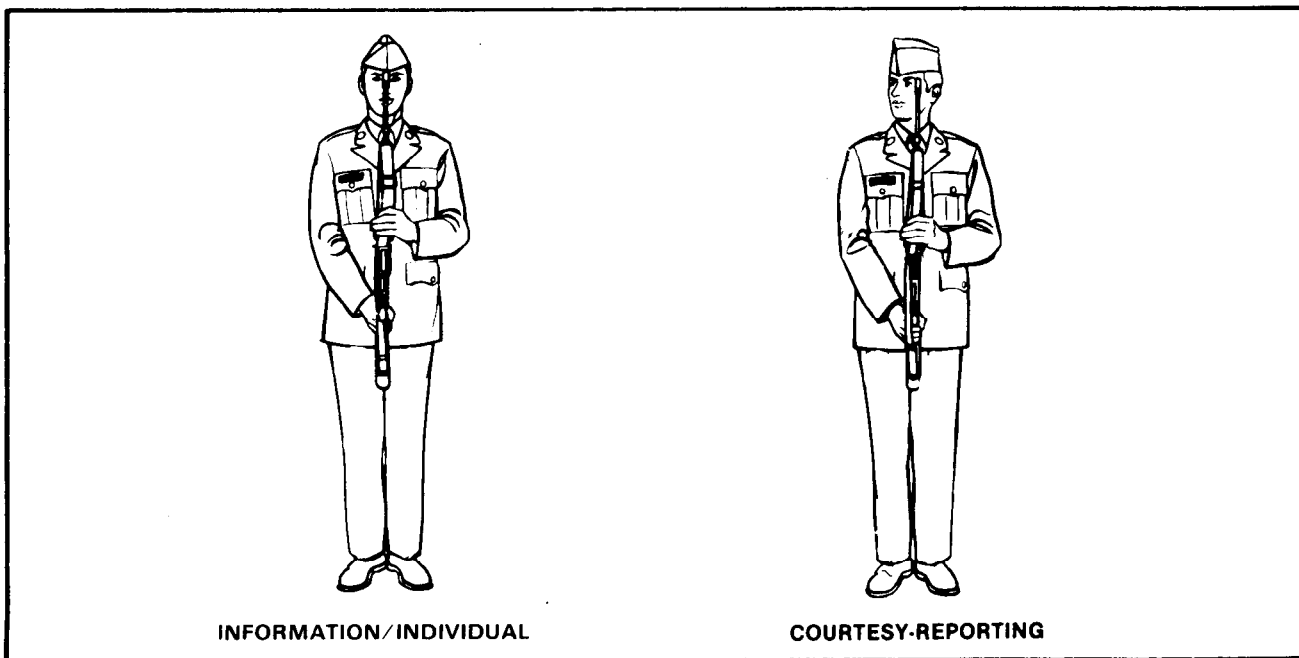


Figure 4-5. Present Arms

4-6. Inspection Arms

- a. *Inspection arms* from *order arms* is a seven-count movement. The command is **Inspection, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port*

arms in two counts. On the third count, move the left hand from the handguard and grasp the pistol grip, thumb over the lower portion of the bolt catch. On the fourth count, release the grasp of the right hand, unlock the charging handle with the thumb, and sharply pull the charging handle to the rear with the thumb and forefinger. At the same time, apply pressure on the lower portion of the bolt catch, locking the bolt to the rear. On the fifth count, without changing the grasp of the right hand, sharply push the charging handle forward until it is locked into position; then regrasp the rifle with the right hand at the small of the stock. On the sixth count, remove the left hand, twist the rifle with the right hand so that the ejection port is skyward, regrasp the handguard with the left hand just forward of the sling, and visually inspect the receiver through the ejection port. On the seventh count, with the right hand, twist the rifle so that the sights are up and come to *inspection arms* (Figure 4-6)

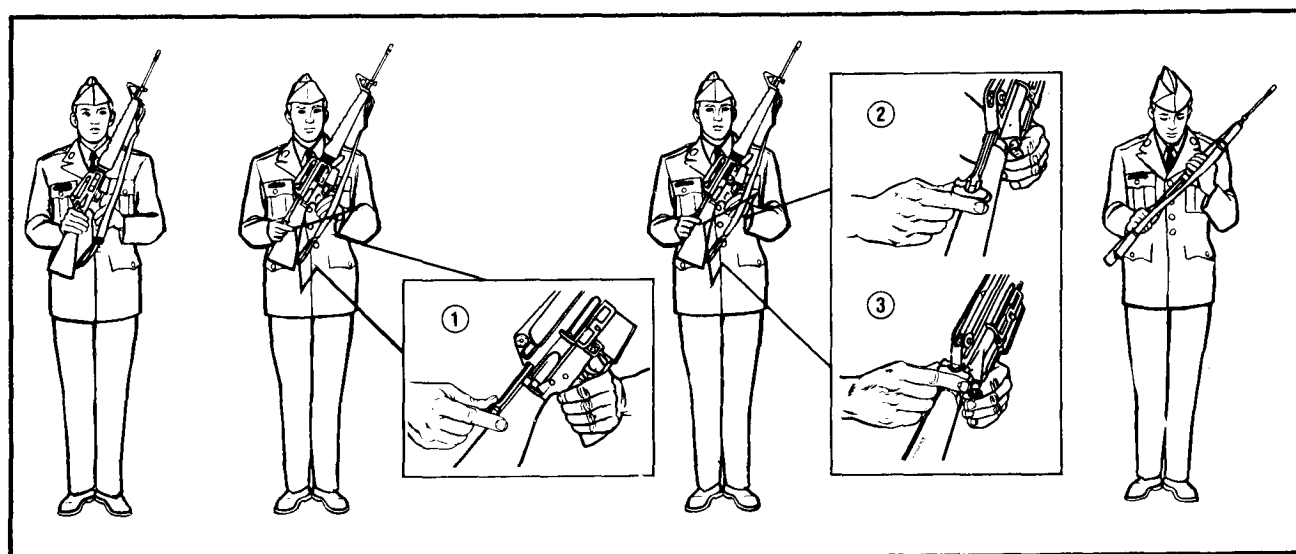


Figure 4-6. Inspection Arms

NOTE: The method for inspecting the rifle by an inspecting officer is explained in Chapter 7.

- b. **Ready, Port, ARMS** is the only command given from *inspection arms*. On the command **Ready**, move the left hand and regrasp the rifle with the thumb and fingers forming a "U" at the magazine well and trigger guard, the thumb (without pressure) on the upper part of the bolt catch, fingertips placed below or under the ejection port cover. On the command **Port**, press the bolt catch and allow the bolt to go forward. With the fingertips, push upward, and close the ejection port cover. Grasp the pistol grip with the left hand and place the left thumb on the trigger. On the command **ARMS**, pull the trigger and resume *port arms*.

4-7. Right Shoulder Arms

- a. *Right shoulder arms* from *order arms* is a four-count movement. The command is **Right shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and raise it diagonally across the body, keeping

the right elbow down without strain. With the left hand, grasp the handguard just forward of the slipring, ensuring that the weapon is about 4 inches from the waist. On the second count, move the right hand from the barrel and grasp the heel of the butt between the first two fingers with the thumb and forefinger touching. On the third count (without moving the head), release the grasp of the left hand (without changing the grasp of the right hand), twist the rifle so that the sights are up, and place the weapon onto the right shoulder, moving the left hand to the small of the stock to guide the rifle to the shoulder. Keep the fingers and thumb (left hand) extended and joined with the palm turned toward the body. The first joint of the left forefinger touches the rear of the charging handle. Keep the left elbow down, and keep the right forearm horizontal with the right upper arm against the side and on line with the back. On the fourth count, sharply move the left hand back to the left side as in the position of *attention* (Figure 4-7).

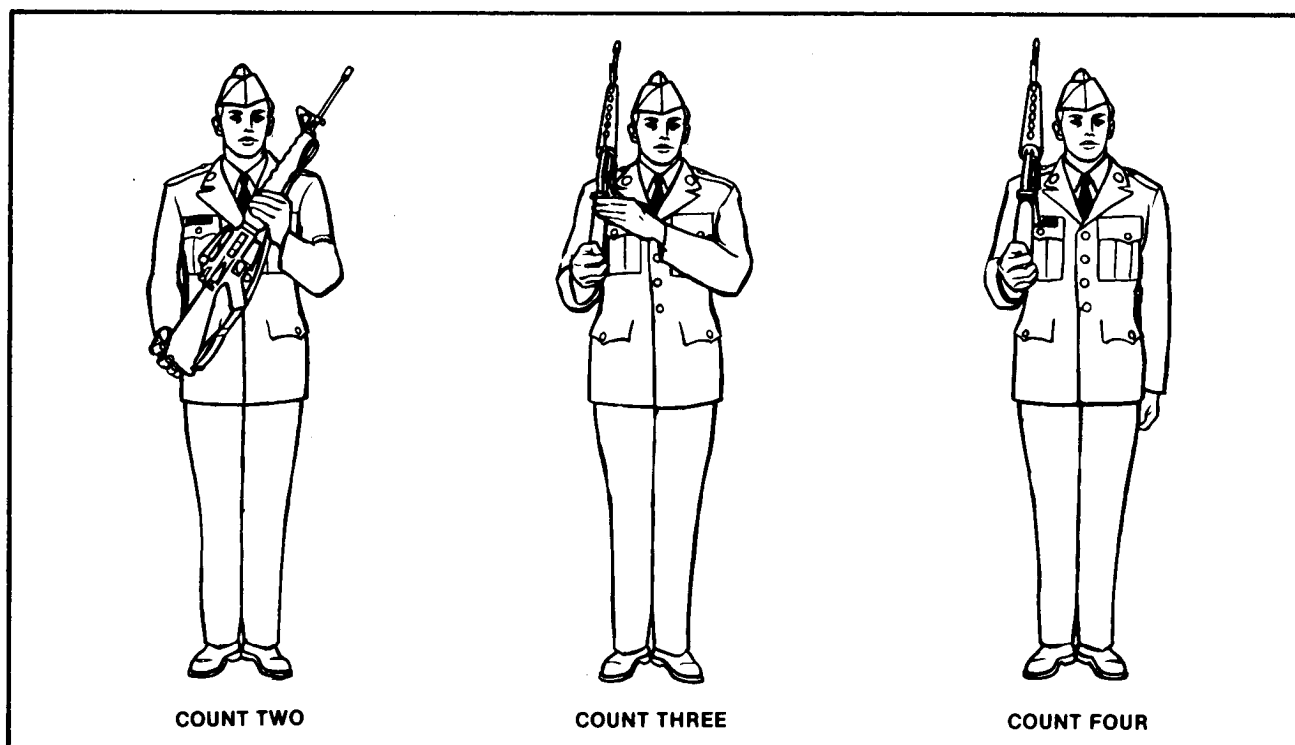


Figure 4-7. Right Shoulder Arms

- b. *Order arms* from *right shoulder arms* is a four-count movement. The command is **Order, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, without moving the head and without changing the grasp of the right hand, press down quickly and firmly on the butt of the rifle with the right hand and twist the weapon (with the sights up), guiding it diagonally across the body and about 4 inches from the waist. Grasp the rifle with the left hand at the handguard just forward of the slipring. On the second count, move the right hand up and across the body, approaching from the right front of the front sight assembly, and firmly grasp the barrel without moving the rifle; keep the right elbow down without

strain. The third and fourth counts are the same as from *port arms* to *order arms* (Figure 4-4).

4-8. Left Shoulder Arms

- a. *Left shoulder arms* from *order arms* is a four-count movement. The command is **Left shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* in two counts. On the third count, release the grasp of the left hand and (without moving the head) place the rifle on the left shoulder with the right hand (with the sights up), keeping the right elbow down. At the same time, regrasp the rifle with the left hand with the heel of the butt between the first two fingers and with the thumb and forefinger touching. The left forearm is horizontal, and the left upper arm is against the side and on line with the back. On the fourth count, move the right hand to the right side as in the position of *attention* (Figure 4-8).

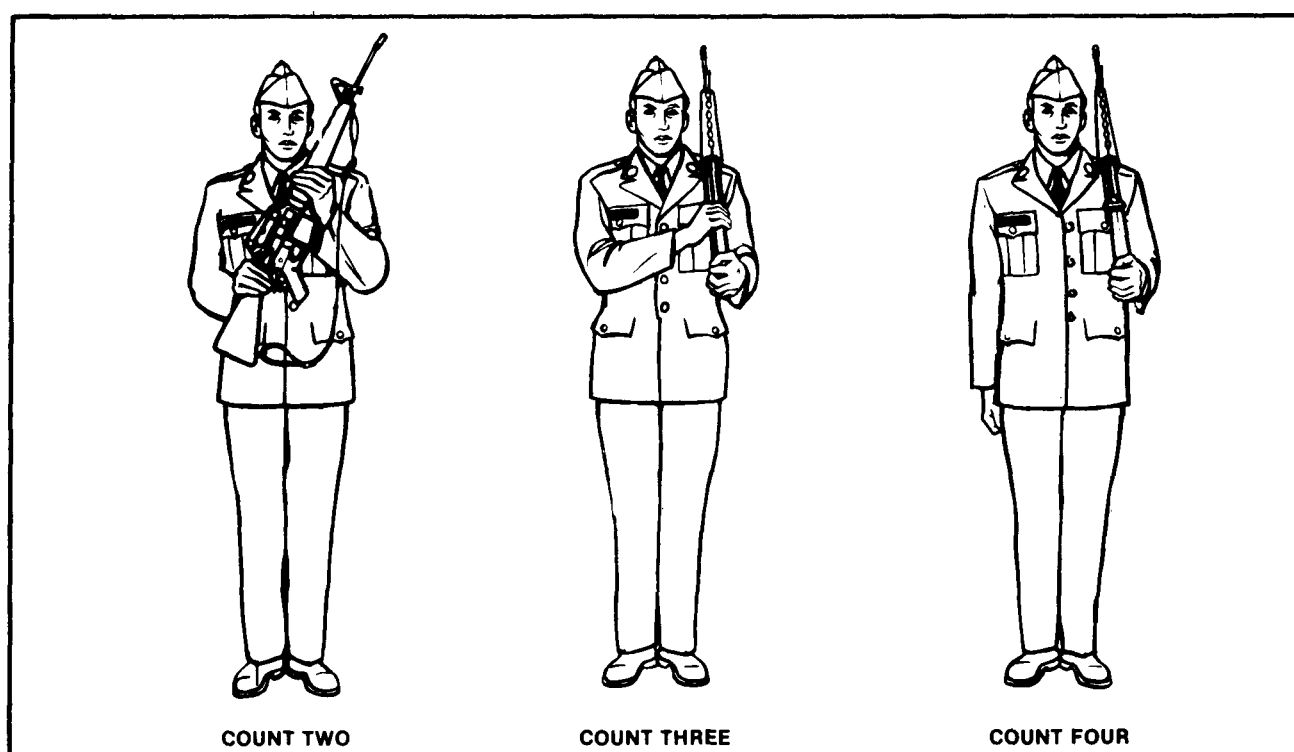


Figure 4-8. Left Shoulder Arms

- b. *Order arms* from *left shoulder arms* is a five-count movement. The command is **Order, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, move the right hand up and across the body and grasp the small of the stock, keeping the right elbow down. On the second count (without moving the head), release the grasp of the left hand and with the right hand move the rifle diagonally across the body (sights up) about 4 inches from the waist. At the same time, regrasp the handguard just forward of the sling with the left hand, and resume *port arms*. Counts three, four, and five are the same as *order arms* from *port arms* (Figure 4-4).

4-9. Changing Positions

- a. *Right shoulder arms* from *port arms* is a three-count movement. The command is **Right shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, release the grasp of the right hand and regrasp the rifle with the heel of the butt between the first two fingers, with the thumb and forefinger touching. Counts two and three are the same as counts three and four from *order arms*. When *marching*, the command is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface.
- b. *Port arms* from *right shoulder arms* is a two-count movement. The command is **Port, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute count one of *order arms* from *right shoulder arms*. On the second count, release the grasp of the right hand and regrasp the rifle at the small of the stock and come to *port arms*. When *marching*, the command is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface.
- c. *Left shoulder arms* from *port arms* is a two-count movement. The command is **Left Shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute **left shoulder arms** in the same manner as counts three and four from *order arms*. When *marching*, the command is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface.
- d. *Port arms* from *left shoulder arms* is a two-count movement. The command is **Port, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute the first two counts of *order arms* from *left shoulder arms*. When *marching*, the command is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface.
- e. *Left shoulder arms* from *right shoulder arms* is a four-count movement. The command is **Left shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute the first count the same as executing *order arms*. On count two, remove the right hand from the butt of the rifle and regrasp the small of the stock (*port arms*). Counts three and four are the same movements as from *port arms*. When *marching*, the command is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface.
- f. *Right shoulder arms* from *left shoulder arms* is a five-count movement. The command is **Right shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* in two counts. Counts three, four, and five are the same as from *port arms*. When *marching*, the command is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface.
- g. *Present arms* from *right shoulder arms* or *left shoulder arms*, while in formation, is executed from the *halt* only. The command is **Present, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, come to *port arms* from either shoulder and then execute *present arms* (in one count) from *port arms*.
- h. To resume *right (left) shoulder arms* from *present arms*, the command is **Right (Left) shoulder, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* in one count and then execute the counts as prescribed from *port arms*.

NOTE: Experienced soldiers should be capable of executing the 15-count manual of arms in unison: from *order*, to *right shoulder*, to *left shoulder*, to *present* to *order arms*. The command is **Fifteen-count manual, ARMS**.

4-10. Fix and Unfix Bayonets

- a. The command to *fix* or *unfix bayonets* is given from *order arms* only. The movement is executed in a military manner but not in cadence.

NOTE: The bayonet scabbard is worn on the left side with the tip of the scabbard on line with the trouser leg seam and the barrel ring to the front.

- b. To *fix bayonets*, the command is **Fix, BAYONETS**. On the command of execution **BAYONETS**, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand, raise the rifle slightly, and place the butt of the rifle between the feet, with the magazine well to the front. Grasp the rifle barrel with the left hand and move the muzzle to the left front. With the right hand, unsnap the scabbard securing strap and withdraw the bayonet. Keeping the eyes on the bayonet point, turn the point skyward and attach the bayonet to the rifle. To engage the bayonet stud on the rifle with the base of the bayonet, grasp the handle, apply downward pressure until a click is heard, and then apply limited upward pressure to ensure that the bayonet is seated securely. Resnap the scabbard securing strap with the right hand and then come to *order arms* (figure 4-9).

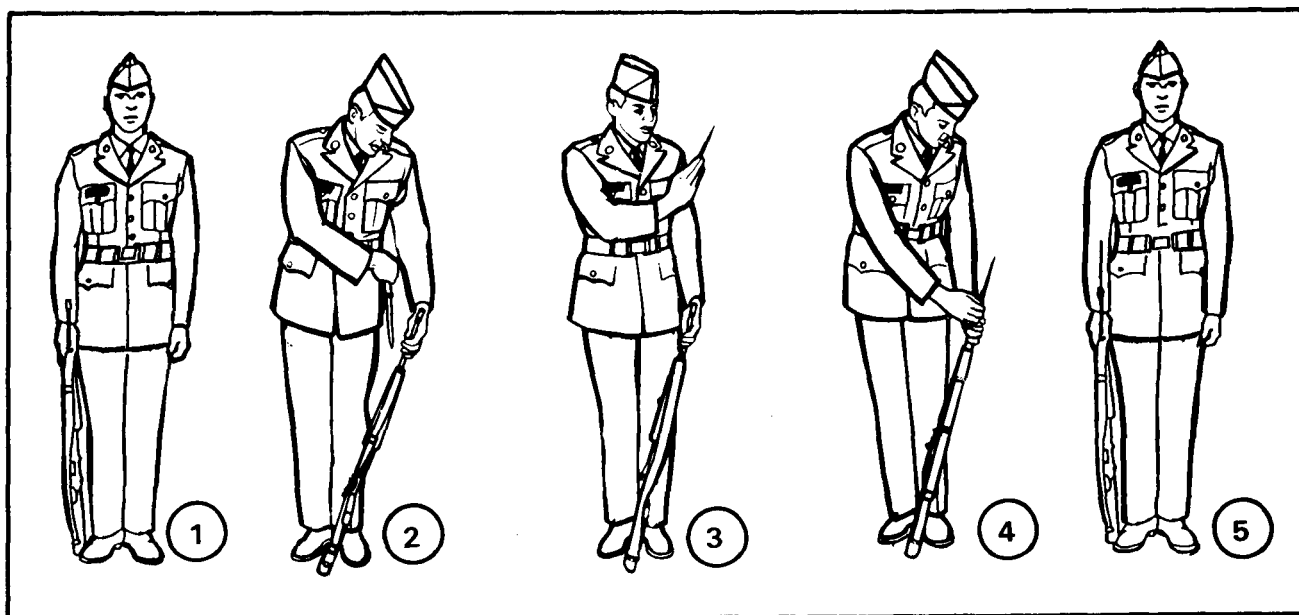


Figure 4-9. Fix Bayonets

- c. To *unfix bayonet*, the command is **Unfix, BAYONETS**. On the command of execution **BAYONETS**, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand at the handle of the bayonet and place the rifle butt between the feet with the magazine well to the front. Move the muzzle to the left with the left hand and secure it. Unsnap the scabbard securing strap with the right hand, and then release the bayonet from the rifle muzzle. Keeping the eyes on the bayonet point, return the bayonet to the scabbard and insert it with the barrel ring facing to the front. Resnap the scabbard securing strap and come to *order arms*. For safety, if the bayonet is difficult to remove from the rifle, stick the bayonet point

into the marching surface, bend over, and depress the catch mechanism with the left hand while pulling upward on the rifle with the right hand.

4-11. Carry Position

The *carry position* is assumed in the most convenient manner. This position allows a soldier to transport the rifle in a convenient manner when not in formation. For instructional purposes, the command **ASSUME THE RIGHT (LEFT) CARRY** is given when teaching the procedures for executing *present arms* from the *carry position* (figure 4-10).

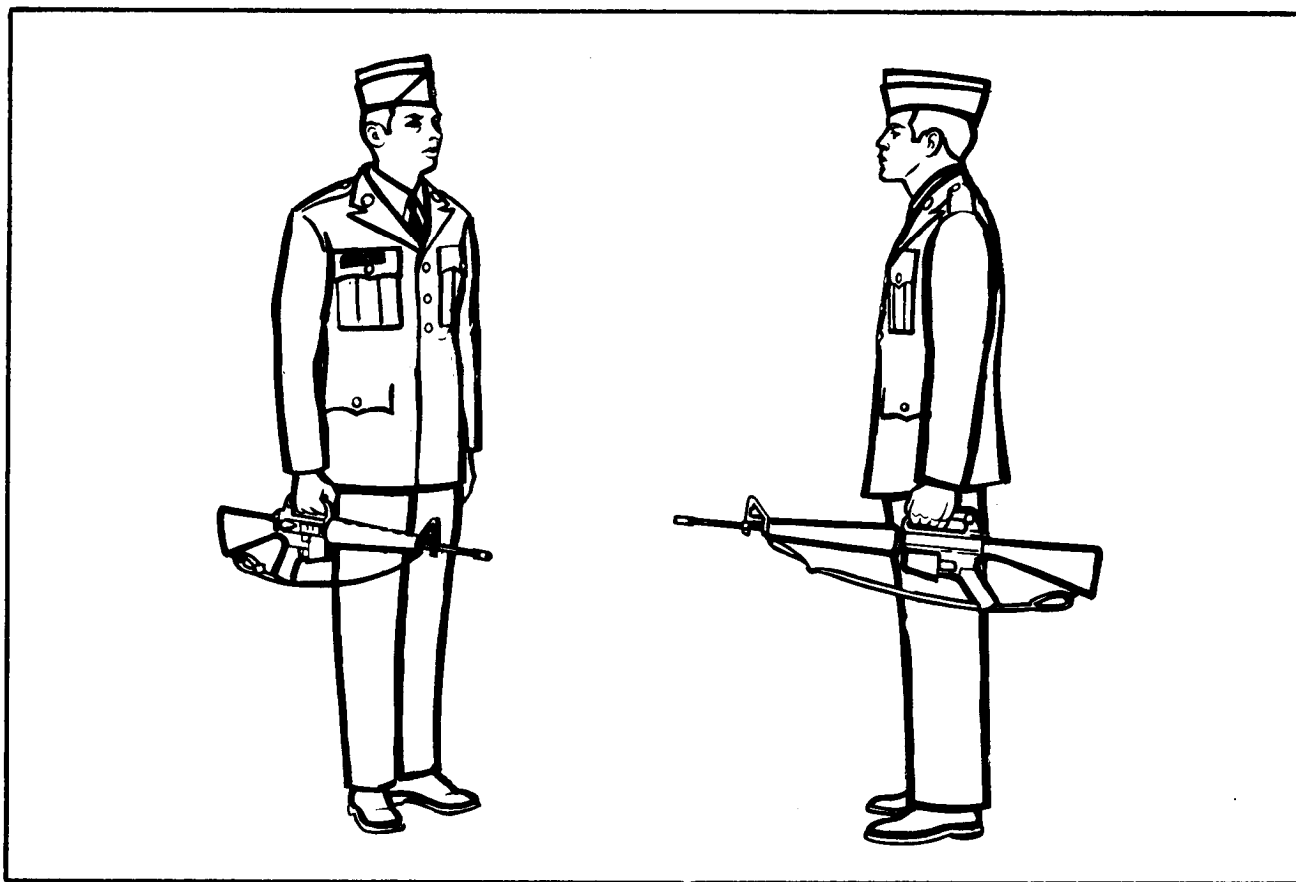


Figure 4-10. Carry Position, Right or Left Hand

Section II

SLING ARMS-M16 SERIES RIFLE

4-12. General

- a. This section contains the procedures for executing manual of arms movements while at *sling arms*.
- b. Remain at *sling arms* during all *rest* movements.

- c. All individual and unit drill movements can be executed at *sling arms* except *stack arms* and *fix* and *unfix bayonets*, which are executed from *order arms*.
- d. When in formation at *sling arms*, execute the *hand salute* on the command **Present, ARMS**.
- e. Platoon leaders and platoon sergeants carry their rifles at *sling arms* during all drills and ceremonies, and from this position they execute *present arms* only. They do not execute *unsling arms*. This also applies to squad leaders when squads drill as separate units.
- f. When all members of a unit are carrying their rifles at *sling arms*, the platoon leaders and platoon sergeants execute *present arms* only. They do not execute *unsling arms*.

4-13. Sling Arms

- a. From *order arms* with the sling(s) loose, the command for *sling arms* is **Sling, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and raise it vertically. Grasp the sling near the upper sling swivel with the left hand, and release the right hand. Place the right hand and arm between the sling and rifle and place the sling over the right shoulder. Regrasp the sling with the right hand so that the wrist is straight, the right forearm is horizontal, the elbow is tight against the side, and the rifle is vertical. Release the grasp of the left hand and move it sharply to the left side as in the position of *attention* (Figure 4-11).
- b. To return the rifle to *order arms* with the sling tight, the command is **Adjust, SLINGS**. On command of execution **SLINGS**, remove the rifle from the shoulder. Then, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and raise it vertically. With the left hand, place the butt of the rifle on the right hip and cradle it in the crook of the right arm. Use both hands to tighten the sling on the ejection port side. Grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and guide the rifle to the *order arms* position (as previously described).
- c. From *order arms* with sling(s) tight, the command is **Sling, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and raise the rifle vertically. With the left hand, place the rifle butt on the right hip, cradle the rifle in the crook of the right arm, and use both hands to adjust the sling. Grasp the sling with the left hand near the upper sling swivel and execute *sling arms* (as previously described).
- d. If an element is at *order arms* with the sling loose and the commander wants the sling to be tightened, he commands **Adjust SLINGS**. On the command of execution **SLINGS**, tighten the sling and guide the rifle to *order arms* (as previously described).

NOTE: Unless otherwise specified, armed elements of a formation *fall in* at *order arms* with slings loose.

- e. To return the rifle to *order arms* with the sling loose, the command is **Unslung, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the sling at the right shoulder. Release the right hand

grasp of the sling and remove the rifle from the shoulder. Grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand, release the left hand grasp of the sling, and guide the rifle to the *order arms* position (as previously described).

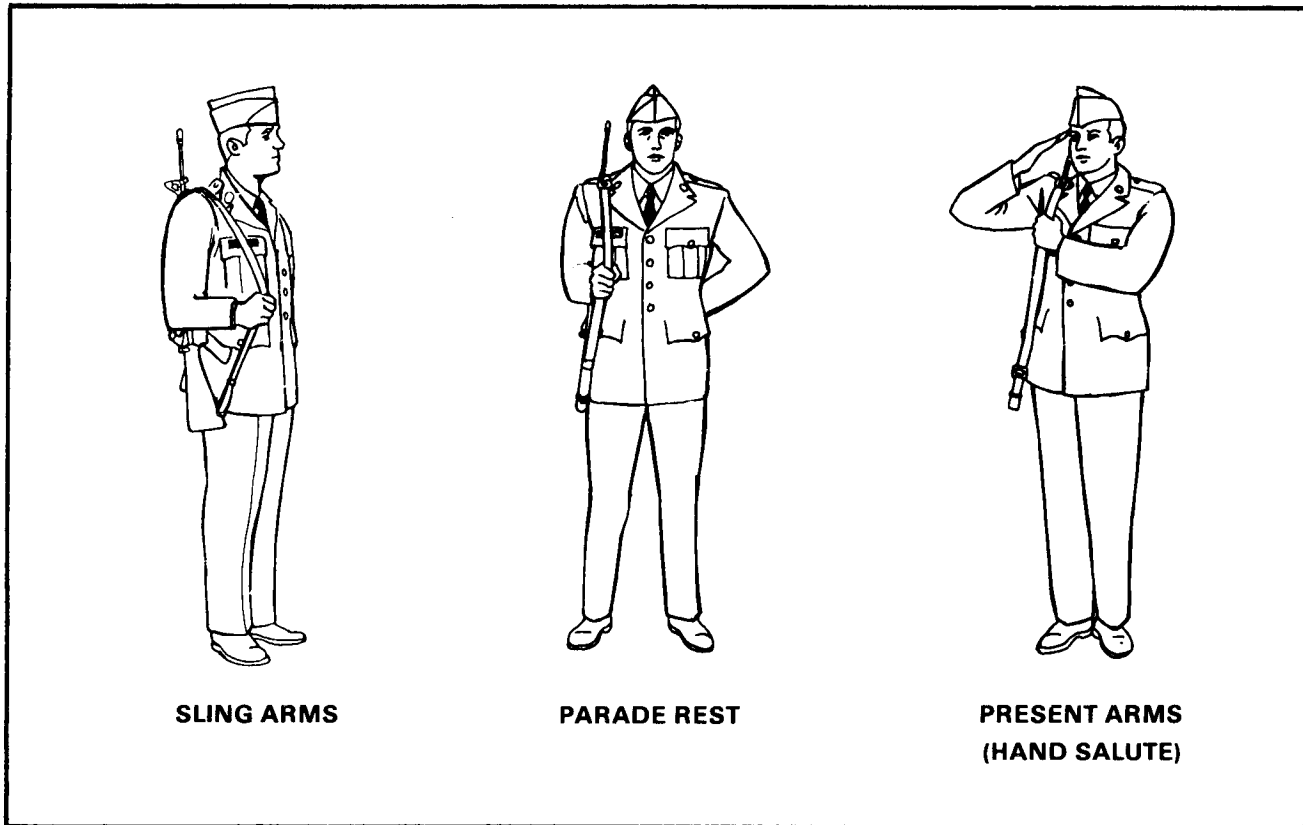


Figure 4-11. Sling Arms

4-14. Salute at Sling Arms

- a. To *salute* while at *sling arms*, the command is ***Present, ARMS***. On the command of execution ***ARMS***, reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the sling just above the right hand. Release the right hand and execute the *hand salute*.
- b. To terminate the *hand salute*, the command is ***Order, ARMS***. On the command of execution ***ARMS***, lower the right hand sharply to the side as in the position of *attention* and then regrasp the sling at the original position. After grasping the sling with the right hand, release the left hand and return it sharply to the left side as in the position of *attention*.
- c. When rendering reports or courtesy to an individual, the same rules apply for the *hand salute* (as explained in individual drill) (Figure 4-11).

NOTE: Individuals performing duty in congested areas, which would require frequent *salutes*, should carry the weapon at *sling arms*.

4-15. Port Arms from Sling Arms

- a. The command for this movement is **Port, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the sling at the shoulder. Lift the weapon (by the sling), swing it to the front of the body, and grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. Release the sling (left hand) and regrasp the weapon just forward of the sling. Ensure that the rifle is 4 inches from the belt and held diagonally across the body. Keep the elbows in at the sides and the right forearm horizontal (Figure 4-12).
- b. To resume *sling arms*, the command is **Sling, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, grasp the sling near the upper sling swivel with the left hand. Release the right hand and swing the rifle back onto the shoulder by placing the right arm between the sling and rifle, immediately resume the position of *sling arms*.

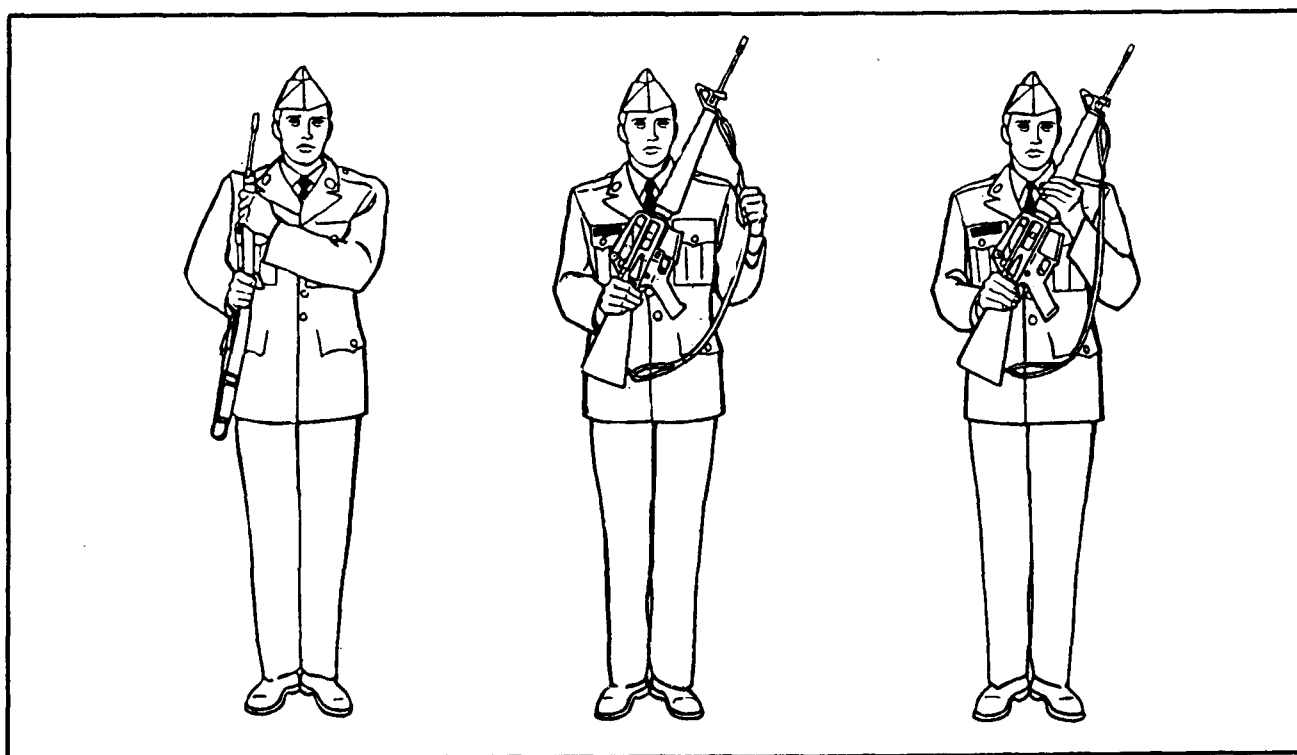


Figure 4-12. Port Arms from Sling Arms

4-16. Inspection Arms from Sling Arms

- a. The command for this movement is **Inspection, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* and then execute counts three through seven in the same manner as for *inspection arms* from *order arms*.
- b. **Ready, Port, ARMS** is executed in the same manner as explained in the manual of arms.
- c. To resume *sling arms*, the procedures are the same as from *port arms*.

- d. To execute *inspection arms* when the magazine is in the rifle, remove the magazine (just prior to count three) with the left hand and place it between the waist (left front) and the clothing. Return the magazine immediately after pulling the trigger and before resuming *port arms*.

Section III

SLING ARMS—M203 GRENADE LAUNCHER

4-17. General

- a. This section contains the procedures for executing the Manual of Arms movements with the M203 weapon (FM 23-31).
- b. The M203 weapon is carried at *sling arms*. All individual drill movements are executed as prescribed while remaining at *sling arms*.
- c. The only manual of arms movements that may be executed are *present arms* (*hand salute*), *port arms*, and *inspection arms*. Individuals armed with the M203 weapon remain at *sling arms* during other manual of arms movements; or, they return to *sling arms* from *port arms* when other members with M16 series rifles are commanded to other positions.

4-18. Manual Movements

- a. **Present Arms.** The *salute* with the M203 is executed in the same manner as prescribed for the M16 series rifle (while at *sling arms*).

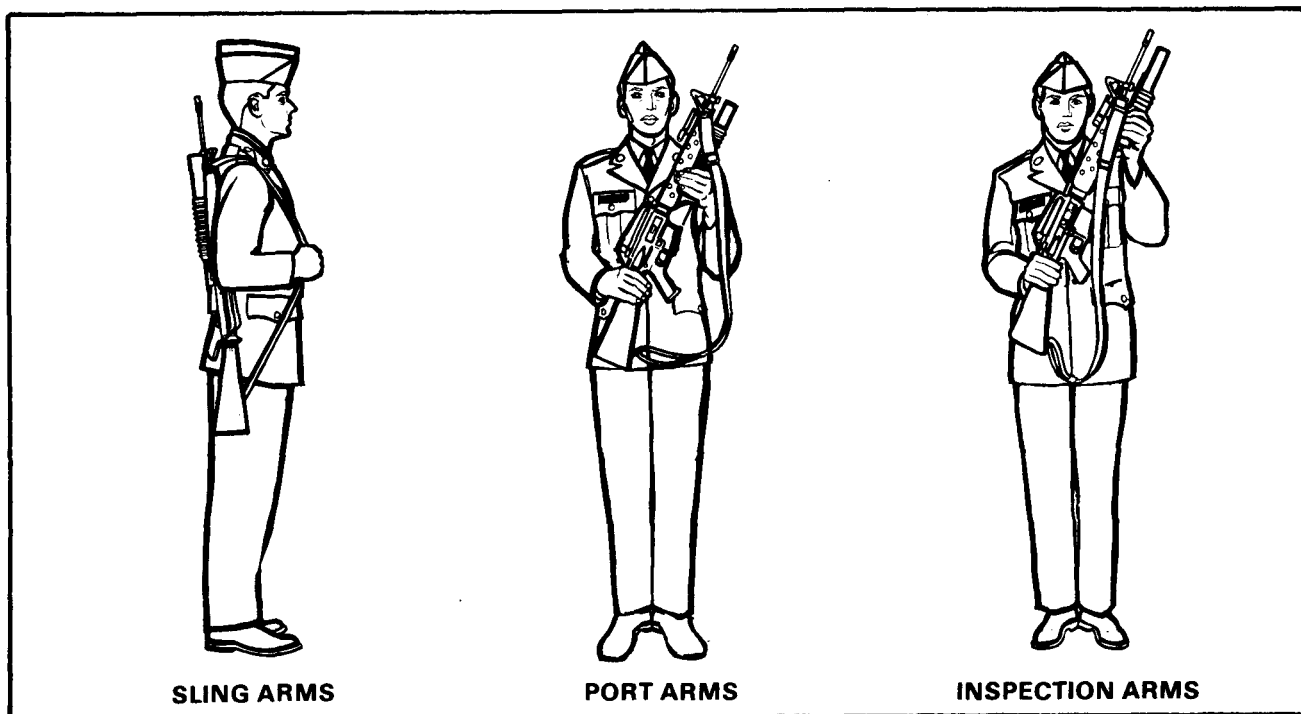


Figure 4-13. M203

- b. **Port Arms.** Execute *port arms* in the same manner as with the M16 series rifle from *sling arms*.
- c. **Inspection Arms.**
 - (1) *Inspection arms* with the M203 weapon is executed the same as *inspection arms* (while at *sling arms*) with the M16 series rifle. After completing the movements for *inspection arms* of the M16 series rifle, press the barrel release latch with the left thumb, slide the barrel to the left, and visually inspect the chamber (Figure 4-13).
 - (2) *Ready port arms* is executed the same as *ready port arms* with the M16 series rifle with one exception: on the command **Ready**, the first action is to close the barrel and pull the trigger of the grenade launcher.

CHAPTER 5
Squad Drill

The [so]ldiers must learn to keep their ranks, to obey words of command, and signals by drum and trumpet, and to observe good order, whether they halt, advance, retreat, are upon a march, or engaged with an enemy.
Niccolo Machiavelli Arte della Guerra, 1520

CONTENTS

Section I FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS

Paragraph	PAGE
5-1 General	5-1
5-2 Forming the Squad	5-2
5-3 Counting Off	5-4
5-4 Changing Interval While in Line	5-4
5-5 Aligning the Squad	5-5
5-6 Marching the Squad	5-7
5-7 Changing the Direction of a Column	5-7
5-8 Marching to the Flank	5-8
5-9 Forming a Column of Twos and Re-Forming	5-8
5-10 Resting the Squad	5-8
5-11 Dismissing the Squad	5-9

Section II STACK AND TAKE ARMS (M16 SERIES RIFLE)

5-12 General	5-9
5-13 Prepare Slings	5-9
5-14 Stack Arms	5-9
5-15 Take Arms	5-12

Section I
FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS

5-1. General

- a. Individual drill movements and the manual of arms are executed (as previously prescribed) while performing as a squad member.
- b. The squad has two prescribed formations—line and column. However, the squad may be formed into a column of twos from a column formation.

- c. When the squad is in line, squad members are numbered from right to left when in column, from front to rear.
- d. The squad normally *marches* in column, but for short distances it may *march* in line.
- e. When the squad drills as a separate unit, the squad leader carries his weapon at *sling arms*. When the squad is in a line formation, the squad leader assumes a post three steps in front of and centered on the squad; when in a column or a column of twos, three steps to the left and centered on the squad.
- f. When the squad drills as part of a larger unit, the squad leader occupies the number one (base) position of the squad. He carries his weapon in the same manner as prescribed for other riflemen in the squad.

5-2. Forming the Squad

- a. The squad normally forms in a line formation; however, it may *re-form* in column when each member can identify his exact position (equipment grounded) in the formation (figure 5-1).
 - (1) To form at *normal interval*, the squad leader comes to the position of *attention* and commands **FALL IN**. On the command **FALL IN**, the following actions occur simultaneously:
 - (a) Each member *double times* to his position in the formation.
 - (b) The right flank man positions himself so that when the squad is formed it is three steps in front of and centered on the squad leader.
 - (c) The right flank man comes to the position of *attention* and raises his left arm laterally at shoulder level, elbow locked, fingers and thumb extended and joined, and palm facing down. He ensures that the left arm is in line with the body.
 - (d) The man to the immediate left of the right flank man comes to the position of *attention*, turns his head and eyes to the right, and raises his left arm in the same manner as the right flank man. He obtains proper alignment by taking short steps forward or backward until he is on line with the right flank man. He then obtains *exact interval* by taking short steps left or right until his shoulder touches the extended fingertips of the right flank man. As soon as the man to the left has obtained *normal interval*, each man individually lowers his arm to his side, sharply turns his head and eyes to the front and assumes the position of *attention*.
 - (e) The right flank man then sharply returns to the position of *attention*.
 - (f) All other members of the squad form in the same manner except that the left flank man does not raise his left arm.

NOTE: The right flank man raises his arm and looks straight to the front unless the squad is to align on an element to its right.

- (2) To form at *close interval*, the formation is completed in the manner prescribed for *normal interval*, except that the command is **At close**

interval, FALL IN. Squad members obtain *close interval* by placing the heel of the left hand on the left hip even with the waist, fingers and thumb joined and extended downward, and with the elbow in line with the body and touching the arm of the man to the left.

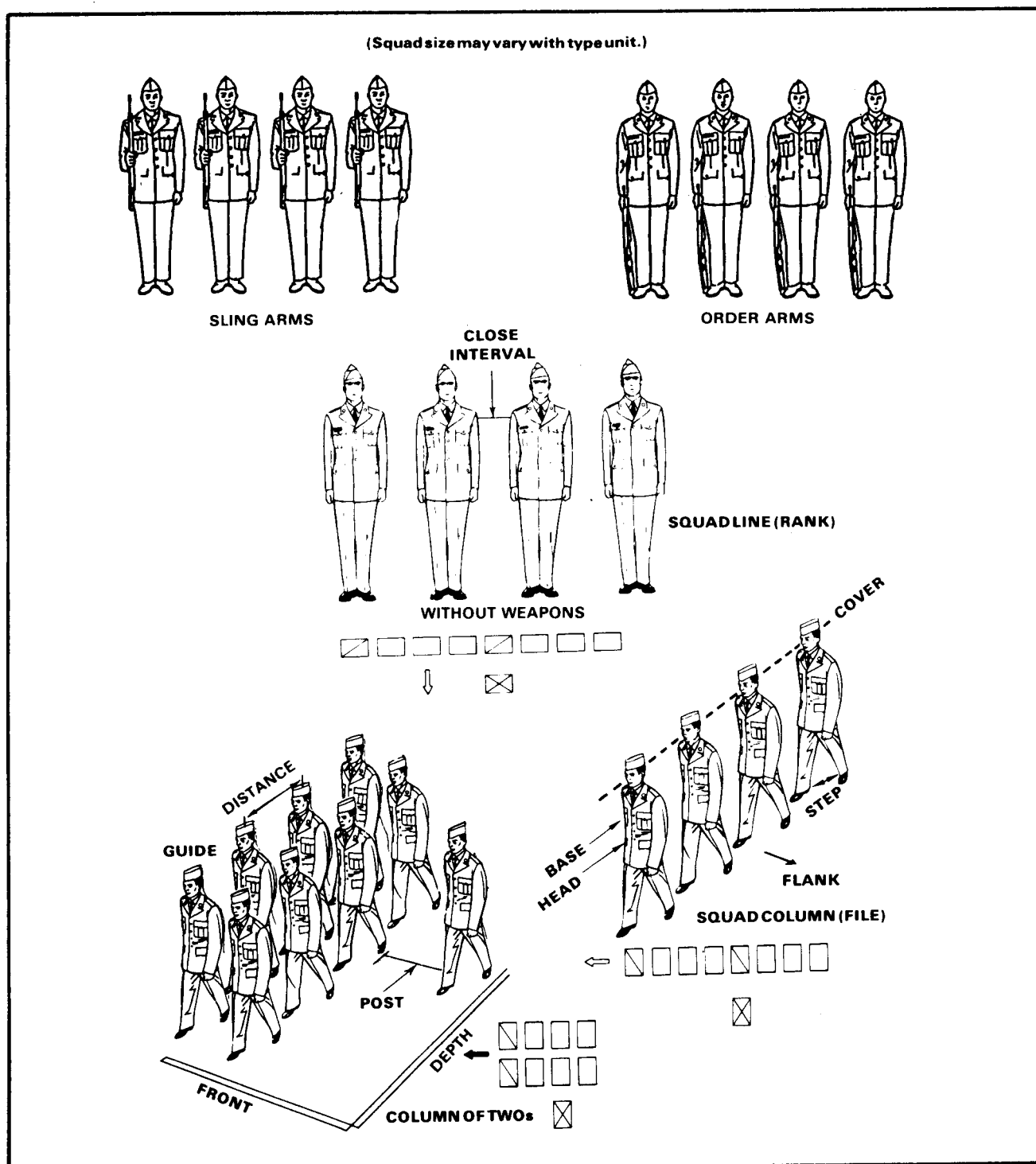


Figure 5-1. Squad Formation

- (3) To form *in column*, the squad leader *faces* the proposed flank of the column and commands ***In column, FALL IN***. On the command of execution ***FALL IN***, squad members *double time* to their original positions (grounded equipment) in formation and *cover* on the man to their front.
- b. When armed, members *fall in* at *order arms* or *sling arms*. For safety, the commands ***Inspection, ARMS; Ready, Port, ARMS***; and ***Order (Sling), ARMS*** are commanded at the initial formation of the day or when the last command is ***DISMISSED*** (Figure 5-1).

5-3. Counting Off

- a. The squad may *count off* in line or column formation. The command is ***Count, OFF***.
- b. When the squad is in a line formation, the counting is executed from right to left. On the command of execution ***OFF***, each member, except the right flank man, turns his head and eyes to the right, and the right flank man counts off ***“ONE.”*** After the man on the right counts off his number, the man to his left counts off with the next higher number and simultaneously turns his head and eyes to the front. All the other members execute *count off* in the same manner until the entire squad has counted off.
- c. When the squad is in column formation, the counting is executed from front to rear. On the command of execution ***OFF***, the soldier at the head of the column turns his head and eyes to the right and counts over his shoulder, ***“ONE.”*** After counting off his number, he immediately comes to the position of *attention*. All other members count their numbers in sequence in the same manner as the number one man; the last man in the file does not turn his head and eyes to the right.

5-4. Changing Interval While in Line

NOTE: To ensure that each member understands the number of steps to take, the squad leader should command ***Count, OFF*** before giving any commands that cause the squad to change interval. Members do not raise their arms when changing interval.

- a. To obtain *close interval* from *normal interval*, the command is ***Close Interval, MARCH***. On the command of execution ***MARCH***, the right flank man (number one man) *stands fast*. All men to the left of the number one man execute *right step march*, take one step less than their number (for example, number five man takes four steps), and *halt*.

NOTE: The squad leader takes the correct number of steps to maintain his position of three steps in front of and centered on the squad.

- b. To obtain *normal interval* from *close interval*, the command is ***Normal interval, MARCH***. On the command of execution ***MARCH***, the right flank man *stands fast*. All men to the left of number one man execute *left step march*, take one step less than their number (for example, number nine man takes eight steps), and *halt*.
- c. To obtain *double interval* from *normal interval*, the command is ***Double interval, MARCH***. On the command of execution ***MARCH***, the right flank

man *stands fast*. All men to the left of number one man *face* to the left as in *marching*, take one 30-inch step less than their number (for example, number seven man takes six steps), *halt*, and execute *right face*.

- d. To obtain *normal interval* from *double interval*, the command is **Normal interval, MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the right flank man *stands fast*. All men to the left of the number one man *face* to the right as in *marching*, take one 30-inch step less than their number (for example, number three man takes two steps), *halt*, and execute *left face*.

5-5. Aligning the Squad

NOTE: The squad leader commands the squad to the appropriate interval prior to giving the command for alignment.

- a. To align the squad at *normal interval*, the commands are **Dress right, DRESS** and **Ready, FRONT**. These commands are given only when armed soldiers are at *order arms* or *sling arms*. On the command of execution **DRESS**, the right flank man *stands fast*. Each member, except the right flank man, turns his head and eyes to the right and aligns himself with the man on his right. Each member, except the left flank man, extends his left arm laterally at shoulder level, elbow locked, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm facing down. He ensures his left arm is in line with his body and positions himself by short steps right or left until his right shoulder touches the fingertips of the man on his right. On the command of execution **FRONT**, each member returns sharply to the position of *attention* (Figure 5-2).

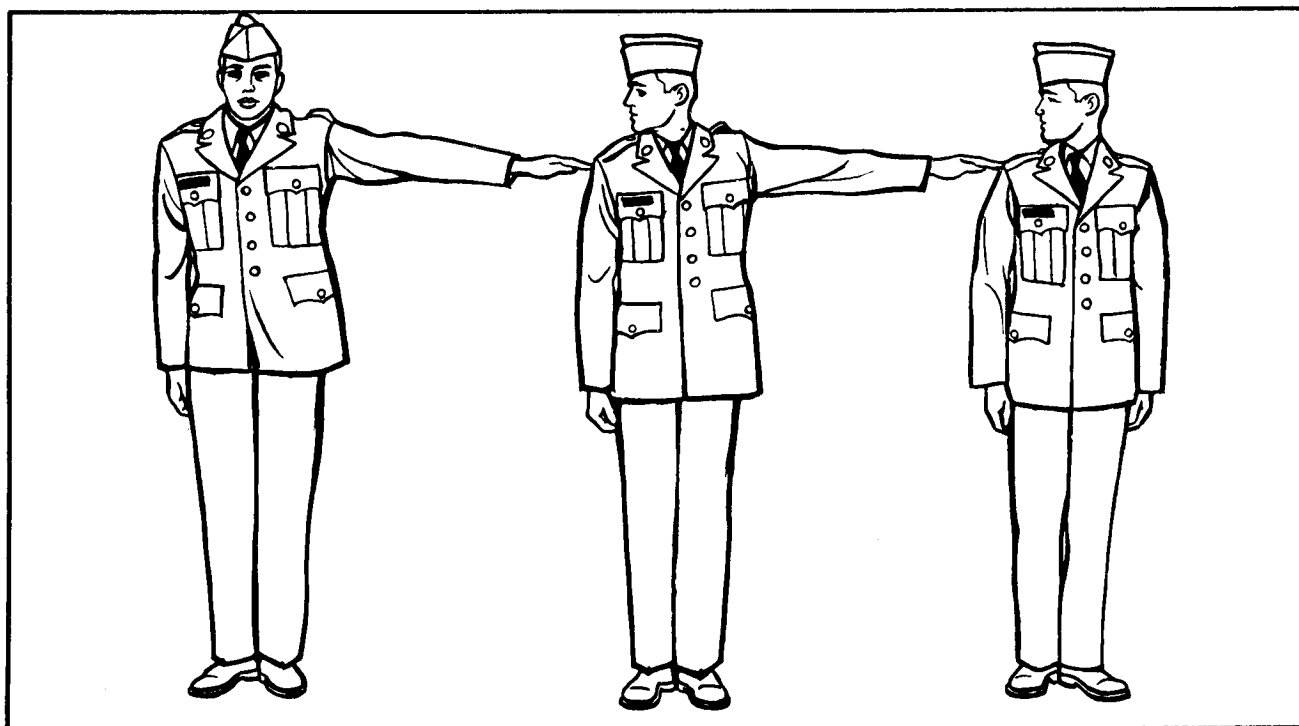


Figure 5-2. Alignment (Normal Interval)

NOTE: If the squad leader wants exact alignment, on the command of execution **DRESS**, he faces to the *half left* in marching and *marches* by the most direct route to a position on line with the squad, *halts* one step from the right flank man, and *faces* down the line. From his position, he verifies the alignment of the squad, directing the men to move forward or backward, as necessary, calling them by name or number: "**Private Jones, Forward two inches; Number Eight, Backward four inches.**" The squad leader remains at *attention*, taking short steps to the right or left as necessary to see down the squad. Having aligned the squad, he centers himself on the right flank man by taking short steps left or right. He then *faces* to the *half right* in *marching*, returns to his position (center of the squad), *halts* perpendicular to the formation, *faces* to the *left*, and commands **Ready, FRONT**. These procedures also apply when aligning the squad at *close* or *double interval*.

- b. To align the squad at *close interval*, the commands are **At close interval, Dress right, DRESS** and **Ready, FRONT**. The movement is executed in the same manner prescribed for alignment at *normal interval* except that the squad members obtain *close interval* (Figure 5-3).

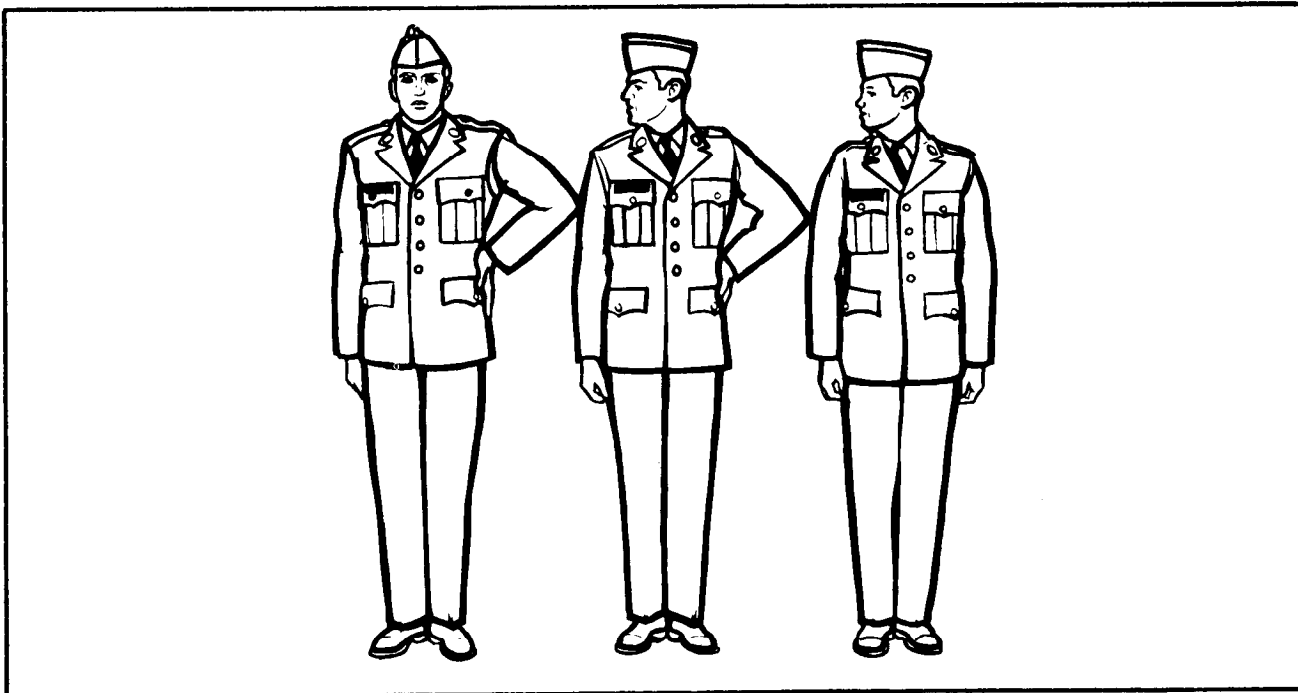


Figure 5-3. Alignment (Close Interval)

- c. To align the squad at *double interval*, the commands are **At double interval, Dress right, DRESS** and **Ready, FRONT**. These commands are given only when the troops are unarmed or at *sling arms*. On the command of execution **DRESS**, each member (except the right flank man) turns his head and eyes to the right and aligns himself on the man on his right. At the same time, each member (except the right and left flank men) extends both arms and positions himself by short steps right or left until his fingertips are touching the fingertips of the members on his right and left. (The right flank man raises his left arm; the left flank man raises his right arm.)
- d. To align the squad in column, the commands are **COVER** and **RECOVER**. On the command **COVER**, each member (except the number one man) raises

his left arm to a horizontal position, elbow locked, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm facing down, and obtains an arm's length plus about 6 inches (from the fingertips) to the back of the man to his front. At the same time, each man aligns himself directly behind the man to his front. To resume the position of *attention*, the command **RECOVER** is given. On this command, each member sharply returns to the position of *attention*.

5-6. Marching the Squad

- a. For short distances only, the squad may be *marched* forward while in a line formation.
- b. When *marching* long distances, the squad is *marched* in column.
- c. To form a column formation from a line formation, the command is **Right, FACE**.
- d. When a column formation is originated from a line formation *at close interval*, the squad may be *marched* for short distances at the *half step* with less than correct distance. To obtain correct distance while *marching* with less than correct distance, the command is **Extend, MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the number one man take one more 15-inch step and then steps off with a 30-inch step. Each squad member begins *marching* with a 30-inch step at the approximate point where the number one man stepped off, or as soon as correct distance has been obtained.

5-7. Changing the Direction of a Column

- a. From the *halt*, the command to start the squad in motion and simultaneously change the direction of march 90 or 45 degrees is **Column right (left), MARCH** or **Column half right (left), MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the lead man *faces* in the commanded direction and steps off, as in *marching*. All other members *march* forward and pivot on the ball of the lead foot in the commanded direction and step off with the trailing foot. As the members approach the pivot point, they shorten or lengthen their steps as necessary to pivot at the approximate point that the lead man pivoted.
- b. To change the direction of march 90 or 45 degrees when *marching*, the preparatory command **Column right (left)** or **Column half right (half left)** is given as the foot in the desired direction strikes the marching surface. The command of execution **MARCH** is given the next time the foot in the desired direction strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the lead man takes one additional step, pivots in the commanded direction as the pivot foot strikes the marching surface, and continues to *march* in the new direction. Other members continue to *march* forward and execute the pivot as prescribed from the *halt*.
- c. To *march* in the opposite direction, the command is **Rear, MARCH**. The preparatory command **Rear** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface. The command of execution **MARCH** is given the next time the right foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution, all members

take one more step with their left foot, pivot on the balls of both feet, turn 180 degrees to the right, and step off in the new direction. The arms are not allowed to swing outward while turning.

- d. To avoid an obstacle in the line of march, the squad leader directs, **INCLINE AROUND** _____. The lead man *inclines around* the obstacle and resumes the original direction. All other members follow the lead man.

5-8. Marching to the Flank

- a. The squad may be *marched* to the flank (for short distances only) when *marching* in column.
- b. The command for this movement is **Right (Left) flank, MARCH**. The preparatory command is given as the foot in the desired direction strikes the marching surface, and the command of execution is given the next time the foot in the desired direction strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, all members take one more step, pivot 90 degrees in the commanded direction on the ball of the lead foot, and step off in the new direction with the trailing foot. As the members begin to *march* in the new direction, they glance out of the corner of the right eye and dress to the right.

5-9. Forming a Column of Twos and Re-forming

- a. Forming a column of twos from a file is executed only from the *halt*. The command is **Column of twos to the right (left), MARCH**. On the preparatory command, the lead team leader commands **STAND FAST**. The trailing team leader commands **Column half right (left)**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the trailing team leader executes a *column half right (left)*, *inclines to the left or right* when the correct interval is obtained, and commands **Mark time, MARCH** and **Team, HALT** so as to *halt* abreast of the lead team leader.
- b. Forming a file from a column of twos is executed only from the *halt*. The command is **File from the left (right), MARCH**. On the preparatory command, the lead team leader commands **Forward**. The trailing team leader commands **Stand fast**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the lead team *marches* forward. The trailing team leader commands **Column half left (right)** when the second man from the rear of the lead team is abreast. He gives the command **MARCH** when the last man of the lead team is abreast of him and his right foot strikes the marching surface. He then *inclines right or left* to follow the lead team at the correct distance.

5-10. Resting the Squad

- a. The squad members in formation execute the *rest* positions in the same manner as prescribed in Chapter 3.
- b. When the situation warrants a greater degree of relaxation than the *rest* positions, the squad leader may command **FALL OUT**. Squad members may leave their position in formation, but they remain in the immediate area. The

command **FALL OUT** will not be used to terminate a formation (AR 310-25).

5-11. Dismissing the Squad

- a. The squad is *dismissed* with the members at *attention*.
- b. With armed troops, the commands are **Inspection, ARMS; Ready, Port, ARMS; Order (Sling), ARMS;** and **DISMISSED**.
- c. With unarmed troops, the command is **DISMISSED**.
- d. Unless otherwise stated (by the person in charge in his instructions prior to the command *dismissed*), the command *dismissed* terminates only the formation, not the duty day (AR 310-25).

Section II

STACK AND TAKE ARMS (M16 SERIES RIFLE)

5-12. General

- a. The squad members execute *stack arms* from their positions in line formation (at *normal interval*) from *order arms* (Figure 5-4).

NOTE: When the squeue is part of a larger unit, *stack arms* may be executed in a column formation (when the formation consists of three or more files and the squads are at *normal interval*). Second or third squad is designated as the stack squad.

- b. When in line formation, the squad leader commands **Count, OFF** and then designates the stackmen by numbers (2-5-8).

5-13. Prepare Slings

After the stackmen are designated, the squad leader then commands **Prepare, SLINGS**. On the command of execution **SLINGS**, each stackman (or stack squad) grasps the barrel of his rifle with the right hand and raises the rifle vertically. With his left hand, he places the rifle butt on his right hip and cradles the rifle in the crook of his right arm. Using both hands, he adjusts the sling keeper so that there is a 2-inch loop formed from the sling keeper to the upper sling swivel. As soon as the loop is prepared, he returns to *order arms*.

5-14. Stack Arms

- a. When all stackmen have returned to *order arms*, the squad leader commands **Stack, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, each stackman grasps the barrel of his rifle with his right hand and places the rifle directly in front of and centered on his body with the sights to the rear. The rifle butt is placed on the marching surface so that the heel of the rifle butt is on line with the toes of his footgear. The stackman bends slightly forward at the waist and grasps his rifle with his left hand at the upper portion of the handguard (keeping

the rifle vertical at all times). The first two fingers of the left hand hold the inner part of the loop against the rifle. The stackman reaches across the front of the rifle with his right hand, grasps the outer part of the loop, and holds it open for insertion of other rifles.

- b. On the command of execution **ARMS**, the men to the right and left of the stackman perform the following movements simultaneously:
 - (1) The man on the stackman's right grasps the barrel of his rifle with his right hand and raises and centers his rifle with the magazine well *facing* to the front, wrist held shoulder high, elbow locked. With his left hand, he then grasps the handguard (midway), releases his right hand, and regrasps the rifle at the small of the stock. He lowers both arms, with elbows locked (holding the rifle in a horizontal position with the muzzle to the left and the magazine well to the front).
 - (2) The man on the stackman's left grasps the barrel of the rifle with his right hand and raises and centers his rifle with magazine well *facing* to the front, wrist held shoulder high, elbow locked. Using his left hand, he then grasps the rifle at the small of the stock, releases the right hand, and regrasps the handguard (midway). He then lowers both arms, with elbows locked (holding the rifle in a horizontal position with the muzzle to the right and magazine well to the front).
- c. As soon as the stackman has placed his rifle in position, both men move the foot nearest the stackman 18 inches (*half right* or *half left*) toward the stackman. The man on the stackman's left inserts the muzzle of his rifle into the loop to a point about halfway between the flash suppressor and the front sight assembly. He holds his rifle in this position until the man on the right inserts the muzzle of his rifle in a similar manner and above the other rifle muzzle.
- d. Without moving the feet, both riflemen swing the butt of their rifles out and then down to the marching surface, making the stack tight with the rifle butts online and about two feet from the base line. When the stack has been completed, all three men resume the position of *attention*.
- e. Additional rifles are passed to the nearest stack on the right (right or left if stacked in column). The men with additional rifles grasp the rifle barrel with the right hand and raise the rifle vertically with the magazine well to the front, wrist held shoulder high, elbow locked, and right arm extended to the right front. Throughout the pass, the rifle is held vertical with the magazine well to the front. The man to the left of the stackman then grasps the rifle midway at the handguard with his left hand. The man passing the additional rifle then releases the rifle and sharply returns to the position of *attention*. The man to the left of the stackman then moves the rifle to the right until it is centered on his body, and he grasps the rifle barrel with his right hand, wrist held shoulder high and elbow locked. He then releases the left hand and sharply returns his left hand to the left side as in the position of *attention*. He then moves the rifle to his right front. The stackman receives the rifle and centers it in the same manner as previously described. The man to the left of the stackman sharply returns to the position of *attention* after he releases

the rifle. Once the stackman has centered the rifle and grasped the barrel with the right hand, he bends forward at the waist and places the rifle in the stack so that it is secure (without damaging the front sight assembly). If there are two additional rifles, the second rifle is passed in the same manner as the first.

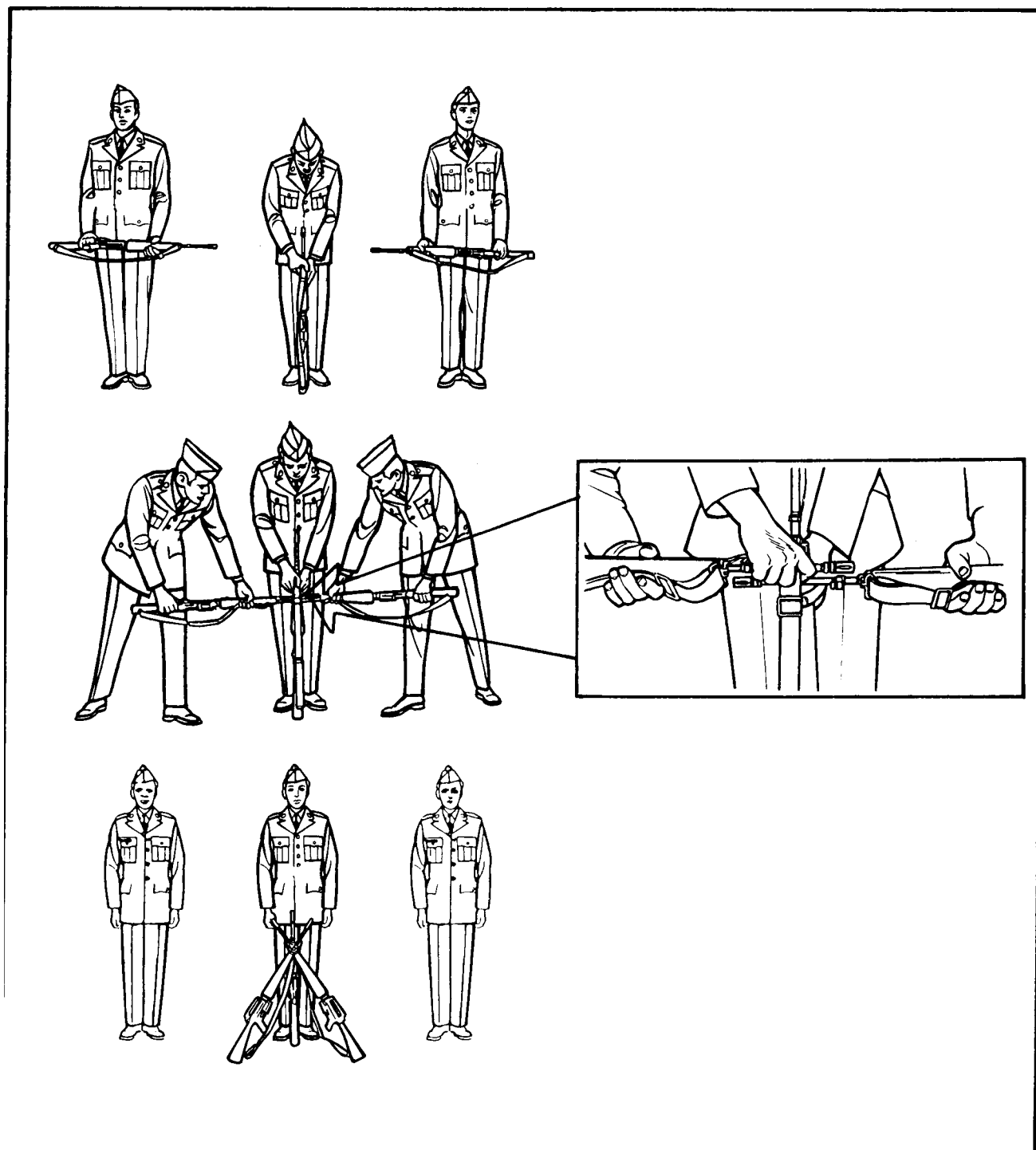


Figure 5-4 Stack Arms

5-15. Take Arms

- a. To *take arms*, the command is **Take, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, the men return the additional rifles in the same manner as the rifles were received. The stackman secures the stack and holds the loop in the same manner as for stacking rifles.
- b. The men on the left and right step toward the stackman in the same manner as when stacking arms. Each man reaches down and regrasps his rifle (one hand at the small of the stock and one hand midway of the hanguard) and brings it to the horizontal position. The man on the right frees his rifle first and resumes *order arms*. The man on the left frees his rifle and resumes *order arms*.
- c. The stackman cradles his rifle and adjusts the sling and sling keeper to its original position and then resumes *order arms*.

CHAPTER 6

Platoon Drill

“If in training soldiers commands are habitually enforced, the army will be well-disciplined; if not, its discipline will be bad.”

Sun Tsu, On the Art of War, trans. 1910

CONTENTS

Section I FORMATIONS

Paragraph	PAGE
6-1 General	6-1
6-2 Forming the Platoon	6-4
6-3 Breaking Ranks	6-6
6-4 Counting Off	6-5
6-5 Changing Interval	6-5
6-6 Aligning the Platoon	6-6
6-7 Opening and Closing Ranks	6-7
6-8 Resting the Platoon	6-8
6-9 Dismissing the Platoon	6-8

Section II MOVEMENTS

6-10 General	6-8
6-11 Eyes Right.....	6-8
6-12 Changing the Direction of a Column	6-9
6-13 Marching to the Flanks	6-11
6-14 Forming a File and Re-Forming	6-11
6-15 Forming a Column of Twos and Re-Forming	6-12

Section I

FORMATIONS

6-1. General

- a. Individual drill movements and the manual of arms are executed (as previously described) while performing as a squad member during the conduct of platoon drill.
- b. For the most part, platoon drill merely provides the procedures for executing drill movements in conjunction with other squads formed in the same formation.

- c. The platoon has two prescribed formations — line and column (Figure 6-1). However, the platoon may be formed into a file or a column of twos from a column formation.
- d. When in a line formation, the elements (squads) of a platoon are numbered from front to rear; in a column formation, from left to right.

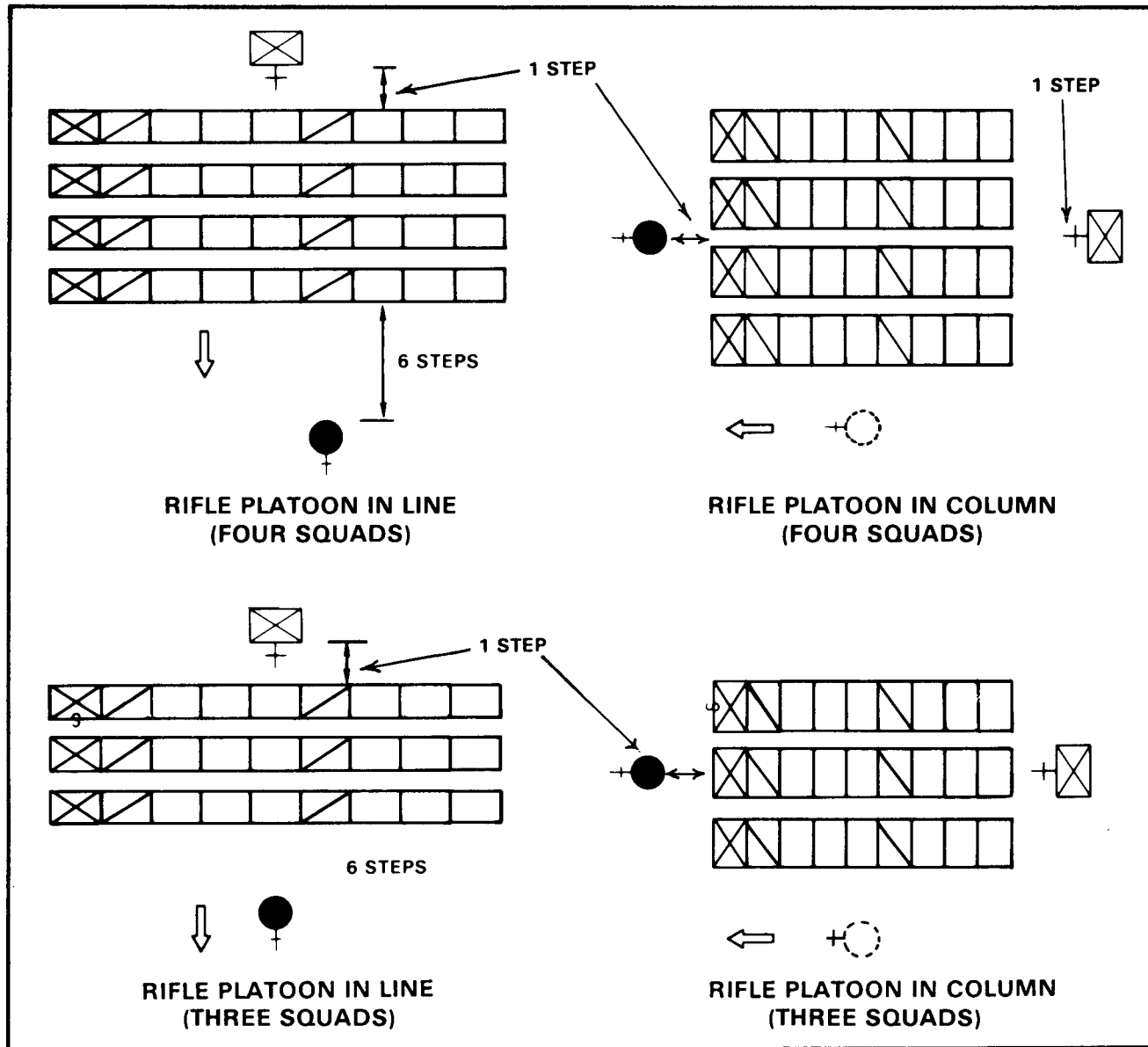


Figure 6-1. Platoon Formations

- e. During all drill and ceremonies, the platoon leader and platoon sergeant carry their rifles at *sling arms*. When the platoon drills as part of a larger unit, the platoon leader and platoon sergeant remain at *sling arms* during all manual of arms movements except when executing the *hand salute* while at *sling arms*.

- f. When the platoon drills as a separate unit, in a line formation, the post for the platoon leader is six steps in front of and centered on the platoon; when in a column formation, the platoon leader is six steps on the left flank and centered on the platoon.
- g. When the platoon leader commands ***Open ranks, Backward, Right (Left) step, Forward, MARCH*** or causes the platoon to change interval, he moves at the same time (with the appropriate step) so as to maintain proper position.
- h. When the platoon drills as part of a larger unit, in a line formation, the post for the platoon leader is six steps in front of and centered on the platoon; in a column formation, the platoon leader is at correct distance (one arm's length plus 6 inches) in front of and centered between the second and third squad leaders. When assuming his post in column from a line formation, the platoon leader *faces* to the right in *marching* (on the command of execution **FACE**) and *marches* in the most direct route to his post, *halts*, and *faces* to the left. When assuming his post in line from a column formation, the platoon leader *faces* to the left in *marching* (on the command of execution **FACE**) and *marches* in the most direct route to his post, *halts* perpendicular to the formation, and *faces* to the right. When in column formation (company) and the command ***Column of twos from the right*** is given, the platoon leader *faces* to the right in *marching*, repositions himself in front of and centered between the squad leaders of the third and fourth squads, *halts*, and *faces* to the left. When the unit *re-forms* into a column of fours, he *faces* to the left in *marching* and resumes his original position in the column.
- i. When the platoon drills as a separate unit, in a line formation, the post for the platoon sergeant is centered on the platoon at correct distance (one step) to the rear of the last rank. On the command ***Open ranks, MARCH; Backward, MARCH; Right (Left) step, MARCH; FORWARD, MARCH*** and on commands that cause the platoon to change interval in line, he moves at the same time (with the appropriate step) so as to maintain proper position. If a file or column of twos is formed, he remains in position until the last file has passed, *faces* to the half left (half right) in *marching*, and continues *marching*, positioning himself behind the last man in the file or in a column of twos, at the correct distance to the rear and centered between the two squads. When *re-forming* into a column of fours, the platoon sergeant follows the rear element and resumes his post in the column when the element has *halted*.
- j. When the platoon drills as part of a larger formation, in a line formation, the platoon sergeant's post is one step to the rear and centered on the platoon; in a column formation, the platoon sergeant is one step behind and centered between the second and third squads. When assuming his post in column from a line formation, the platoon sergeant *faces* to the left in *marching* (on the command of execution **FACE**) and *marches* in the most direct route to his post. He then *halts* and *faces* to the right. When assuming his post in line from a column formation, he *faces* to the right in *marching* (on the command of execution **FACE**) and *marches* in the most direct route to his post, *halts* centered on the platoon, and *faces* to the left. When the platoon is in a column formation (company) and the command of ***Column of twos from the left***

is given, the platoon sergeant *faces* to the right in *marching*, repositions himself behind and centered between the third and fourth squads, *halts*, and *faces* to the left.

NOTE: When the files (columns) are uneven, the platoon sergeant normally directs the men in longer files to move to another file to balance the formation; or he may fill the vacancy himself as the last man in the right file.

- k. The leader of the first squad serves as the base when the platoon is a line formation. The leader of the fourth squad serves as the base when the platoon is in a column formation.

6-2. Forming the Platoon

- a. The platoon normally forms in a line formation; however, it may *re-form* in a column when each man can identify his exact position (equipment grounded) in the formation.
- b. The platoon forms basically the same as a squad. The platoon sergeant assumes the position of *attention* and commands **FALL IN (At close interval, FALL IN or In column, FALL IN)**. On the command **FALL IN (At close interval, FALL IN)**, the squad leader and the first squad (when formed) is three steps in front of and centered on the platoon sergeant. Other squad leaders cover on the first squad leader at the correct distance, which is obtained by estimation. The members of the first squad *fall in* on their squad leader as prescribed for squad drill. Members of the other squads *fall in* on their squad leader, assume the position of *attention*, and turn their heads and eyes to the right. They obtain correct distance by taking short steps forward or backward and align themselves on the man to their right. They then sharply turn their heads and eyes to the front as in the position of *attention* and obtain proper interval by taking short steps left and right to cover on the man to their front. Members of all squads, other than the first squad, will not raise their left arms unless the man to their immediate left has no one to his front in the formation on which to cover.
- c. When armed, members fall in at *order arms* or *sling arms*. For safety, the commands **Inspection, ARMS; Ready, Port, ARMS; Order (Sling), ARMS** are given at the initial formation of the day and just before the last command, **DISMISSED**.
- d. When a report is appropriate, the platoon sergeant commands **REPORT**. The squad leaders, in succession from front to rear, turn their heads and eyes toward the platoon sergeant and *salute* (holding the *salute* until returned) and report. For example:
 - (1) **Situation 1.** When all squad members are in formation, the report is **“All present.”**
 - (2) **Situation 2.** When squad members are absent, the soldiers and reasons for absence are reported:
 - Pvt Smith — CQ runner**
 - Pvt Jones — sick call**

Pvt Williams – AWOL

- e. After receiving the report from the squad leaders, the platoon sergeant *faces about* and awaits the arrival of the platoon leader. When the platoon leader has *halted* at his post, the platoon sergeant *salutes* and reports, **“Sir, All present”**; or **“Sir, All accounted for”**; or **“Sir, (so many) men absent.”** The platoon leader returns the *salute*. After the *salute* has been returned, the platoon sergeant *faces* to the right in *marching*, *inclines around* the squad leaders, *halts* at his post, and *faces* to the right.
- f. If the platoon leader is not present for the formation, the platoon sergeant steps forward three steps (after receiving the squad leader’s report) and assumes the duties of the platoon leader.
- g. When appropriate, the platoon may be formed by the platoon leader rather than by the platoon sergeant. The procedures are the same as previously described except that the first squad forms six steps in front of and centered on the platoon leader, and the platoon sergeant forms at his post to the rear of the platoon.

6-3. Breaking Ranks

- a. When the situation requires one or more individuals to leave the formation or to receive specific instructions from the platoon leader, the platoon leader directs: **“Private Doe (pause), Front and center”**; or, **“The following personnel front and center — Private Doe (pause), Private Smith.”**
- b. When the individual’s name is called, he assumes the position of *attention* and replies, **“Here, Sir (Sergeant).”** He then takes one (15-inch) step backward, *halts*, *faces* to the right (left) in *marching*, and exits the formation by *marching* to the nearest flank. Once the individual has cleared the formation, he begins to *double time* and *halts* two steps from and centered on the platoon leader.

NOTE: When a group of individuals are called from the formation, the group forms centered on the platoon leader. The platoon leader should direct (point) the first man into position so that the rank will be centered when the last man has joined the group.

6-4. Counting Off

- a. The platoon counts off in the same manner as the squad.
- b. When in a line formation, the squads count in unison from right to left each squad leader sounds off, **“ONE.”**
- c. When in a column formation, the men abreast of each other count in unison from front to rear each squad leader sounds off, **“ONE.”**

6-5. Changing Interval

- a. The platoon changes interval in a line formation in the same manner as the squad.

- b. To change interval when the platoon is in a column at the *halt*, the right file *stands fast* and serves as the base. All other members (abreast of each other) execute the movement as previously described. To obtain *close interval* from *normal interval*, the third squad takes one *right step*, the second squad takes two *right steps*, and the first squad takes three *right steps*. To obtain *normal interval*, the procedures are the same except that the squads execute the same number of *left steps*.
- c. To change interval when the platoon is *marching* in a column, the preparatory command **Close interval** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface, and the command of execution **MARCH** is given the next time the right foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the base squad (right file) takes one more 30-inch step and then executes the *half step*. All other men take one more step, simultaneously execute a *column half right*, and *march* until *close interval* is obtained. They execute a *column half left* and assume the *half step* when abreast of the corresponding man of the base squad. On the command **Forward, MARCH**, all men resume *marching* with a 30-inch step. The commands **Mark time, MARCH** and **Platoon, HALT** may also be given.
- d. To resume *marching* at *normal interval*, the preparatory command **Normal Interval** is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface, and the command of execution **MARCH** is given the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the platoon members obtain *normal interval* in the same manner prescribed for *close interval* except that they each execute *column half left* and then *column half right*.
- e. To obtain *double interval* from *normal interval*, the procedures are the same as from *close interval* to *normal interval*.
- f. To obtain *normal interval* from *double interval* (closing the formation in column from *open ranks*), the procedures are the same as obtaining *close interval* from *normal interval*.

6-6. Aligning the Platoon

- a. The platoon is aligned similar to the squad.
- b. On the command of execution **DRESS**, the first squad leader *stands fast* and serves as the base. Other squad leaders obtain correct distance by estimation. The members of the first squad execute in the same manner as in squad drill to obtain exact interval. All other squads execute as the first squad, except that each squad member raises the left arm only for uniformity, actually covering (glancing out the corner of the left eye) on the man to the front.
- c. If the platoon leader wants exact alignment, he *faces* to the half left (half right) in *marching* and *marches* (on the command of execution **DRESS**) by the most direct route to a position on line with the first squad, *halts* one step from the squad leader or left flank man, and *faces* down the line. From this position, he verifies the alignment of the first squad, directing the men to move forward or backward, as necessary, calling them by name or number: **“Private Jones, Forward two inches; Number eight, Backward four**

inches.” The platoon leader remains at *attention*, taking short steps to the right or left as necessary, to see down the squad. Having aligned the first squad, the platoon leader, after centering himself on the first squad, *faces* to the left (right) in *marching*, taking two (three if at open ranks) short steps to the next squad, *halts*, *faces* down the line, and aligns the squad in the same manner. After the last squad is aligned, the platoon leader centers himself on the squad leader by taking short steps left or right, *faces* to the right (left) in *marching*, returns to his position (centered on the platoon), *halts* perpendicular to the formation, *faces* to the left (right), and commands **Ready, FRONT.**

NOTE: When the platoon dresses as part of a larger formation, all squad leaders glance to their right and align themselves on the unit to their right. The platoon leader aligns the platoon from the left flank rather than from the right flank when his platoon is not formed as the right flank platoon.

- d. To align the platoon in column, the commands are **COVER** and **RECOVER**. On the command **COVER**, the fourth squad leader *stands fast* and serves as base. The squad leaders with the exception of the left flank squad leader, raise their arms laterally and turn their heads and eyes to the right. The members of the fourth squad raise their left arms horizontally (as in squad drill) to the front and cover the man to their front at correct distance. Squad members of the third, second, and first squads raise their left arms horizontally to the front (for uniformity only), cover on the man to their front, and, at the same time, glance out of the corner of their right eyes aligning on the man to their right. To resume the position of *attention*, the command is **RECOVER**. On this command, each man sharply returns to the position of *attention*.

NOTE: When the platoon is aligned in column as part of a larger unit but is not the lead platoon, the squad leaders do not raise their arms or turn their heads and eyes but cover on the squad to their front. The platoon leader must wait until the platoon leader of the platoon to his front has commanded **RECOVER** before he *faces about* and gives the command **COVER**.

6-7. Opening and Closing Ranks

- a. **Open ranks, MARCH** is executed from a line formation while at the *halt*. It may be executed while at any of the prescribed intervals. The commands for these movements are **Open ranks, MARCH** and **Close ranks, MARCH**.
- b. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the front rank takes two steps forward, the second rank takes one step forward, the third rank *stands fast*, and the fourth rank takes two steps backward. If additional ranks are present, the fifth rank takes four steps backward, and the sixth rank takes six steps backward.

NOTE: After taking the prescribed steps, the men do not raise their arms. If the platoon leader wants exact interval or alignment, he commands *At close Interval (At double Interval), Dress right, DRESS*.

- c. To **close ranks**, the command is **Close ranks, MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the first rank takes four steps backward, the second rank takes two steps backward, the third rank *stands fast*, and the fourth rank takes one step forward.

- d. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the platoon leader and platoon sergeant take the appropriate number of steps to maintain their posts.

6-8. Resting the Platoon

The platoon *rests* in the same manner prescribed for the squad.

6-9. Dismissing the Platoon

- a. The procedures for *dismissing* the platoon are basically the same as prescribed for the squad.
- b. The platoon leader commands **PLATOON SERGEANT**. The platoon sergeant *faces* to the right in *marching* and *inclines around* the squad leaders, *halts* three steps in front of and centered on the platoon, and *faces* to the right. The platoon leader then commands **TAKE CHARGE OF THE PLATOON**, and *salutes* are exchanged. The platoon leader is no longer part of the formation. The platoon sergeant takes three steps forward, *halts*, *faces about*, and carries out the platoon leader's instructions.
- c. If the platoon sergeant so desires, the squads may be released to the control of the squad leaders. The platoon sergeant commands **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR SQUADS**, and *salutes* are exchanged. The platoon sergeant is no longer part of the formation.

NOTE: Without leaving their positions, the squad leaders then command **FALL OUT**, move to a position in the immediate area, and command **FALL IN**. Then, they carry out the previous instructions and/or give any instructions for actions before the next duty formation.

Section II MOVEMENTS

6-10. General

- a. The platoon *marches* in the same manner prescribed for the squad.
- b. When the platoon is *marching* in a line, the first squad leader serves as the guide, and when the platoon is *marching* in a column, the fourth squad leader serves as the guide.
- c. When *marching* in line, each member of each squad (glancing out of the corner of his right eye) maintains alignment on the man to his right. When *marching* in column, each member of the first, second, and third squads maintains alignment on the man to his right.

6-11. Eyes Right

- a. The platoon renders courtesy during ceremonies or when *marching* past the Colors by executing *eyes right*. The commands for this movement are **Eyes, RIGHT** and **Ready, FRONT**.
- b. At the *halt*, all men (on the command of execution, **RIGHT**), while keeping their shoulders parallel to the front, turn their heads and eyes to the right

at a 45-degree angle. They focus on and follow the person passing to the front until they are again looking forward, at which time their heads and eyes remain fixed to the front. Only the platoon leader renders the *hand salute*.

- c. When *marching*, the preparatory command **Eyes** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface and the command of execution **RIGHT** is given the next time the right foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **RIGHT**, all men, except the right file, turn their heads and eyes to the right and align themselves on the right file while continuing to *march*. Men in the right file do not turn their heads and eyes but continue looking straight to the front and maintain correct distance. Only the platoon leader *salutes*. To terminate the courtesy, the preparatory command **Ready** is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface, and the command of execution **FRONT** is given the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution, the men turn their heads and eyes sharply to the front and the platoon leader terminates the *hand salute*.

6-12. Changing the Direction of a Column

- a. The platoon changes the direction of *marching* basically the same as the squad.
- b. During a column movement, the base element is the squad on the flank in the direction of the turn.
- c. To change the direction 90 degrees, the command is **Column right (left), MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the base squad executes the movement as in squad drill except that the squad leader takes one 30-inch step and then takes up the *half step*. The squad leader continues *marching* with the *half step* until the other squad leaders come abreast. The other squad leaders, while maintaining correct (offset) interval, execute a 45-degree pivot and continue *marching* in an arc. As they come on line (abreast) with the base squad leader, they take up the *half step*. When all squad leaders are abreast, they step off with a 30-inch step without command. All other platoon members *march* forward on the command of execution and execute the column movement at approximately the same location as their squad leaders and in the same manner.

NOTE: When the platoon leader and platoon sergeant are *marching* at their post in column as part of a larger formation, they execute a *column half right (left)* rather than a 90-degree column movement. After executing the *column half right (left)*, they continue *marching* in an arc, *incline* as necessary, and resume their correct positions. After sensing that the squad leaders are abreast of each other, the platoon leader resumes the 30-inch step. At times, the platoon leader may find it necessary to shorten or lengthen his step in order to maintain correct distance from the unit to his front.

- d. To change the direction 45 degrees, the command is **Column half right (left), MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the platoon executes the movement in the same manner as a 90-degree turn except that the base squad leader as well as the other squad leaders execute a *column half right (left)*.

NOTE: When executing a column movement at *double time*, elements adjust the length of their steps so that interval and distance are maintained through and beyond the pivot point.

- e. The platoon *marches* in the opposite direction (**Rear, MARCH**) in the same manner as the squad.

- f. The platoon *inclines* in the same manner as the squad. The squad nearest the direction of the turn serves as the base. To avoid an obstacle in the path of the *march*, the platoon leader directs **INCLINE AROUND LEFT (RIGHT)**.
- g. When space is limited and the platoon leader wants to *march* his unit in the opposite direction (reverse), with the squad leaders at the head of their squads, he commands **Counter column, MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH** (at the *halt*), the first squad *marches* forward three steps, executes a *column right*, *marches* across the front of the platoon, and executes another *column right* just beyond the fourth squad. The second squad steps forward one step, executes a *column right*, *marches* forward, and execute another *column right* between the third and fourth squads. The third squad executes two short *column lefts* from the *halt* and *marches* between the remainder of the third squad and the second squad. The fourth squad *marches* forward two steps, executes a *column left*, *marches* across the front of the platoon, and executes another *column left* between the first and second squads (Figure 6-2).

NOTE: When there are only three squads, the first squad takes two steps before executing *column right*

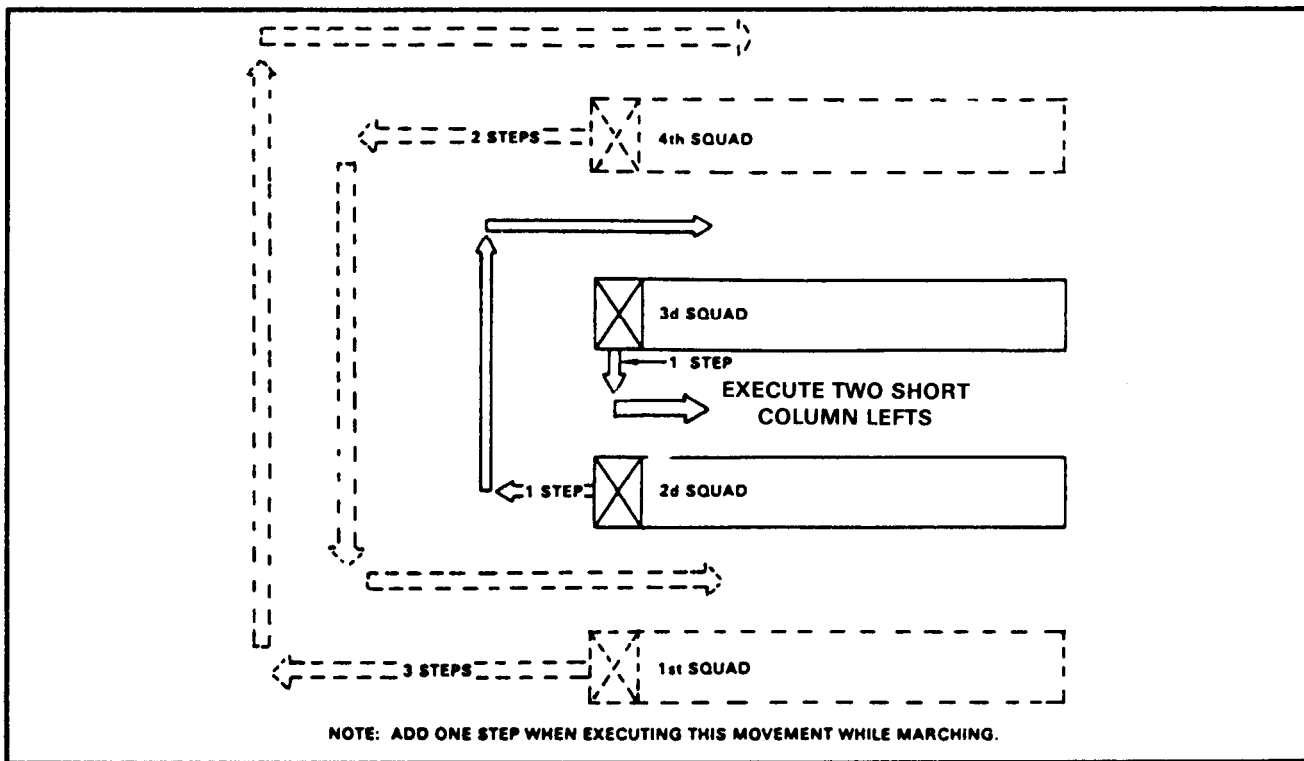


Figure 6-2. Counter Column March at the Halt

- h. As the third squad leader *marches* past the last man in the third squad, he and his squad begin to *march* at the *half step*. After *marching* past the last man in each file, all other squads *incline* to the right and left as necessary, obtain *normal interval* on the third squad, and begin to *march* with the *half step*. When all squads are abreast of each other, they begin *marching* with a 30-inch step without command.

- i. During the movement, the platoon leader *marches* alongside the first squad, and the platoon sergeant *marches* one step to the rear and centered between the second and third squads (Figure 6-l).
- j. When *marching*, the preparatory command **Counter column** is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface and the command of execution **MARCH** is given the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the platoon executes the movement basically the same as from the *halt*, except that the squad takes one additional step to ensure that the pivot foot is in the correct position to execute the movement.

NOTE: When the platoon leader and platoon sergeant are *marching* at their posts as part of a larger formation, the platoon leader takes three steps forward and executes a *column right*, *marches* across the front of the platoon, executes another *column right* (just beyond fourth squad), *marches* to his post in the most direct manner, takes up the *half step*, and then steps off with a 30-inch step when the squad leaders come on line. The platoon sergeant *inclines* to the right, follows the third squad until the movement is completed, and then resumes his post.

6-13. Marching to the Flanks

The platoon *marches* to the flank in the same manner as the squad.

6-14. Forming a File and Re-forming

- a. The platoon forms a single file, from the right, left, or as designated, only when in column and at the *halt*. The commands are **File from the left (right), MARCH** or **File in sequence three-two-four-one, MARCH**.
- b. On the preparatory command, the squad leader of the designated squad gives the supplementary command **Forward**. The other squad leaders command **STAND FAST**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the lead squad *marches* forward. The squad leader next to the lead element (or as designated) looks over the shoulder nearest the moving element and commands **Column half left (right)** when the second from the last man is on line with him. The squad leader gives the command of execution **MARCH** as the right foot of the last man strikes the marching surface when abreast of him. On the command of execution, the squad leader executes the *column half left (right)*, then inclines without command to the right (left), and follows the last man of the preceding squad at correct distance. Other members of the squad *march* forward and execute the same movements as the squad leader. The remaining squads form the file in the same manner as the squad immediately behind the lead element.
- c. The platoon may form a file and execute a column movement simultaneously from a column formation. The command for this movement is **File from the left (right), Column left (right), MARCH**. Following the platoon leader's preparatory command, the squad leader of the lead element commands **Column left (right)**, instead of *forward*. The other squad leaders command **STAND FAST**. On the platoon leader's command of execution **MARCH**, the lead squad executes the *column left (right)*. The other squad leaders command **Column left (right)** at the appropriate time as stated in subparagraph b. They give the command of execution **MARCH** as the right foot of the last man strikes

the marching surface at the pivot (*column left*), or the first time the last man's right foot strikes the marching surface after the pivot (*column right*).

- d. The platoon *re-forms* to the original column formation only from the *halt*. The command is ***Column of fours to the right (left), MARCH.***

NOTE: To re-form the platoon to its original column formation when the file was formed on the command *In sequence* _____, **MARCH**, the commands **FALL OUT** and **FALL IN** must be given.

On the preparatory command, the squad leader of the base squad commands **STAND FAST**. All other squad leaders command ***Column half right (left).*** On the platoon leader's command of execution **MARCH**, the base squad *stands fast* all other squads execute the *column half right (left)* simultaneously. As each of the moving squad leaders reach a point (line) that ensures correct interval on the element to their left (right), they automatically *incline* to the left (right) and command **Mark time, MARCH** and **Squad, HALT** so that their squad is abreast of the base (other) squad when *halted*.

6-15. Forming a Column of Twos and Re-forming

- a. The platoon forms a column of twos from the right or left when in a column of fours at the *halt*. The command is ***Column of twos from the left (right), MARCH.***
- b. On the preparatory command, the squad leaders of the two lead squads command **Forward**. The other two squad leaders command **STAND FAST**. On the platoon leader's command of execution **MARCH**, the two lead squads *march* forward. The squad leader (second or third) next to the lead element gives the command to start both of the remaining squads in motion. Looking over the shoulder nearest the moving elements, the squad leader gives the preparatory command ***Column half left (right)*** (when the second from the last man is abreast of him) and then gives the command of execution **MARCH** as the right foot of the last man strikes the marching surface abreast of him. On the platoon leader's command of execution, both squad leaders execute the *column half left (right)*, *incline* to the right (left) without command, and follow the last men of the preceding squads. at correct distance (do not close the space if the files of the two leading squads are not even). Other members of the remaining squads *march* forward and execute the same movements as their squad leaders.
- c. The platoon may form a column of twos and execute a column movement simultaneously from a column formation. The command for this movement is ***Column of twos from the left (right), Column left (right), MARCH.*** The squad leaders of the lead squads command ***Column left (right)*** instead of *forward*. The squad leader of the second (third) squad gives the command ***Column left (right);*** however, he executes *column half left (right)*. The remaining two squad leaders command **STAND FAST**. On the platoon leader's command of execution **MARCH**, the lead squads execute the *column left (right)*. The squad leader (second or third) next to the lead elements gives the command to start both squads in motion. Looking over the shoulder nearest the moving

elements, the squad leader gives the preparatory command **Column left (right)** when the second from the last man is abreast of him; then he gives the command of execution **MARCH** as the right foot of the last man strikes the marching surface at the pivot (*column left*) or the first time the last man's right foot strikes the marching surface after the pivot (*column right*). Although the command is **Column left (right)**, the outside squads (fourth or first) execute *column half left (right)*.

- d. The platoon *re-forms* to the original column formation only from the *halt*. The command is **Column of fours to the right (left), MARCH**. On the preparatory command, the squad leaders of the base squads command **STAND FAST**. The trailing squad leaders command **Column half right (left)**. On the platoon leader's command of execution **MARCH**, the base squads stand fast. The trailing squad leaders execute slightly more than the *column half right (left)* simultaneously. As the trailing squad leaders reach a point (line) that will ensure correct interval on the element to their left (right), they automatically *incline to the left (right)*. The squad leader nearest the stationary squads (second or third) commands **Mark time, MARCH** and **Squads, HALT**.

CHAPTER 7

Company Drill

“The fundamentals of drill are established daily . . . If these maneuvers are all accurately observed and practiced every day then the army will remain virtually undefeatable and always awe inspiring. ..”

Frederick the Great: “History of My Own Times, trans.” 1789

CONTENTS

Section I PROCEDURES AND PERSONNEL

Paragraph	PAGE
7-1 General	7-2
7-2 Posts for Key Personnel	7-2

Section II FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENT

7-3 General	7-6
7-4 Changing Interval	7-8
7-5 Aligning the Company	7-8
7-6 Opening and Closing the Ranks	7-9
7-7 Changing the Direction of March of a Column	7-10
7-8 Correcting Distance Between Platoons	7-10
7-9 Forming a Column of Twos and Re-Forming	7-11
7-10 Forming a Company Mass	7-11
7-11 Aligning a Company Mass	7-12
7-12 Changing the Direction of March of a Mass Formation	7-12
7-13 Forming a Column from a Company Mass	7-13
7-14 Forming a Company in Column with Platoons in line and Re-Forming	7-13
7-15 Dismissing the Company	7-14

Section III INSPECTIONS

7-16 General	7-15
7-17 In-Ranks Inspection (Line Formations)	7-15
7-18 In-Quarters Inspection (Stand By)	7-19

Section I

PROCEDURES AND PERSONNEL

7-1. General

- a. Individual drill movements, manual of arms, and squad and platoon drills are executed (as previously described) while conducting company drill.
- b. For the most part, company drill provides the procedures for executing platoon drill in conjunction with other platoons in the same formation.
- c. For drill purposes, a company consists of a company headquarters and two or more platoons. The company headquarters personnel are attached to the platoons to equalize platoon strength without interfering with the permanent squad organization; however, the commander may form the headquarters personnel into a separate platoon at either flank of the company. When headquarters personnel form as a separate element, the senior sergeant serves as the platoon sergeant, and the company executive officer serves as the platoon leader.
- d. When in a line or a mass formation, the right platoon serves as the base; when in a column formation, the lead platoon serves as the base.
- e. The first sergeant assumes the position of company commander, if there are no officers present.
- f. When the company commander directs that the company *open or close ranks, align, stack or take arms, extend march, close on the leading platoon, or prepare for inspection*, the movements are executed on the command of the platoon leaders and not on the directives of the company commander. The platoon leaders command the movement in sequence beginning with the base platoon.
- g. During all drills and ceremonies, the first sergeant and executive officer carry their weapons at *sling arms*. They remain at *sling arms* during all manual of arms movements except that they execute the *hand salute* while at *sling arms*.
- h. The members of a company break ranks in the same manner as in platoon drill except that the individuals called from the formation form on the commander rather than on the platoon leader.
- i. The company *marches, rests*, and executes *eyes right* in the same manner as the platoon.
- j. The company has four prescribed formations: company in line with platoons in line, company in column with platoons in column, company in column with platoons in line (used primarily for ceremonies), and company mass formation. However, the company may be formed into a column of twos in the same manner as the platoon.

7-2. Posts for Key Personnel

- a. **Company Commander.** When the company is in a line formation or in a column with the platoons in line, the post for the company commander is

12 steps (from the front rank of troops) to the front and centered on the company. As part of a larger unit, when the company is in a column with platoons in column and when in a mass formation, his post is 6 steps from the front rank of troops to the front and centered on the company. As a separate unit, when the company is in column with platoons in column, his post is 12 steps from and centered on the left flank.

- b. **Guidon Bearer.** The guidon bearer's post is two 15-inch steps to the rear and two 15-inch steps to the left of the company commander (Appendix C) (Figure 7-1).

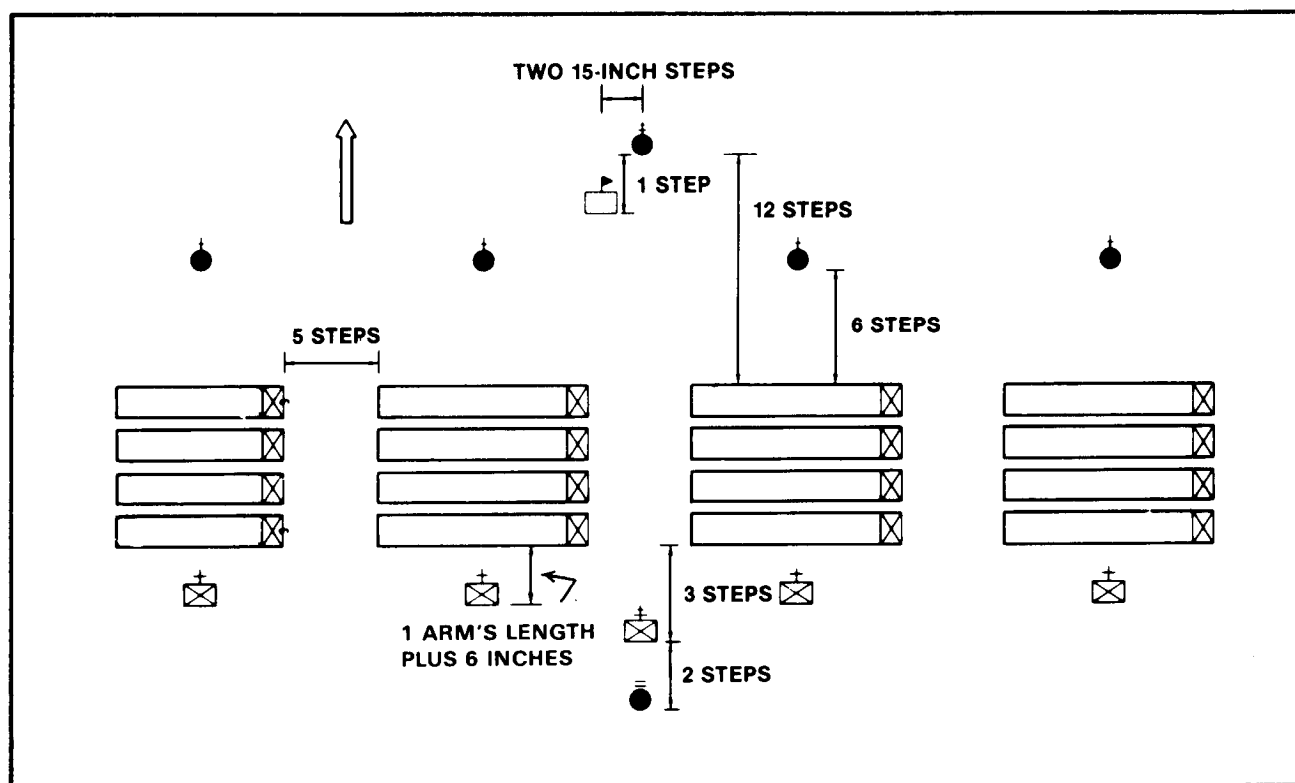


Figure 7-1. Company in Line with Platoons in Line

NOTE: The company commander should inconspicuously direct the guidon bearer to remain in position and move with the commander when the company is to be *faced* to the right and *marched* for only a short distance.

- c. **Executive Officer.** When the company is in a line formation, the executive officer's post is two steps to the rear of the first sergeant in a column or a mass formation, he is three steps to the rear of the last rank and off center (one 15-inch step to the right) of the company.
- d. **First Sergeant.** When the company is in a line formation, the first sergeant's post is three steps to the rear of the last rank and centered on the company; in a column or a mass formation, he is three steps to the rear of the last rank and off center (one 15-inch step to the left) of the company (Figure 7-2).

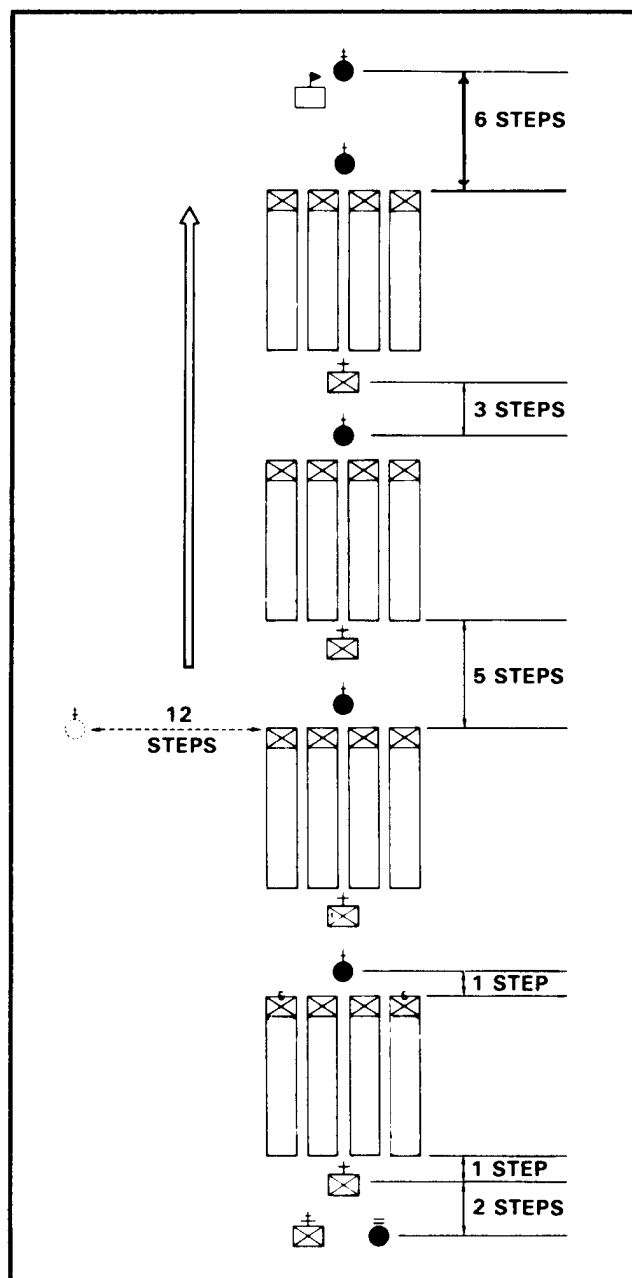


Figure 7-2. Company in Column with Platoons in Column

NOTE: The executive officer inconspicuously gives the necessary commands (*march, column half left, halt, and facings*) for himself and the first sergeant when changing from one post to another. Once in motion, they *incline* as necessary and *march* to their new posts. When the company changes from a line formation to column formation, the first sergeant and executive officer *face* with the company but do not *march* forward. They remain in position until the last platoon has passed. If the company *marches* forward (column formation) for a short distance only, or if it closes on the base platoon (line formation) at *close interval*, the first sergeant and executive officer *march* forward or *face* to the right in *marching* and resume their posts. When the company changes from a column (*platoons in column*) to a line formation, they *face* to the right in *marching* and assume their posts in line. When the company forms a company in column with platoons in line,

as the unit is *faced*, they *face* to the right in *marching* and assume their posts to the rear of the last platoon. When the company is formed in mass, they *face* to the right in *marching* and assume their posts at the center of the company immediately after *halting* with the last platoon (Figure 7-4). The off-center position explained for the first sergeant and executive officer should place them at *normal interval* from each other while covering a file to their front. If either one is not present during a formation, the one present changes posts without command and assumes the post at the center of the company rather than off center (Figure 7-3)

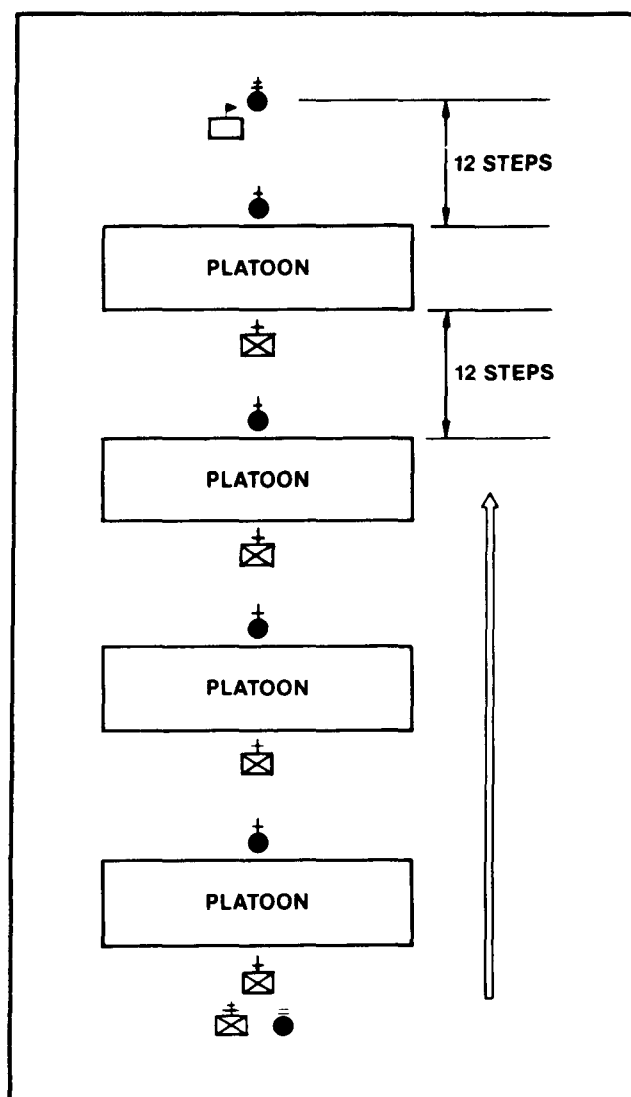


Figure 7-3. Company in Column with Platoons in Line

- e. **Additional Officers.** Other officers assigned or attached, who have no prescribed position within the formation, form evenly to the right and left of the executive officer in a line formation; they *fall out* and form in one or two ranks at correct distance to the rear of the first sergeant and executive officer when the company forms in column (Figure 7-4).

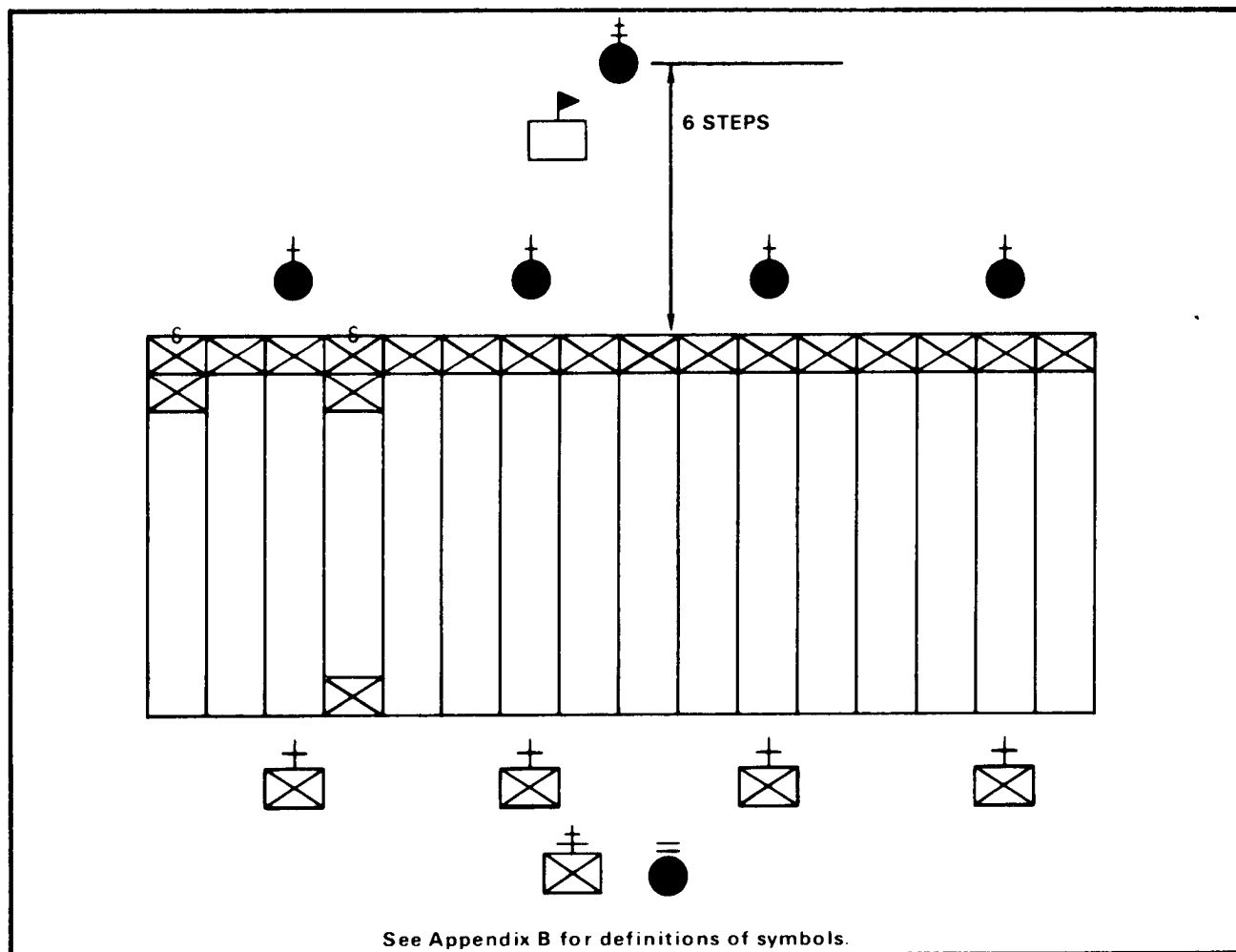


Figure 7-4. Company in Mass

Section II.

FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENT

7-3. General

- The company normally forms in a line formation; however, it may *re-form* in column when each man can identify his exact position (equipment grounded) in the formation.
- The company forms basically the same as the platoon. On the command **FALL IN; (At close interval), FALL IN**, the platoons form in line, centered on and *facing* the person forming the unit, with five-step intervals between platoons.
- When armed, members *fall in at order (sling) arms*. For safety, the person forming the unit commands **Inspection, ARMS; Ready, port, ARMS; Order (Sling), ARMS** at the initial formation of the day, or when the last command is **DISMISSED**.

- d. The company may be formed by the first sergeant (platoon sergeants) or by the company commander (platoon leaders). When possible, the platoons assemble near the formation site before the arrival of the first sergeant or company commander. If the company is formed by the noncommissioned officers, the platoon leaders normally observe the procedures from a position to the rear of their platoons.

(1) Forming with noncommissioned officers.

- (a) When the company is formed by the noncommissioned officers, the first sergeant posts himself nine steps in front of (center) and *facing* the line where the front rank of each platoon is to form. He then commands **FALL IN; (At close interval), FALL IN.**
- (b) On the command of execution, the platoons form in the same manner prescribed in platoon drill. Each platoon sergeant *faces* his platoon while the platoons are forming and directs his platoon to adjust (if necessary) and align on the platoon to its right at the correct interval (as described in note, paragraph 7-5). Once the platoon is formed, the platoon sergeants *face about*.

NOTE: If the command **At close Interval, FALL IN** is given, the members of the platoon form at *close interval* however, the five-step interval between platoons is maintained.

- (c) When all of the platoon sergeants are *facing* to the front, the first sergeant commands (if appropriate) **Inspection, ARMS; Ready, port, ARMS; Order (Sling), ARMS.** He then directs (if appropriate) **RECEIVE THE REPORT.** The platoon sergeants *face about* and command **REPORT.** The squad leaders report as previously described in paragraph 6-2d. Having received the report, the platoon sergeants *face about*. When all platoon sergeants are *facing* to the front, the first sergeant commands **REPORT.** The platoon sergeants *salute* and report (as previously described in paragraph 6-2e) in succession from right to left. The first sergeant returns each *salute* individually. Having received the report from the platoon sergeants, the first sergeant *faces about* and awaits the arrival of the company commander.

NOTE: If the company commander is not scheduled to receive the company, the first sergeant commands **POST.** On this command, the platoon sergeants and guidon bearer step forward three steps. Simultaneously, the first sergeant *faces about*, steps forward three steps, and occupies the position of the commander.

- (d) When the company commander has *halted* at his post, the first sergeant *salutes* and reports, "**Sir, All present,**" or "**Sir, All accounted for,**" or "**Sir, (So many) men absent.**" The company commander returns the *salute* and commands **POST.** The first sergeant *faces about* and *marches* to his post three steps to the rear and at the center of the company, *halts*, and *faces about*. The guidon bearer steps forward three steps. The platoon sergeants *face* to the right in *marching* and assume their posts to the rear of their platoons (if the platoon leader is not present, they step forward three steps). The platoon leaders *march* around the left flank of their platoons and assume their posts by *inclining* and *halting*, already

facing to the front. The company executive officer assumes his post two steps to the rear of the first sergeant.

- (2) Forming with officers. When the company is formed by the company commander, the procedures are the same as forming with the noncommissioned officers except that the platoon leaders form their platoons and the first sergeant, platoon sergeants, and guidon bearer fall in at their posts (Figure 7-1). The command POST is not necessary.

7-4. Changing Interval

- a. The company changes interval in the same manner as prescribed for the platoon.
- b. When the company commander wants the company to obtain *close interval* in a line formation while maintaining a five-step interval, he directs **CLOSE ON THE BASE PLATOON AT CLOSE INTERVAL**. The platoon leaders *face about* and command **Count, OFF**. After the platoons have *counted off*, the platoon leaders command **Close interval, MARCH**. The second, third, and fourth platoon leaders command **Right, FACE** and in succession command **Half step, MARCH**. They *halt* at the five-step interval and *face* the platoon to the left. If the directive **CLOSE ON THE THIRD PLATOON AT CLOSE INTERVAL** is given, the platoon leaders on the right of the designated platoon have their platoons obtain *close interval*, *face* their platoons to the left, *march (half step)* forward until the five-step interval is obtained, and then *halt* and *face* their platoons to the right.

NOTE: When the company is at *close interval* (line formation), the commander may *march* the company (in column with less than correct distance) at the *half step* for short distances. If he wants to *march* with a 30-inch step while *marching* with less than correct distance, he directs **HAVE YOUR PLATOONS EXTEND MARCH**. The first platoon leader commands **Extend, MARCH**. The other platoon leaders command **CONTINUE TO MARCH**. As the first platoon begins to *march* with a 30-inch step, the second platoon leader commands **Extend, MARCH**. The remaining platoons execute the directive in the same manner as the second platoon.

- c. When the company commander wants the company to obtain *normal interval* from *close interval* in a line formation while maintaining a five-step interval, he directs **EXTEND ON THE BASE PLATOON AT NORMAL INTERVAL**. The platoon leaders *face about* and *march (half step)* their platoons to a position that ensures the five-step interval between platoons after they have obtained *normal interval*. After *halting* and *facing* the platoons to the left, the platoon leaders command **Count, OFF**. The platoon leaders then command **Normal interval, MARCH**. If necessary, the platoon leader can verify interval as described in the note of paragraph 7-6.

7-5. Aligning the Company

- a. To align the company in a line formation, the company commander directs **HAVE YOUR PLATOONS DRESS RIGHT**. On the directive, all platoon leaders *face about*. The right flank platoon leader commands **Dress right, DRESS** and aligns his platoon as described in platoon drill. When the alignment of the first rank of the right platoon has been verified (the platoon

leader has stepped off to align the second rank), the platoon leader to the left commands **Dress right, DRESS**. He then *faces* to the half right in *marching*, moves to a position on line with and one step to the left of the left flank man of the first rank, and *faces (left face)* down the line. After aligning the first rank, the platoon leader centers himself on the first rank, *faces* to the right in *marching*, takes two short steps, *halts*, executes *left face*, and aligns the second rank. The third and fourth ranks are aligned in the same manner as the second rank. After aligning the fourth rank, the platoon leader *faces* to the left in *marching* returns to his position, center of the platoon; *halts* perpendicular to the formation; *faces* to the right commands **Ready, FRONT**; and *faces about*. All platoon leaders to the left of the second platoon take the same actions as the second platoon leader.

NOTE: If necessary, the platoon leaders to the left of the base platoon command **VERIFY INTERVAL** before commanding **Dress right, DRESS**. On the command **VERIFY INTERVAL**, the base (squad leader of the first squad) *faces* to the right in *marching* and moves to the left flank member (first squad) of the platoon to the right, *halts*, *faces about*, steps forward five steps, *halts*, *faces* to the right, and aligns himself on the element to his right.

- b. To align the company in column, the company commander directs **HAVE YOUR PLATOONS COVER**. On this directive, the first platoon leader *faces about* and commands **COVER**. The other platoon leaders command **STAND FAST**. The first platoon *covers* as in platoon drill. The other platoons then execute the movement in succession as soon as the platoon to their front has completed the movement.

7-6. Opening and Closing Ranks

- a. To *open ranks*, the company commander directs **HAVE YOUR PLATOONS OPEN RANKS AND DRESS RIGHT**. On the directive, all platoon leaders *face about*. The right flank platoon leader commands **Open ranks, MARCH**. When the platoon has completed the movement, he then commands **Dress right, DRESS** and aligns the platoon the same as in platoon drill. When the first rank of the right platoon has been aligned, the platoon leader to the left commands **Open ranks, MARCH** and then commands **Dress right, DRESS**. Then he aligns his platoon in the same manner described in paragraphs 6-6 and 7-5. All platoon leaders to the left of the second platoon take the same actions as the second platoon leader.

NOTE: When clearing grounded equipment, the company may *march* in column (*right face*) from open ranks (*double interval*) for short distances. Having cleared the equipment, the commander commands **Normal Interval, MARCH**. When returning to the equipment while *marching* at *normal interval*, the command **Double Interval, MARCH** is given. If the company is *marching* in reverse order, the commands **FALL OUT** and **FALL IN** should be given.

- b. To *close ranks*, the commander directs **HAVE YOUR PLATOONS CLOSE RANKS**. On the directive, all platoon leaders *face about* and in sequence from right to left command **Close ranks, MARCH**. The platoons execute the movement the same as in platoon drill. After the platoons have completed the movement, the platoon leaders *face about*.

7-7. Changing the Direction of March of a Column

- a. The company changes the direction of march basically the same as the squad and platoon. The commands are ***Column right (left), Column half right (left), MARCH.***
- b. The base element during a column movement is the lead platoon and the squad on the flank, in the direction of turn.
- c. When at the *halt*, the leading platoon leader repeats the company commander's preparatory command. Succeeding platoon leaders give the supplementary command ***Forward.*** On the command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon executes the movement as described in platoon drill; succeeding platoons execute the movement on their platoon leader's command at approximately the same location.
- d. While *marching*, the movement is executed as described from the *halt* except that the succeeding platoon leaders give the supplementary command ***Continue to march*** rather than ***Forward.***
- e. The company executes *rear march* and *inclines* in the same manner as the platoon.
- f. When executing *counter column march* from the *halt*, the leading platoon leader repeats the preparatory command. Succeeding platoon leaders give the supplementary command ***Forward.*** On the command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon executes the movement as described in platoon drill, and *marches* through the other platoons. Succeeding platoons execute the movement on the platoon leader's command at approximately the same location. When the movement is executed while *marching*, the command of execution is given as the left foot strikes the marching surface. The movement is executed basically the same as from the *halt* except that the succeeding platoon leaders give the supplementary command *continue to march* rather than *forward*. The guidon bearer faces to the left in *marching* from the *halt* or executes a *column left* in *marching*, *marches* by the most direct route outside of the formation, and repositions himself in front of the lead platoon as it clears the rear of the company. If the company commander gives the command from his post in a separate unit, he moves in the most convenient manner to his new position at the left flank of the unit. If he gives the command while at the head of the company, he moves in the same direction as the guidon bearer.

7-8. Correcting Distance Between Platoons

- a. To obtain correct distance when the company is *marching* in column or is in column at the *halt*, the company commander directs **CLOSE ON LEADING PLATOON.**
- b. When at the *halt*, on the directive **CLOSE ON LEADING PLATOON**, the platoon leader of the leading platoon commands (over the right shoulder) **STAND FAST.** The succeeding platoon leaders command (over the right shoulder) ***Forward, MARCH*** and then command ***Mark time, MARCH*** and ***Platoon, HALT*** when correct distance is obtained.

- c. While *marching*, on the directive **CLOSE ON LEADING PLATOON**, the platoon leader of the leading platoon commands (over the right shoulder) **Half step, MARCH**. The succeeding platoon leaders command (over the right shoulder) **CONTINUE TO MARCH**, and then command **Half step, MARCH** as soon as the correct distance is obtained.
- d. The company commander commands **Forward, MARCH; (HALT)** as soon as all platoons have obtained the correct distance and are *marching* at the half step.

7-9. Forming a Column of Twos and Re-forming

- a. The company forms a column of twos basically the same as the platoon. The company commander must allow sufficient time for the platoon leaders, and the squad leaders of the lead platoon, to give their supplementary commands before giving the command of execution. The command for this movement is **Column of twos from the right (left), MARCH**. The leading platoon leader repeats the preparatory command. Other platoon leaders give the supplementary command **Stand fast**. On the company commander's command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon executes the movement as in platoon drill. Other platoons execute the movement on their platoon leader's command. Succeeding platoon leaders give their commands so as to follow with the prescribed five-step distance between platoons.
- b. *Re-forming* into a column of fours is executed only at the *halt*. The command for this movement is **Column of fours to the left (right), MARCH**. On the company commander's command of execution, all platoons execute the movement simultaneously as described in platoon drill. As soon as the platoons are *re-formed*, the platoon leaders automatically *march* the platoons forward and obtain the five-step distance between platoons.

7-10. Forming a Company Mass

- a. The company may form in mass from a company in column (platoons in column) when *halted* or while *marching*. The company must be at *close interval* (*close interval, march*) before the command **Company mass left, MARCH** is given.
- b. On the preparatory command **Company mass left**, given at the *halt*, the leading platoon leader commands **Stand fast**. The platoon leaders of the succeeding platoons command **Column half left**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon *stands fast*. The other platoons execute the *column half left* and then execute a **column half right** on the command of the platoon leaders to a point (line) that ensures the platoons will be at *close interval* alongside the platoon to their right when *halted*. As the platoons come abreast of the base platoon, the platoon leaders command **Mark time, MARCH**. While the platoon is *marking time*, the members adjust their positions to ensure alignment on the man to their right. The platoon leaders allow their platoons to *mark time* for about eight counts and then command **Platoon, HALT**.

NOTE: On the command of execution **MARCH**, the company commander and guidon bearer *face* to the right (left) in *marching* and reposition themselves centered on the company.

- c. On the preparatory command **Company mass left** while *marching*, given as the left foot strikes the marching surface, the leading platoon leader gives the supplementary command **Mark time**. The succeeding platoon leaders command **Column half left**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon begins to *march* in place. After *marking time* for about eight counts, the lead platoon leader commands **Platoon, HALT**. The other platoons form in the same manner as from the *halt*.

NOTE: On the command of execution **MARCH**, the company commander and guidon bearer *halt* and immediately *face* to the right (left) in *marching* and reposition themselves centered on the company.

7-11. Aligning a Company Mass

- a. As soon as the company has formed in mass, the company commander gives the command **Order, ARMS** (if appropriate) and then commands **At close interval, Dress right, DRESS**.
- b. On the command of execution **DRESS**, the platoon leader of the right platoon *marches* by the most direct route to the right flank and verifies the alignment of as many ranks as necessary to ensure proper alignment in the same manner as aligning the platoon. When he has finished the verification, the platoon leader returns to a position one step in front of centered on the third squad, *halts*, and *faces* to the right. When the platoon leader has returned to his position, the company commander commands **Ready, FRONT**.

NOTE: On the command of execution **DRESS**, the platoon leaders and platoon sergeants position themselves in line with the third squad of their platoon by executing one 15-inch step to the right.

7-12. Changing the Direction of March of a Mass Formation

- a. The company changes the direction of march in mass basically the same as a platoon column movement. When executed from the *halt*, the commander has the unit execute *right shoulder arms* (if appropriate), then *faces* in the desired direction of march, turns his head toward the formation, and commands **Right (Left) turn, MARCH**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the platoon leaders *face* to the half right (left) in *marching* and continue to *march* in an arc until parallel to the new direction of march. Then they begin *marching* with the *half step*, dressing on the right (left) flank platoon leader until the command **Forward, MARCH** is given. The right (left) guide (the base squad leader in the direction of turn) *faces* to the right (left) in *marching* and immediately takes up the *half step*. All other squad leaders (front rank) *face* to the half right (left) in *marching* and continue to *march* in an arc until they come on line with the guide. At this time, they begin *marching* with the *half step* and dress (glancing out of the corner of the eye) in the direction of the turn until the command **Forward, MARCH** is given. On that command, the dress is automatically to the right. All other members *march* forward and execute the movement in the same manner as their squad leaders.
- b. When executed while *marching*, the movement is in the same manner as from the *halt* except that the company commander *faces about* (*marching* backward)

to give the command **Right (Left) turn, MARCH**. He then *faces about* and completes the turning movement himself. After the company has completed the turn, he *faces about*, commands **Forward, MARCH**, and again *faces about*.

7-13. Forming a Column from a Company Mass

- a. To form a company in column from a company mass at the *halt*, the command is **Column of platoons, Right platoon, Column right (Column half right), MARCH**. The right platoon leader gives the supplementary command of **Forward (Column right or Column half right)**, and the other platoon leaders command **Stand fast**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the right platoon *marches* in the direction indicated. All other platoons follow (in sequence) in column, executing *column half right* and *column half left* on the commands of the platoon leaders.
- b. To execute the movement when *marching*, the company commander commands **Port, ARMS** (unless at *sling arms*), and then commands **Column of platoons, Right platoon, Double time, MARCH**. On the preparatory command, the right platoon leader gives the supplementary command **Double time**, and the other platoon leader gives the supplementary command **Continue to march**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the right platoon *marches* in *double time*. Other platoon leaders (in sequence) command **Column half right, Double time, MARCH** and **Column half left, MARCH** to bring the succeeding platoons in column with the leading platoon.
- c. The platoon leader and the platoon sergeant reposition themselves after the supplementary command but before the command of execution.

7-14. Forming a Company in Column with Platoons in Line and Re-forming

- a. To form a company in column with platoons in line from a column formation at the *halt*, the command is **Column of platoons in line, MARCH**. The platoon leader of the leading platoon commands **Stand fast**. The second platoon leader commands **Column right**. All other platoon leaders command **Forward**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon *stands fast*, and the second platoon executes a *column right*, *marches* 12 steps past the right file of the first platoon, and executes a *column left*. As they come on line with the base platoon, the platoon leader commands **Mark time, MARCH**. After the platoon has *marched* in place for eight counts, the platoon leader commands **Platoon, HALT**. The succeeding platoons execute a *column right* at approximately the same location as the platoon to their front and execute a *column left* and then *halt* in the same manner as the second platoon. When the platoons have *halted* in position, the company commander commands **Left, FACE**. On that command, the platoon leaders and platoon sergeants *face* in *marching* and assume their posts.
- b. When executed while *marching*, the movements are basically the same as from the *halt* except that the commander gives the command of execution as the right foot strikes the marching surface. The leading platoon leader commands

Mark time. On the preparatory command, the second platoon leader commands **Column right**, and the succeeding platoon leaders command **Continue to march**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the leading platoon executes *mark time* and *marches* in place (approximately eight counts) until the platoon leader commands **Platoon, HALT**. The other platoons execute the movement in the same manner as from the *halt*.

- c. To re-form in column with platoons in column, the company commander commands **Right, Face; Column of platoons, Left platoon, MARCH**. On the command **Right, Face**, the platoon leaders and platoon sergeants *face* in *marching* and resume their posts in column. On the preparatory command **Column of platoons, Left platoon**, the left platoon leader commands **Forward, (Column left [Half left])**. All other platoon leaders command **Column half left**. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the left platoon executes the movement. The other platoon leaders give the appropriate commands so as to follow the lead platoon at correct distance.

NOTE: If necessary, the platoons following the second platoon automatically adjust the length of their step to ensure correct distance from the platoon to their front.

7-15. Dismissing the Company

- a. The company is *dismissed* while at *attention*. It may be *dismissed* by the first sergeant.
- b. When the company is *dismissed* by the first sergeant, the company commander commands **FIRST SERGEANT**. The first sergeant *marches* by the most direct route to a position three steps from and directly in front of the company commander. After the first sergeant is *halted*, the company commander commands **TAKE CHARGE OF THE COMPANY**. *Salutes* are exchanged. Upon termination of the *salutes*, the platoon leaders and executive officer leave the formation. The platoon sergeants *face* to the right in *marching* and take their posts (platoon leader's position) six steps in front of and centered on the platoon by *marching* around the right flank of the platoon, *inclining* and *halting* already *facing* to the front. The first sergeant *steps* forward three steps and *faces about*. When all platoon sergeants are at their posts, the first sergeant commands **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR PLATOONS**. The platoon sergeants *salute*. The first sergeant returns all *salutes* with the one *salute*. After *salutes* are exchanged, the first sergeant and guidon bearer leave the formation. The platoon sergeants then *dismiss* their platoons as in platoon drill.
- c. When the company is *dismissed* by the company commander, he commands **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR PLATOONS**. The platoon leaders *salute*. The company commander returns all *salutes* with one *salute*. After the *salutes* are exchanged, the company commander, guidon bearer, first sergeant, and executive officer leave the formation. The platoon leader(s) *faces about* and commands **PLATOON SERGEANT**. The platoon sergeant *faces* to the right in *marching* and *marches (inclines)* around the squad leader(s), *halts* three steps in front of and centered on the platoon leader, and *faces* to the right. Each platoon leader then directs **TAKE CHARGE OF THE PLATOON**. *Salutes* are exchanged. The platoon leaders leave the formation. The platoon

sergeants step forward three steps, *face about*, and *dismiss* the platoons as in platoon drill.

Section III INSPECTIONS

7-16. General

- a. The company has one prescribed formation for inspecting personnel and equipment in ranks — company in line with platoons in line. When inspecting crew-served weapons and vehicles, the personnel are normally positioned to the rear of the formation with the operator (gunner) standing by his vehicle (weapon).
- b. The commander may conduct an in-quarters (barracks) inspection to include personal appearance, individual weapons, field equipment, displays, maintenance, and sanitary conditions.
- c. When field equipment is to be inspected, it should be displayed as shown in Figure 7-5 (as a guide). Additional equipment not shown or different models of the equipment should be arranged in a uniform manner established by the local commander.

7-17. In-Ranks Inspection (Line Formations)

- a. With the company in line formation, the company commander directs **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION**. On that directive, the platoon leaders *face about*, *open ranks*, and align the company as in paragraphs 7-5 and 7-6. When all platoon leaders are *facing* the front, the company commander commands **AT EASE**.

NOTE: During the inspection, the guidon bearer, officers, and noncommissioned officers not in ranks assume the position of *attention* as the inspecting officer approaches their positions and resume the *at ease* position after they have been inspected (they do not execute *inspection arms*). The company commander may direct the first sergeant and executive officer to accompany him during the inspection. When so directed, the executive officer and first sergeant take a position at *normal interval* (*close interval* if the company is at *close interval*) to the left of the company commander.

- b. The company commander begins the inspection by stepping forward and inspecting the guidon bearer. He then *facing* to the half left in *marching* and proceeds to the right of the line. As he approaches the right flank platoon, the platoon leader commands (over his right shoulder) **Platoon, ATTENTION**. When the company commander has *halted* directly in front of him, he *salutes* and reports, **“Sir, The platoon is prepared for inspection.”** The company commander returns the *salute* and inspects the platoon leader. The company commander then directs the platoon leader to lead him through the inspection, *facing* to the half left in *marching*, and *halts* directly in front of the squad leader of the first squad. As the company commander *facing* to the half left in *marching*, the platoon leader *facing* to the right in *marching*, *inclines*, and *halts* directly in front of the second man in the first squad and on line with and at *normal interval* (*close interval*) to the right of the company commander.

The other platoon leaders execute the same actions as the company commander approaches their platoons.

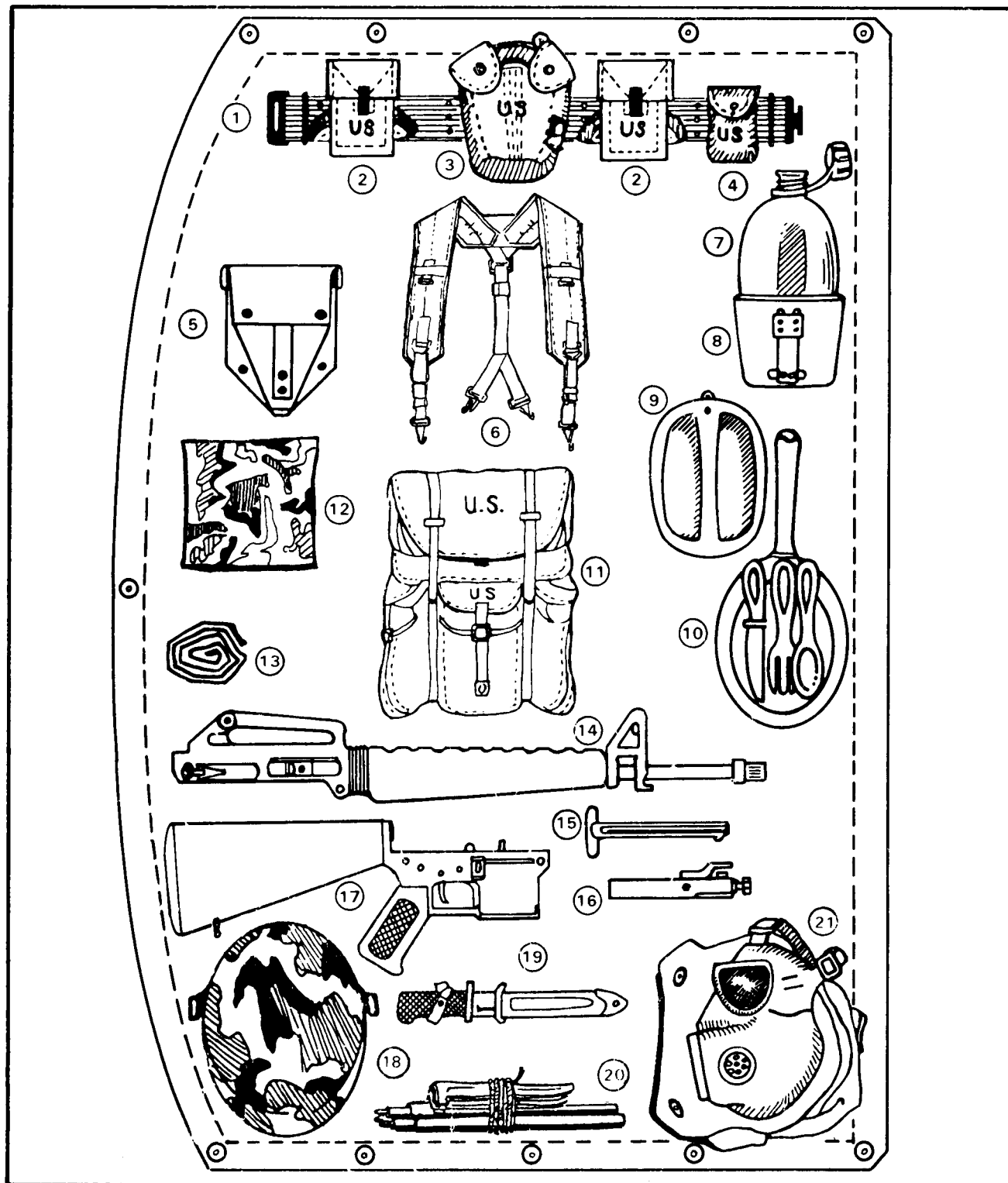
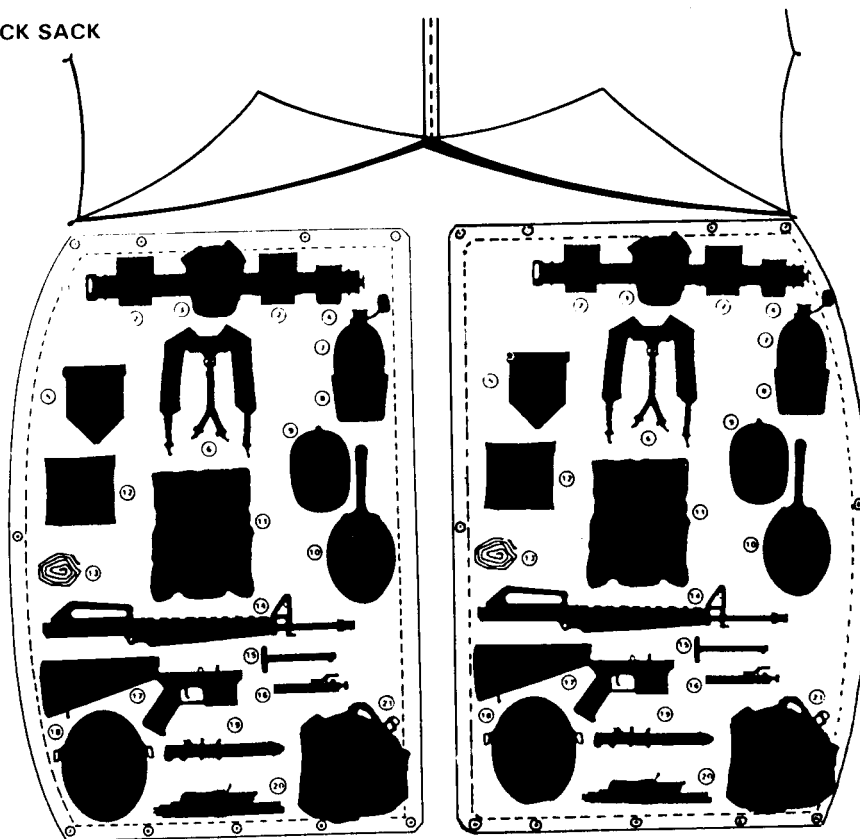


Figure 7-5. Equipment Display (Guide)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. PISTOL BELT | 12. PONCHO |
| 2. POUCH, SA, AMMUNITION, UNIVERSAL | 13. SLING |
| 3. COVER, CANTEEN | 14. UPPER RECEIVER |
| 4. CASE, FIRST AID PACKET | 15. CHARGING HANDLE |
| 5. CARRIER AND ENTRENCHING TOOL | 16. BOLT CARRIER GROUP |
| 6. FIELD SUSPENDERS | 17. LOWER RECEIVER |
| 7. CANTEEN | 18. HELMET |
| 8. CUP | 19. BAYONET AND SCABBARD |
| 9. MESS KIT | 20. TENT STAKES, POLES, AND ROPE |
| 10. KNIFE, FORK, SPOON | 21. MASK, PROTECTIVE |
| 11. RUCK SACK | |



SQUAD AUTOMATIC WEAPON, M249E1
MAY BE DISPLAYED (AS DIS-
ASSEMBLED) IN PLACE OF THE M16
SERIES RIFLE.

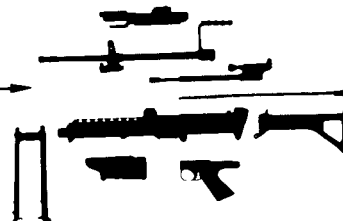


Figure 7-5 — Continued

NOTE: As soon as the platoon leader and company commander have *ha/ted* in front of the first two men, the platoon leader commands **Second, third, and fourth squads, AT EASE**. When moving from man to man during the inspection, the company commander and platoon leader (executive officer and first sergeant) simultaneously *face* to the right in *marching*, take two *short steps* (one step if the company is at *close interval*), *halt*, and *face* to the left. After the company commander has inspected the last man in the front rank, the platoon leader hesitates momentarily and allows the company commander to precede him as he inspects the front rank from the rear. As the company commander begins to inspect the rear of each rank, the platoon leader commands the next squad to **ATTENTION**. As they begin to inspect the next rank, the platoon leader commands the last rank inspected to stand **AT EASE**. Normally, when inspecting the rear of each rank, the company commander conducts a walking inspection. As the company commander inspects the rear of the last man in each rank, he *turns* and *halts* directly in front of the squad leader of the next rank. The platoon leader *turns* and *halts* directly in front of the second man. The executive officer and first sergeant *march* past (behind) the company commander and assume their positions to his left.

- c. As the company commander *halts* and is directly in front of and *facing* the individual being inspected, the individual executes *inspection arms*. If the company commander wants to inspect the individual's weapon, he will inspect the weapon first, then the individual's uniform and appearance. As soon as the company commander grasps the weapon, the individual releases the weapon and resumes the position of *attention*. When the company commander has finished inspecting the weapon, he returns it in the same manner as it was received. The individual receives the weapon by grasping the center of the handguard just forward of the slipring with the left hand and the small of the stock with the right hand. He then executes *ready, port arms; order, arms*.

NOTE: In the event the company commander does not want to inspect the weapon, the individual remains at *inspection arms* until the company commander has *ha/ted* in front of and is *facing* the next man. The individual then execute *ready, port, arms, and order, arms*. As the company commander moves to the rear of the rank being inspected, each man, as the commander approaches, unfastens the snap of his scabbard, grasps the point of the scabbard with the left hand, and moves the point slightly forward. The scabbard is held in position until the bayonet has been replaced or, if the bayonet is not inspected, until the company commander has moved to the next man. At that time, the securing straps are fastened and the position of *attention* is resumed.

- d. The correct method of manipulating a rifle for inspection is as follows:
 - (1) When receiving the rifle from the inspected individual, reach forward and grasp the rifle at the upper portion of the handguard with the right hand. Lower the rifle diagonally to the left, twist the rifle slightly, insert the tip of the little finger of the left hand into the ejection port (do not twist the rifle but insert the thumb into the receiver of the M16 series rifle), and look into the barrel. The finger reflects sufficient light for the inspection of the barrel.
 - (2) Grasp the small of the stock with the left hand and raise the rifle to a horizontal position (sights up) with the muzzle to the right. The rifle is centered on the body with the forearms horizontal and the palms up. Move the rifle horizontally to the left and inspect the upper portion of the rifle beginning with the flash suppressor. Move the rifle slowly to the right inspecting the butt. Return the rifle to the center of the body.
 - (3) Keeping the rifle horizontal, rotate it 180 degrees (sights toward the body) so that the sights point toward the marching surface. Move the rifle

horizontally to the left and inspect the muzzle. Move the rifle slowly to the right and inspect the butt. When moving the rifle across the body, twist the rifle as necessary and inspect the movable parts on the sides of the receiver. Having completed the inspection of the lower parts of the rifle, return it to the center of the body.

- (4) Keeping the rifle horizontal, rotate the rifle 180 degrees (sights away from the body) so that the sights are up. Release the left hand and return the rifle in the same manner as received.
 - (5) When inspecting a weapon other than a rifle, the inspecting officer receives the weapon with his right hand and inspects it in the most convenient manner. Having completed the inspection, the weapon is returned with the right hand in the same manner as received.
- e. When the company commander has completed the inspection of the platoon sergeant, the platoon leader commands the platoon to **ATTENTION** and overtakes the company commander en route back to the front of the platoon. The platoon leader *halts facing* to the front (six steps in front and centered on his platoon) and exchanges *salutes* with the company commander. The company commander (executive officer and first sergeant) *faces* to the right in *marching* and moves to the next platoon. As soon as the company commander has cleared the first platoon, the platoon leader *faces about*, commands **Close ranks, MARCH** and **AT EASE**, and then *faces about* and executes *at ease*. When the company commander has completed (exchanged salutes with the platoon leader) the inspection of the last platoon, he returns to his post at the center of the company and commands the company to **ATTENTION**. He then *dismisses* the company, as previously described.
 - f. When the company is inspected by an officer of a higher command, on the approach of the inspecting officer, the company commander commands **Company, ATTENTION**. He then *faces about, salutes*, and reports, **“Sir, The company is prepared for inspection.”** The inspection is conducted as previously described except that the company commander takes a position immediately to the left of the inspecting officer. The inspection is terminated by the company commander in the same manner prescribed for a platoon leader.

7-18. In-Quarters Inspection (Stand By)

- a. When the company commander wants to conduct an in-quarters inspection, the members are positioned online with their equipment or as near it as possible. The platoon leader positions himself in the path of the inspecting officer at a point near his area of responsibility. At the approach of the inspecting officer, the platoon leader commands **Platoon, ATTENTION**, *salutes*, and reports, **“Sir, The platoon is prepared for inspection.”**

NOTE: When the situation dictates, the platoon leader may report to the inspecting officer outside of the quarters. A designated individual commands the members to **ATTENTION** as the inspecting officer enters the quarters (bay).

- b. The platoon leader then guides the inspecting officer along a route dictated by the physical arrangement of the personnel and equipment. Upon entering

the quarters (bay), the inspecting officer commands **AT EASE**. As the inspecting officer approaches each individual or his equipment, the individual automatically assumes the position of *attention*. When the inspecting officer has moved to the next man, the last man inspected resumes the position of *at ease*. As the inspecting officer begins to exit the quarters (bay), after completing the inspection, **ATTENTION** is commanded. The platoon leader and inspecting officer exchange *salutes*.

NOTE: When inspecting soldiers' rooms, *attention* is not commanded. The individuals automatically assume the position of *attention* as the inspector enters the room. The inspector then commands **AT EASE**. As the inspector approaches each soldier, the soldier assumes the position of *attention* and resumes *at ease* after he has been inspected.

CHAPTER 8
Battalion and Brigade Formations

“The exterior splendor, the regularity of movements, the adroitness and at the same time firmness of the mass — all this gives the individual soldier the safe and calming conviction that nothing can withstand his particular regiment or battalion.”

Colmar von der Goltz, 1843-1916 Rossback und Jena

CONTENTS

Section I BATTALION FORMATIONS

Paragraph	PAGE
8-1 General	8-1
8-2 Formations.....	8-2
8-3 Forming and Dismissing the Battalion	8-4
8-4 Inspecting the Battalion	8-4

Section II BRIGADE FORMATIONS

8-5 General	8-6
8-6 Forming and Dismissing the Brigade	8-7

Section I
BATTALION FORMATIONS

8-1. General

- a. For the most part, battalion and brigade drill merely provides the procedures for executing company or battalion drill in conjunction with other companies or battalions in the same formation.
- b. For drill purposes, a battalion or brigade consists of a headquarters (staff), Colors, and two or more companies or battalions. The right flank unit serves as base when in a line formation; the leading element is the base when in column.
- c. To facilitate the forming of a larger unit, the commander normally alerts the component units as to the desired formation, time, place, route, uniform, and the sequence in which the units will form. Unless the right guide’s position at the formation site has been previously marked, the guides report to the site and receive instructions prior to the arrival of the troops.

- d. The commissioned staff forms in one rank, at *normal interval* and centered on the commander. Staff members are normally arranged in their numerical order from right to left. When enlisted staff personnel form as part of the officer staff, they form two steps to the rear of their respective staff officer. The command sergeant major forms one step to the rear of the commissioned staff and centered on the commander, or one step to the rear and centered on the Colors when they are carried to the rear (battalion mass) of the staff.

8-2. Formations

- a. The battalion has two basic formations — a line and a column. There are several variations as to how the separate elements are arranged within either formation: the battalion may be formed in line with the companies in line with platoons in line, or battalion in line with companies in column with platoons in line (Figure 8-1). From those formations, the battalion may be positioned in a battalion in column with companies in column, or companies in mass, or companies in column with platoons in line (Figure 8-2).

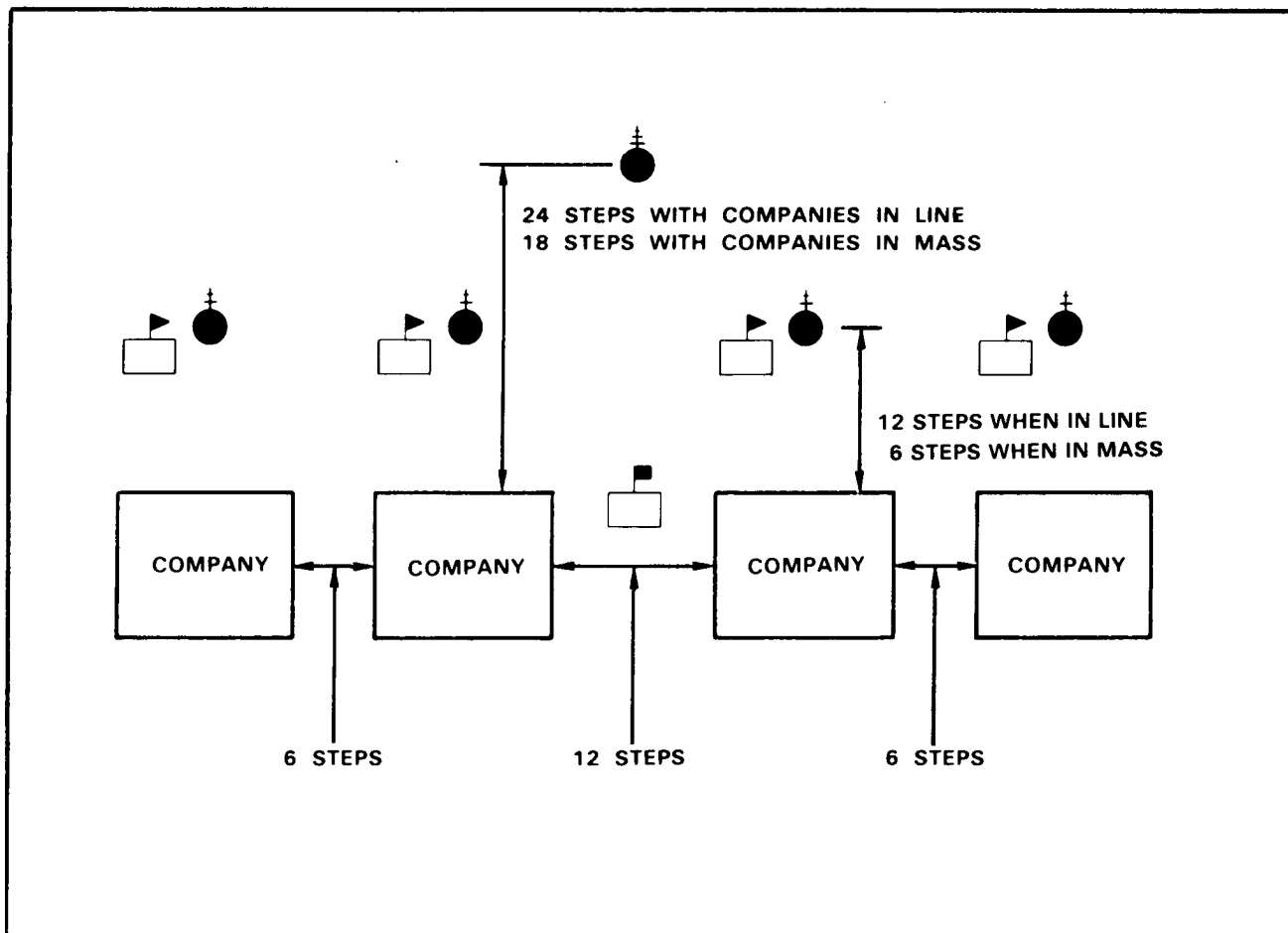


Figure 8-1. Battalion in Line with Companies in Line or Mass

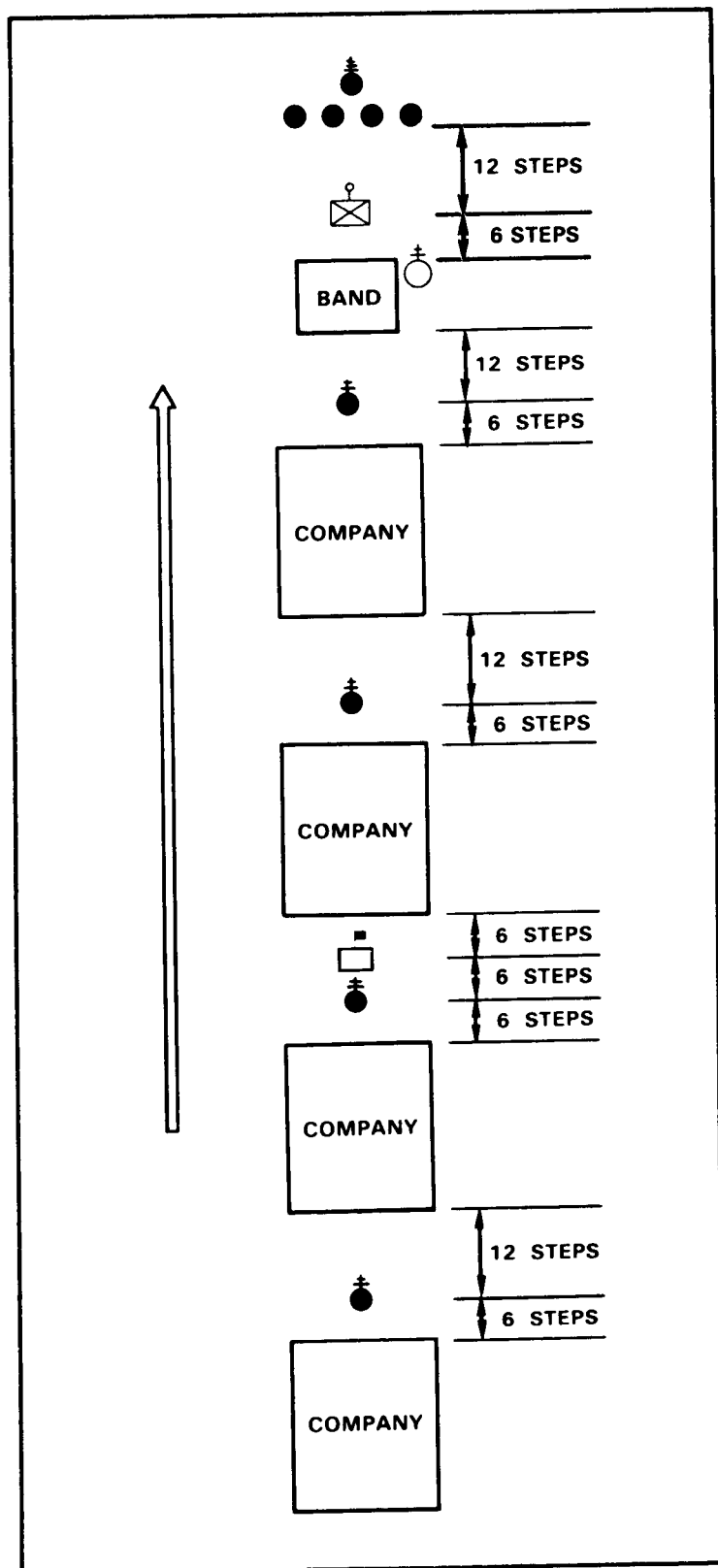


Figure 8-2. Battalion in Column with Companies in Column or Mass

- b. When the battalion participates as a separate element of a larger formation, or when space is limited, it is normally formed in a mass formation in the same manner as forming a company mass (Figure 8-3).

8-3. Forming and Dismissing the Battalion

- a. The adjutant is responsible for the formation of troops. He takes a position at the right flank of the line on which the units are to form and *faces* down the line. He remains *facing* down the line until all units are formed and then *marches* to his post midway between the line of troops and the proposed position of the commander.

NOTE: If guides are used, the adjutant takes his post as soon as the guides have been aligned.

As the commander and his staff approach, the adjutant commands (directs) the units to **ATTENTION**, *faces* the commander, *salutes*, and reports, “**Sir, The battalion is formed.**”

- b. The commander returns the *salute* and commands **POST**. The adjutant *marches* forward, passes to the commander’s right, and takes his post as the right flank staff officer. The commander then commands or directs such actions as he desires.
- c. Normally, the Colors are positioned at the center of the battalion when formed in line or column, and four steps to the rear of the staff when formed in mass.
- d. To dismiss the battalion, the commander commands **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS**. The company commanders and battalion commander exchange *salutes*. The battalion commander returns all *salutes* with one *salute*. He then *dismisses* his staff.

NOTE: In a battalion mass formation, the platoon leaders form as the first rank of troops. The right flank platoon leader serves as the guide.

8-4. Inspecting the Battalion

- a. When the battalion is to be inspected, the adjutant forms the battalion in line with companies in line and platoons in line.
- b. The adjutant forms the troops, reports, and takes his position with the staff (as previously described). When the adjutant has joined the staff, the battalion commander directs **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION**. Unit commanders *face about* and give the same directive. The platoon leaders prepare their platoons for inspection in the same manner as in company drill. When all of the platoons in each company have completed *open ranks* and *dress right*, the company commander *faces* the battalion commander. When all company commanders are again *facing* him, the battalion commander commands **AT EASE** (Figure 8-3).

NOTE: Because of the time involved in inspecting a battalion, the commander normally directs his staff to inspect the companies while he inspects the Colors and makes a general inspection of the battalion. The Color guards do not execute *inspection arms*.

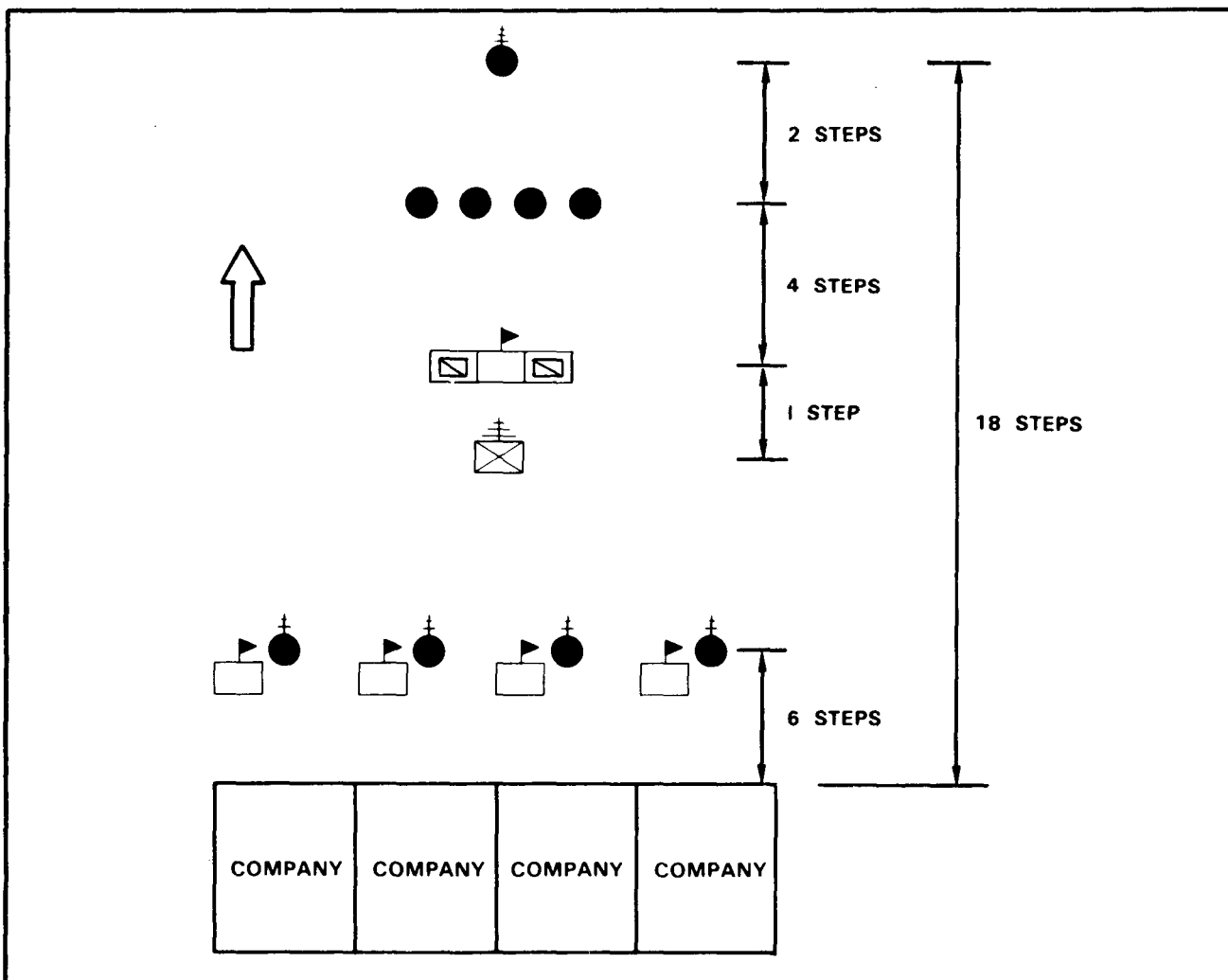


Figure 8-3. Battalion in Mass Formation

- c. As the battalion commander (or his designated staff officer) approaches the company, the company commander *faces about, salutes*, and reports, "**Sir, _____ Company is prepared for inspection.**" The inspecting officer then proceeds to the first platoon to be inspected. The company commander takes a position to the left of the inspecting officer. The platoons are inspected in the same manner as explained in company drill. In the event a platoon has already been inspected by a staff officer, or is waiting to be inspected by a staff officer, and the battalion commander approaches, the battalion commander is invited to inspect the platoon.
- d. When the inspection has been completed and the battalion commander is en route back to his post, the company commanders bring their units to **ATTENTION** and **CLOSE RANKS** and **AT EASE**. When the battalion commander has returned to the front of the formation and all staff officers have completed their inspection, the battalion commander commands **Battalion, ATTENTION** and *dismisses* the battalion (as previously described).

If the battalion is being inspected by a higher commander and his staff, the battalion commander reports to the inspecting officer in the same manner as the company commanders. The battalion commander's staff takes a position to the left of the higher inspecting staff and escorts them to the unit. The battalion commander escorts the higher commander.

Section II. BRIGADE FORMATIONS

8-5. General

- a. The brigade, like the battalion, has two basic formations — a line and a column. There are several variations as to how the battalions are arranged within either formation: the brigade may be formed with battalions in mass, or battalions in line with companies in mass. From those formations, the brigade may be positioned in column with battalions in mass, companies in mass, or battalions in column with companies in column.
- b. The formation selected is normally dictated by the space available and the desires of the commander (Figure 8-4).

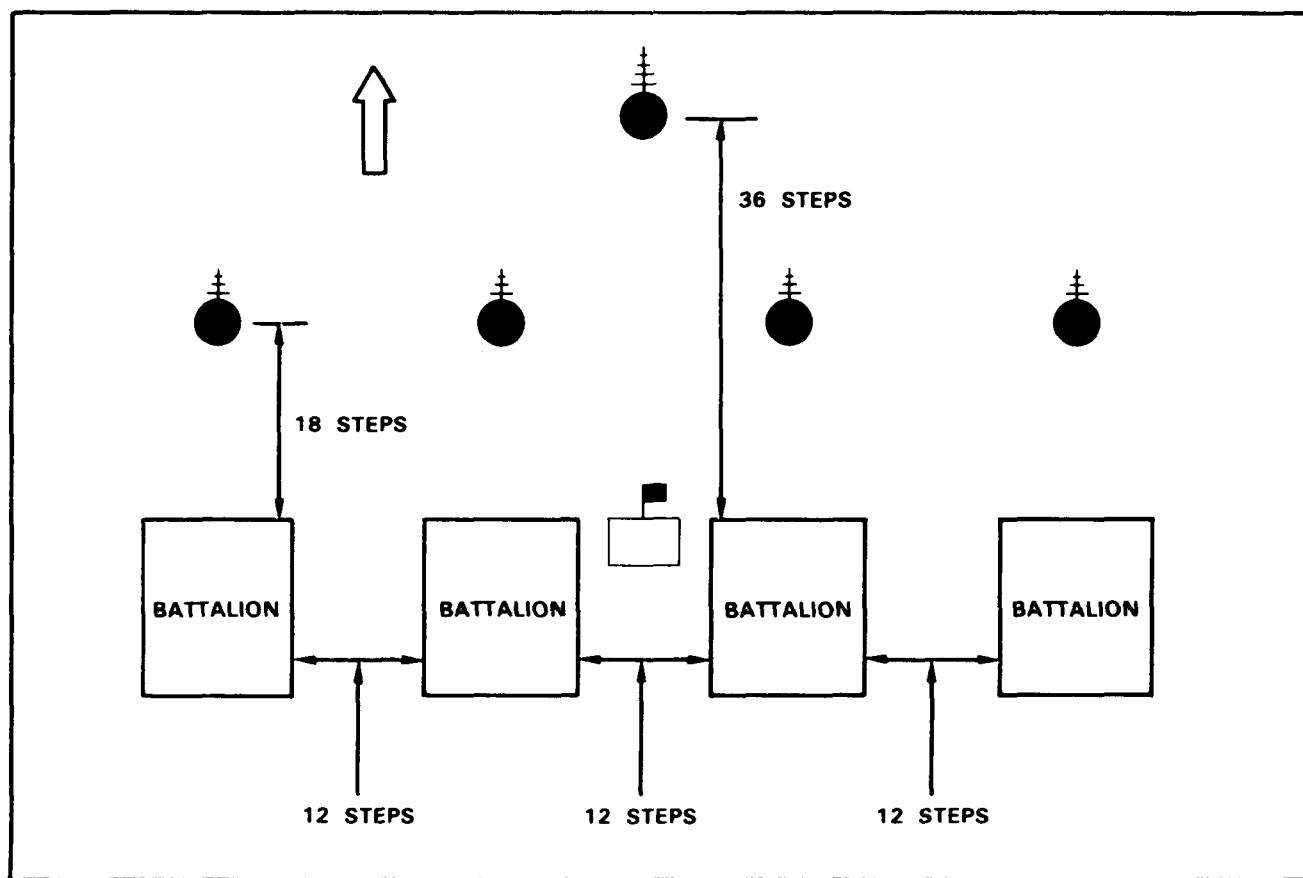


Figure 8-4. Brigade in Line with Battalions in Mass

8-6. Forming and Dismissing the Brigade

The brigade is formed and *dismissed* in the same manner as the battalion.

Normally, the brigade color is positioned at the center of the brigade. Subordinate Color-bearing organizations position their Colors to the center of their formation when in a line or column formation, or four steps to the rear of their staff when in a mass formation (Figure 8-5).

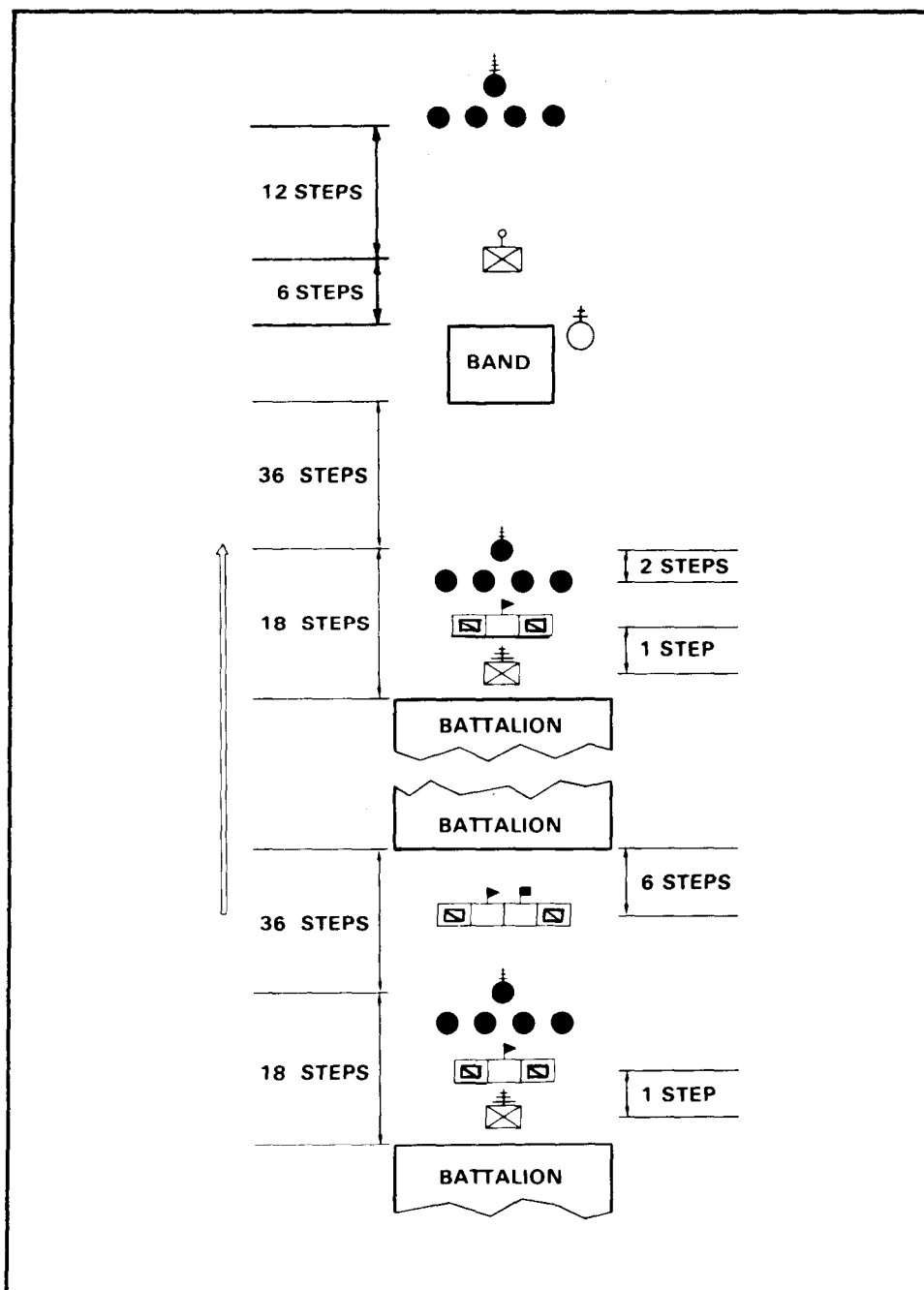


Figure 8-5. Brigade in Column

CHAPTER 9

Ceremonies

"A ceremonial parade, impeccably performed, can never fail to be a source of inspiration to those who watch it or take part in it. It is the noblest and proudest form of drill. Based on the 'blunt whetstone' of drill instruction to recruits it was for many hundreds of years the foundation of battle discipline in all Armies . . .

"Today once the elements of discipline have been instilled through drill on the parade square, it develops, naturally, into various forms of crew drill, gun drill, and battle drill but the aim of discipline remains unchanged. This aim is the conquest of fear. Drill helps to achieve this because when it is carried out men tend to lose their individuality and are unified into a group under obedience to orders.

"If men are to give their best in war they must be united. Discipline seeks through drill to instill into all ranks this sense of unity, by requiring them to obey orders as one man. A Ceremonial parade, moreover, provides an occasion for men to express pride in their performance, pride in the Regiment or Corps and pride in the profession of Arms."

General Sir Harold Alexander, Ceremonial For
the Army Ministry for Defense, Army Department,
November 1968

CONTENTS

Section I REVIEWS	PAGE
Para	
9-1 General	9-4
9-2 Types of Reviews	9-5
9-3 Sequence of Events and Individual Actions	9-10
9-4 Review with Decorations, Awards, and Individual Retirement (Sequence of Events)	9-21
9-5 Review with Change of Command, Activation or Inactivation (Sequence of Events)	9-24
9-6 Review with Retreat (Sequence of Events)	9-27
9-7 Special Review	9-28
 Section II PARADES	
9-8 General	9-29
9-9 Preparation	9-30
9-10 Ceremonial Battalion Parade	9-30
9-11 Ceremonial Brigade Parade	9-34
9-12 Street Parades	9-35

Section III HONOR GUARDS

9-13	General	9-35
9-14	Sequence of Events and Individual Actions	9-36
9-15	Honor Cordon Ceremonies	9-37

Section IV COMMAND RETREAT

9-16	General	9-39
9-17	Meaning	9-39
9-18	Sequence of Events	9-39

Section V COMMAND REVEILLE

9-19	General	9-40
9-20	Meaning	9-40
9-21	Sequence of Events	9-40

Section VI RETREAT

9-22	General	9-41
9-23	Meaning	9-41
9-24	Sequence of Events	9-41

Section VII REVEILLE

9-25	General	9-42
9-26	Meaning	9-42
9-27	Sequence of Events	9-42

Section VIII FUNERALS

9-28	General	9-43
9-29	Types of Funerals	9-44
9-30	Funeral with Chapel Service	9-45
9-31	Graveside Service	9-50
9-32	Cremated Remains	9-50
9-33	Ceremony Before Shipment of Remains	9-53
9-34	Cannon Salute	9-53
9-35	Funerals Off Post	9-54
9-36	Participation of Aviation	9-55
9-37	Participation of Fraternal or Patriotic Organizations	9-55
9-38	Duties of the Chaplain	9-55

9-39	Preliminary Arrangements	9-55
9-40	Floral Tributes	9-55
9-41	Rules for Ceremonial Firing	9-56

Section IX COLORS

9-42	General	9-57
9-43	The Color and Colors	9-59
9-44	Salutes	9-60
9-45	Color Guard	9-60
9-46	Receiving or Dismissing the Color by the Color Guard	9-61
9-47	Casing and Uncasing the Colors	9-61
9-48	Receiving or Dismissing the Colors by Color Company	9-62
9-49	Posting and Retiring the Colors	9-63
9-50	Movement of Three-Man Color Guard to the Rear	9-65
9-51	Movement of Four-Man Color Guard to the Rear	9-66
9-52	Movement of Five-Man Color Guard to the Rear	9-67
9-53	Movement of Six-Man Color Guard to the Rear	9-69
9-54	Position of the Color at the Order	9-70
9-55	Position of the Color at the Carry	9-70
9-56	Position of the Color at Parade Rest	9-70
9-57	Position of the Organizational Color at Color Salute	9-70

Section X SALUTE BATTERY

9-58	General	9-75
9-59	Preparation	9-75
9-60	Sequence of Events and Individual Actions	9-76

Section XI CIVILIAN PARTICIPATION IN MILITARY CEREMONIES

9-61	General	9-78
9-62	Purpose	9-78
9-63	Types of Ceremonies	9-78
9-64	Civilians Presenting Awards	9-78
9-65	Civilians Receiving Awards	9-78
9-66	Reviews in Honor of Civilians	9-79

Section I

REVIEWS

9-1. General

- a. Reviews can be traced to the Middle Ages when rulers, as a way of showing their strength, were likely to have military ceremonies.
- b. In the American Army, reviews were originally outlined in Baron Friedrich von Steuben's Blue Book and practiced by revolutionary soldiers. A review consisted of four stages: a formation of troops, presentation and honors, inspection, and a march in review. Today's reviews have incorporated three additional stages: honors to the nation, remarks, and a conclusion. The presence of the band represents the significant role that the drum, fife, and other musical instruments have played throughout military history for signaling in camp or on the battlefield. The presence of the Colors at the center of the formation represents their presence at the forefront of the unit during the heat of battle.
- c. At the beginning of the FM 22-5 17th century, armies throughout the world were adopting the regimental system. Regiments were assigned a specific color or number for ease of identification and position on the battlefield. In battle, the color (or flag) party marched at the front and center of its unit as a point for the unit to dress on. By leading the unit in battle, the colors became prime targets, as victories in those days were expressed in terms of the number of enemy colors captured; consequently, the color party bore the brunt of the battle and suffered heavy casualties. Historically, in the American Army, the Colors have been placed in the center of the formation and have been considered to be a part of the company on the immediate right of the Colors. This company is still called the Color unit.
 - (1) In infantry regulations of 1812, the line up of companies from right to left was determined by the seniority of the company commander, with the senior on the right. The manual for US infantry tactics in 1862 placed the senior commander on the right and the second senior on the left with the other eight companies in between. After they were lined up, the companies were then numbered first through tenth from right to left. In the infantry drill regulations of 1892, companies continued to be aligned by seniority. Between 1910 and 1970, companies were designated by letters of the alphabet and lined up from right to left: headquarters company, rifle companies in alphabetical order, then any combat support companies. The Colors, however, remained posted in the center of the formation.
 - (2) Musical elements (usually drums and fifes, and sometimes a band) were used during actual battle and marched 12 to 15 paces to the rear of the formation. By 1892, the infantry drill regulations posted bands and field music on the right of the formation or at the head of the formation when it moved in column.
- d. Honors appear to have originated as musical fanfare and later a gun salute was added. The combination of the two now constitute military honors.

- (1) The custom of announcing the arrival of royalty and heads of state with a fanfare of trumpets or drum rolls had its origin in England. It is ironic that drum *ruffles* and the two-note bugle call *flourishes*, used in this manner today, have all but disappeared in the British Commonwealth while the tradition is still carried on in the United States.
- (2) The colonists brought many of the military customs of their mother country with them when they came to America. At the time of the French-Indian Wars, soldiers were instructed to “rest (present arms) and beat two ruffles” for the Royal Governor of Virginia. In 1776, officers of the Continental Army were advised that “the adjutant is to order a drum and fife to give two ruffles to a major general and one to a brigadier.”
- (3) When Baron von Steuben wrote his manual of discipline, he stated that there were to be “certain ruffles” for generals. It is interesting to note that General George Washington was not accorded ruffles. Instead, his arrival was announced by a march — more than likely “Washington’s March” — that is still played today. In time, this custom was extended to include governors of sovereign states and visiting foreign dignitaries.
- (4) Ruffles were not considered elegant and were used exclusively by the military. In some cases they were even accorded to the officer of the day.
- (5) It was some time before trumpets were added to the drum rolls; it is believed they were so used during the War of 1812. Honors for dignitaries were modified to include a flourish of trumpets called the “Three Cheers.” It is likely that this particular salute evolved into the ruffles and flourishes as they are played today.
- (6) Navy records indicate that the regulations of 1876 stipulated there would be a ruffle of drums to announce the President’s arrival but made no mention of the trumpet flourishes. A later regulation (1893) stated that the chief executive would receive four ruffles and flourishes.
- (7) Gun salutes may be traced back to a period when it took a long time to reload guns. By firing all of its guns at once, the battery or fort was left defenseless. The number of guns fired as a salute to honor a US President was not established until 1841. Prior to that, presidential honors included one gun for every state. It reached at least 24 guns before it was decided that any more guns would be unrealistic and the number of 21 was adopted in 1841. In 1875, the United States adopted 21 guns for the international salute and that number is currently used as honors for all dignitaries of rank equivalent to the President.

9-2. Types of Reviews

a. A review is a military ceremony used to:

- (1) Honor a visiting, high-ranking commander, official, or dignitary, and / or permit them to observe the state of training of a command.
- (2) Present decorations and awards.

- (3) Honor or recognize unit or individual achievements.
- (4) Commemorate events.
- b. Normally, a review is conducted with a battalion or larger troop unit however, a composite or representative element consisting of two or more platoons may serve the same purpose. A review consists of the following steps in sequence:
 - (1) Formation of troops.
 - (2) Presentation of command and honors (although primarily a characteristic of a parade, “sound off” may be included here to enhance the ceremony).
 - (3) Inspection.
 - (4) Honors to the nation.
 - (5) Remarks.
 - (6) March in review.
 - (7) Conclusion.

NOTE: The inspection stage may be omitted for decorations, awards, or individual recognition ceremonies.

- c. Other ceremonial activities, or combinations thereof, that may be incorporated within the framework of a review are:
 - (1) Review with decorations, awards, and individual retirement.
 - (2) Review with change of command, activation, or inactivation of units.
 - (3) Review with retreat.
 - (4) Review with retreat and retirement, decorations, and awards.
 - (5) Review with retreat and change of command, activation, or inactivation of units.
- d. In order that he may review his own command or accompany a visiting reviewing officer, a commander normally designates an officer of his command as commander of troops. The commander of troops is responsible for the preparation of the troops for the review.
- e. The ready line and final line on which the units are to form and the route of march are marked or designated before beginning the ceremony (Figure 9-1). The primary function of the ready line is to enable the unit commander to arrange his unit into the prescribed formation before movement to the final line. The ready line is to the rear of the final line. Flags or appropriate markings are used to designate the post of the reviewing officer and the points where *eyes, right* and *ready, front* are to be commanded (6 steps to the reviewing officer’s right and left and from 6 to 20 steps in front of the reviewing officer). Commanders should determine the length of their formation (steps) so that they know how far beyond the ready front marker (6 steps beyond the reviewing officer) they command *ready, front*. This ensures that the last members of their unit are 6 steps beyond the reviewing officer when the command is given. The command **Eyes** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface, and the command of execution **RIGHT** is given the next time the right foot

strikes the marching surface. The commands **Ready** and **FRONT** are given as the left foot strikes the marching surface.

- f. Any of the formations described for the battalion or brigade may be used; however, the two recommended formations for conducting reviews are:

- (1) Battalion in line with companies in mass (Figure 9-2).
- (2) Brigade in line with battalions in mass (Figures 9-3, 8-3).

NOTE: When desired or more appropriate, commands may be substituted for directives.

- g. The formation selected is determined by space available and other desires of the commander. Commanders may alter the formation or prescribed distances to meet local situations. Each unit should be sized uniformly with the tallest men in front and on the right. Commanders should not cause the leaders to change positions because of their size. Officers and key noncommissioned officers, including squad leaders and others equivalent by virtue of their rank and time in service, should participate in their deserved positions of dignity.
- h. If possible, the reviewing officer should arrive at his post (Figure 9-4) after the staff of the commander of troops has reversed and the commander of troops has *faced* the reviewing stand. Upon arrival, the reviewing officer should immediately take his post and refrain from greeting distinguished spectators until after the review has terminated.

NOTE: In battalion mass formation, the platoon leaders form as the first rank of troops. The right flank platoon leader serves as the guide.

- i. The reviewing officer, host or host commander, and distinguished persons invited to attend the review (but not themselves receiving the review), take positions *facing* the troops (Figure 9-4).
- j. When a ceremony is conducted for an individual junior in rank to the host or host commander, the junior takes a position to the left of the host or host commander unless the commander yields the post of honor to him. In all cases, the honor position is the position on the right and is the reviewing officer's post. The host or host commander gives the appropriate directive, **PRESENT THE COMMAND** and **PASS IN REVIEW**, during the conduct of the review.
- k. When a civilian or foreign dignitary receives the review, he takes the honor position to the right of the host. The host or host commander returns all *salutes* when, in his judgment, it would be more appropriate. As a courtesy, the host or host commander should cue the dignitary and inconspicuously explain the procedures during the conduct of the ceremony. The position in which the flags are displayed at the rear of the reviewing party corresponds to the position taken by the individual in the front rank of the reviewing party.
- l. When a ceremony is conducted honoring a foreign official or dignitary entitled to honors, equivalent honors (*salutes*) are rendered in the manner prescribed in AR 600-25.

NOTE: If the honors of the dignitary include his or her nation's anthem, the honors are played in the following order: four ruffles and flourishes, the foreign anthem, an approximate 3-second drum roll, and the US National Anthem.

- m. When the ceremony includes decorations, awards, or retirements, the host or host commander should be senior in rank or position to the highest ranking individual being honored.
- n. An officer from the local staff is designated to escort and brief members of the reviewing party and to show them their positions.
- o. Since all situations or eventualities relative to various services or units (military academies, special honor guard, active Army units, reserve components, Reserve, Officer Training Corps, and training centers) cannot be foreseen, commanders may make minor changes to stated procedures. However, with a view toward preserving Army tradition and maintaining consistency, they should not alter or modify the sequence of events other than stated.

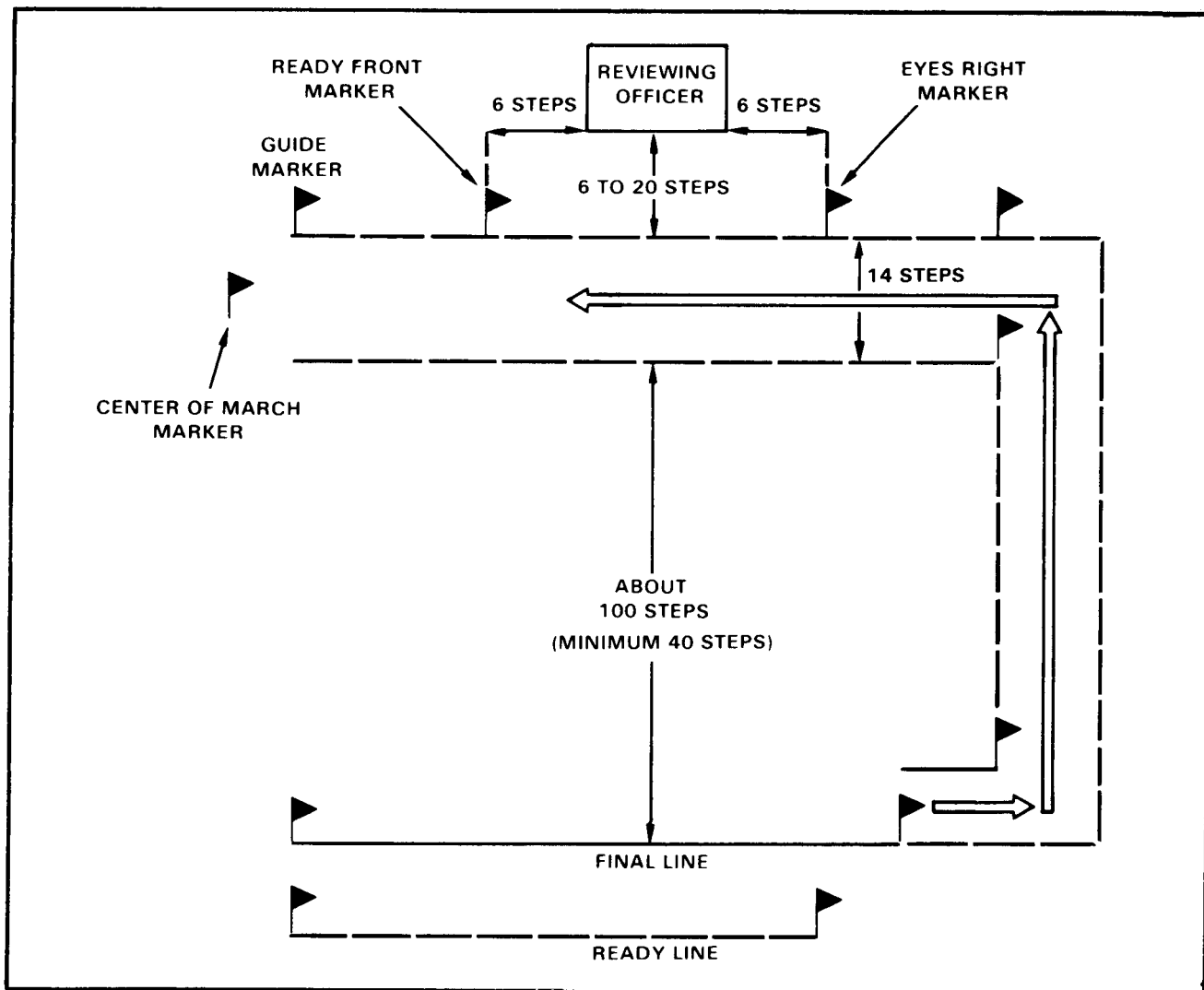


Figure 9-1. Preparation for Review

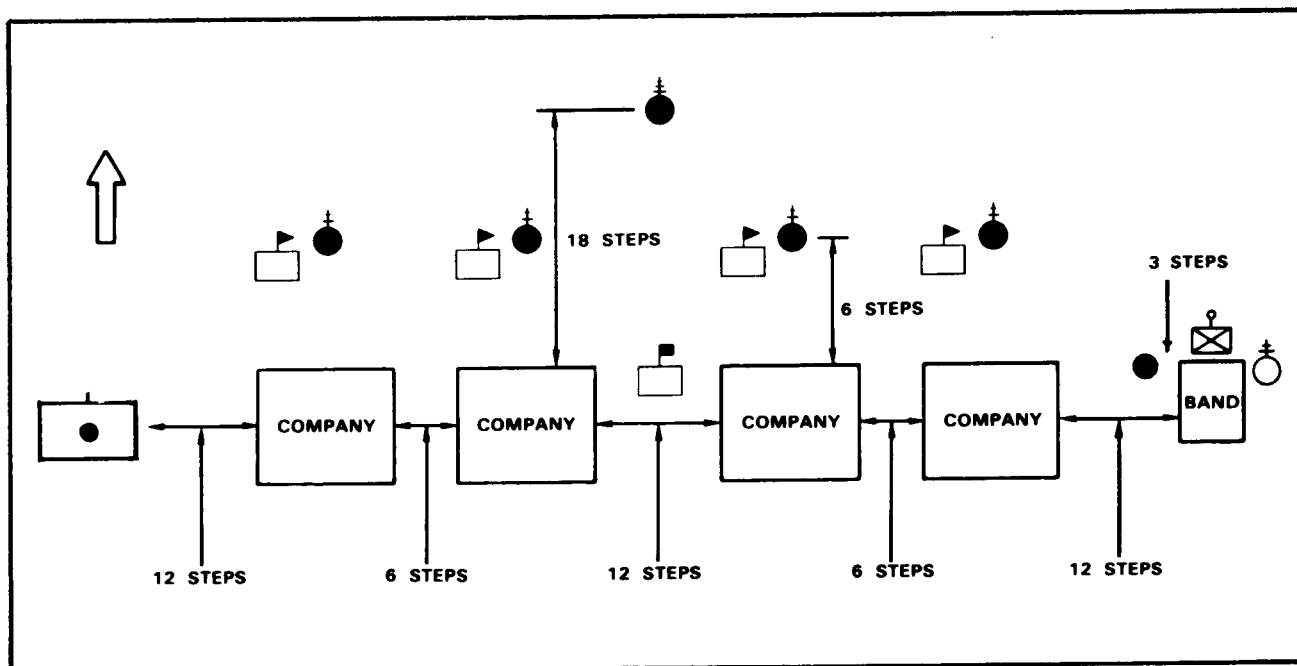


Figure 9-2. Battalion in Line with Companies in Mass

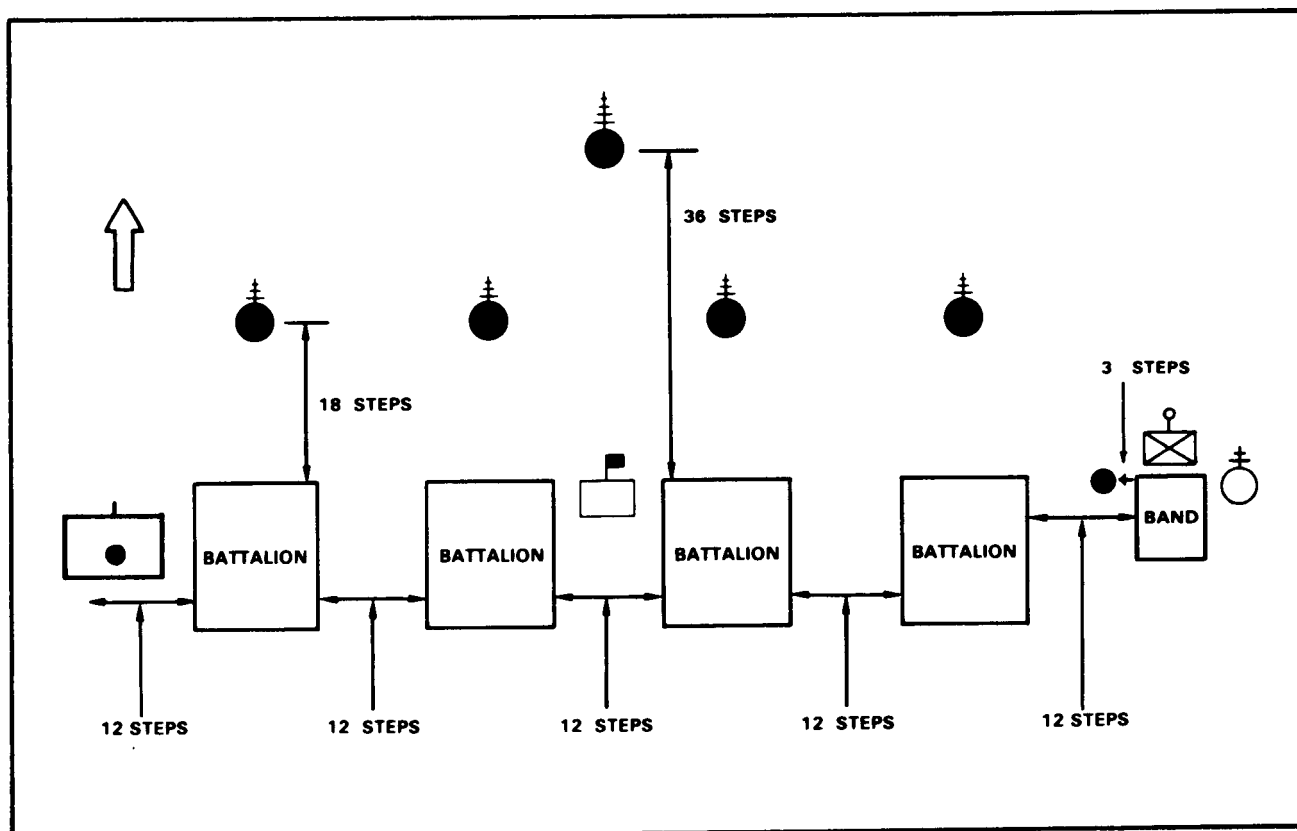


Figure 9-3. Brigade in Line with Battalions in Mass

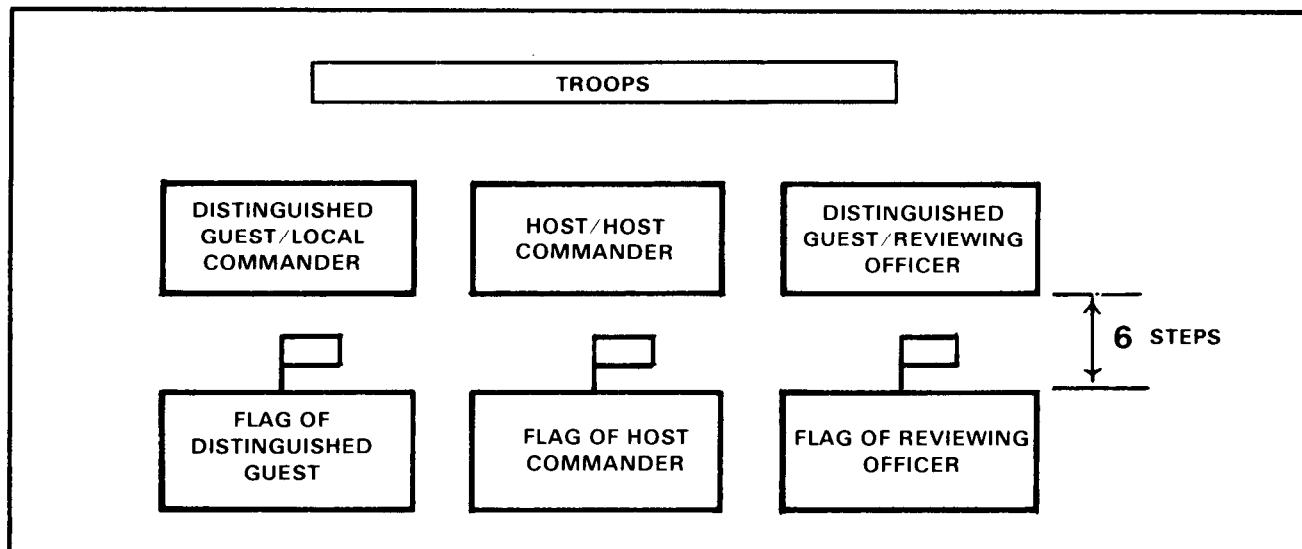


Figure 9-4. Reviewing Party

9-3. Sequence of Events and Individual Actions

a. Formation of Troops.

- (1) Units are moved to their positions on the ready line in the most convenient manner. For a large review, the commander of troops prescribes the routes, sequence, and time of arrival on the ready line.

NOTE: If the ready line is not used, the units form on the final line. They are aligned and given the command **Parade, REST**. To alert the units that the ceremony is to begin, the adjutant (from his position near the band) directs **SOUND ATTENTION**. The band immediately sounds *attention*. Unit commanders immediately *face about* and command their units (in sequence from right to left) to **ATTENTION** and then *face about*. When the last unit is at *attention*, the adjutant directs **SOUND ADJUTANT'S CALL**. The band immediately sounds *adjutant's call*. The adjutant then moves to his post midway between the line of troops and the designated post of the commander of troops and *facing* the commander of troops. When the adjutant has *halted* at his post, the commander of troops *marches* his staff to their post midway between the line of troops and the reviewing officer's post. The ceremony then continues as prescribed in this paragraph.

- (2) In motorized and mechanized units, occupants of vehicles form dismounted in a formation corresponding to that of the other units. Their vehicles remain to the rear of the formation.
- (3) The band takes its position on the final line 12 steps to the right of the right flank unit's marker. The adjutant's initial post is three steps to the left of the band. After verification that all units are positioned on the ready line, the adjutant *facing* down the final line and over his right shoulder directs the band to **SOUND ATTENTION**.
- (4) The band sounds *attention*, pauses, and waits for the directive to **SOUND ADJUTANT'S CALL**.
- (5) Upon hearing *attention*, unit commanders *face about*, bring their units to *attention* and *right shoulder arms*, when appropriate, and *face* to the front. (Supplementary commands are not given in mass formations.)

- (6) When all units are at *attention*, the adjutant directs **SOUND ADJUTANT'S CALL**.
- (7) The band sounds *adjutant's call*, and (without pause) begins playing a march. It continues until the last unit *halts* on the final line.
- (8) Immediately after *adjutant's call*, the following events take place simultaneously:
 - (a) All unit commanders immediately command **GUIDE ON LINE**. The guide of each unit *double times (port arms)*, unless weapons are to be carried at *sling arms*) to his position on the final line of markers, *halts* with his right foot on the marker, executes *order arms*, and then *faces* (to the right) the adjutant.
 - (b) The adjutant aligns the guides (if necessary) and immediately *marches* to a position centered on the command and halfway between the post of the commander of troops and the final line. He *halts* and *faces* to the left, *facing* the line of troops.
 - (c) As soon as the guides are on line, the unit commanders (in sequence from right to left) command **Forward, MARCH**. As they approach the positions of the guides, commanders command **Mark time, MARCH** so that the rank of squad leaders begins to *mark time* and is on line with the left shoulder of the guide. The commander allows the unit to *mark time* for about eight counts and then commands **Company (Battalion), HALT**. On the command of execution **HALT**, the guide executes *left face*, which places his right foot on the marker. If the unit is at *right shoulder arms*, the unit commanders command **Order, ARMS**. The unit is then aligned by the command **At close interval, Dress right, DRESS**. At the command of execution **DRESS**, the platoon leader of the right platoon moves by the most direct route to the right flank and verifies the alignment of as many ranks as necessary to ensure proper alignment. When he has completed verification, he returns to a position directly in front of his third squad leader, *halts* parallel to the formation, and *faces* to the right. Other platoon leaders, on the command of execution **DRESS**, position themselves directly in line with their third squad by executing one (15-inch) step to the right. The commander then commands **Ready, FRONT** and, immediately, **Parade, REST**. He *faces about* and assumes *parade rest*. For larger reviews, the command **AT EASE** may be substituted for **PARADE REST** throughout the ceremony.

NOTE: If a ceremony is conducted with a company formed in line with platoons in column, the commands **COVER** and **RECOVER** are given to align the platoons.

- (9) When all units are on the final line and are at *parade rest*, the adjutant directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION**.
- (10) Unit commanders *face about* and (in sequence starting with the right flank unit) command **Company (Battalion), ATTENTION**. For larger formations, the commands may start with the center or right center unit, working toward both flanks. The unit commander then *faces about*.

- (11) When all units are at *attention*, the adjutant *faces about*. That is the signal for the commander of troops and his staff to move from their positions near the reviewing stand to their posts midway between the line of troops and the reviewing stand and *face* the line of troops.
- (12) When the commander of troops has *halted* at his post, the adjutant *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS**.
- (13) Unit commanders *face about* and in sequence command **Present, ARMS**. They then *face about* and *salute*.
- (14) After all units are at *present arms*, the adjutant *faces about*, *salutes*, and reports **"Sir, The command is formed."**
- (15) The commander of troops returns the *salute* of the adjutant and directs **TAKE YOUR POST**. (The members of the staff do not *salute*.) The adjutant takes his post by *facing* to the half left in *marching*, *marches* forward, *halts* at *normal interval* to the right of the right flank staff member, and *faces about*. When the adjutant is in position, the commander of troops directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS**. Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*; *face about*; command **Order, ARMS**; and then *face about*. When all units are at *order arms*, the left flank staff officer commands **Right, Face; Forward, MARCH; Column left, MARCH; Column left, MARCH; Staff HALT**; and **Left, FACE**. At that time, the staff should be centered on, and two steps in front of, the commander of troops (Figure 9-5).

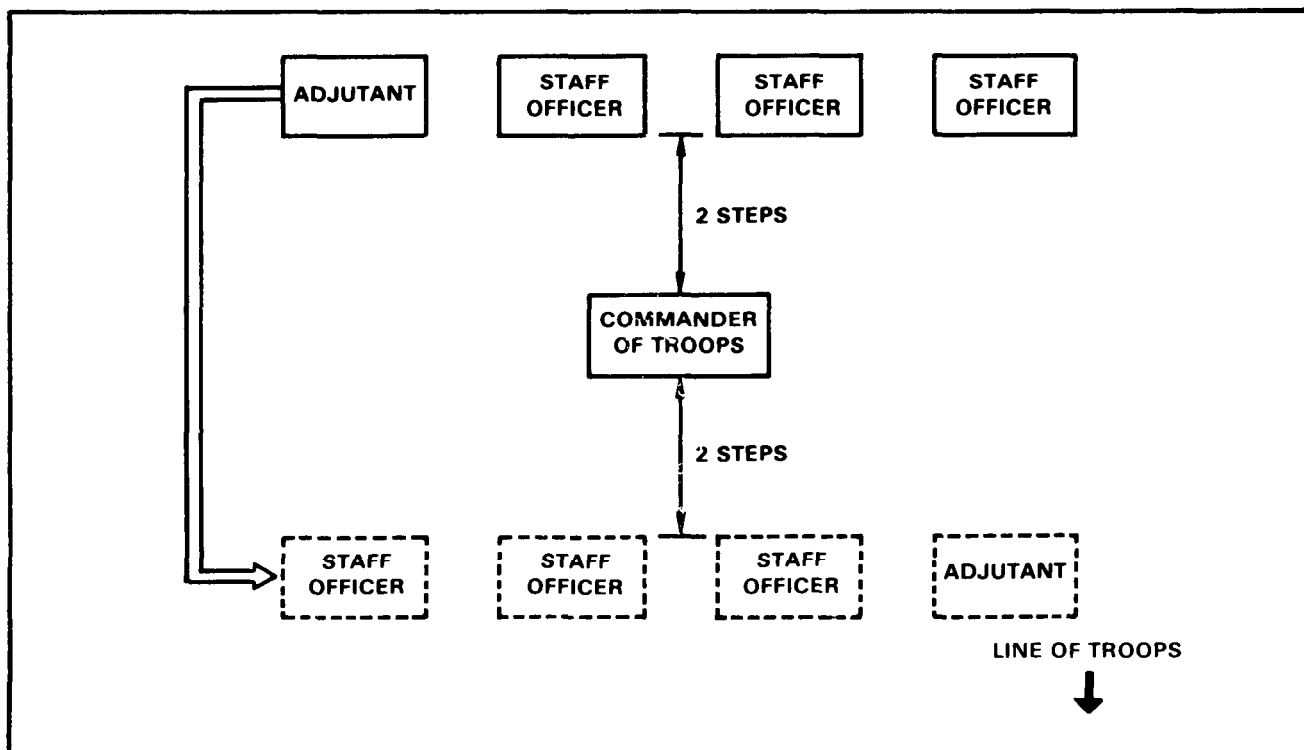


Figure 9-5. Movement of the Staff to the Rear of the Commander of Troops

- (16) When the units have completed *order arms* and the staff has reversed, the commander of troops then *faces* the reviewing stand and waits for the reviewing officer to take his post. If, for some reason, the reviewing officer has been delayed, or if a delay is prearranged, the commander of troops directs the units to **Parade, REST** and then directs them to **ATTENTION** before the reviewing officer's arrival.

b. Presentation and Honors.

- (1) When the reviewing officer has *halted* at his post, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS**. Unit commanders *face about*; command **Present, ARMS**; *face* to the front; and *salute*. When the units have completed this movement, the commander of troops *faces about* and commands his staff and himself to **Present, ARMS**.

NOTES: 1. If the reviewing officer is entitled to honors (AR 600-25), the commander of troops should verify that the salute battery (executive officer's right arm is raised) and the band (band master's arms are at the ready-play position) are prepared to render honors before he *faces* the reviewing officer. The *salute* of the commander of troops is the signal for the band and salute battery to render honors, The reviewing party, and all military personnel within sight or hearing, *salute* on the first note of the music and terminate their *salute* when honors have been completed.

2. If the reviewing officer is not entitled to honors, only the reviewing officer returns the *salute* of the commander of troops.

3. During a review, *salutes* (honors) are directed to the reviewing officer's post. In some reviews, it is appropriate for a person (colonel) not entitled honors to participate as the reviewing officer, and a person (general) entitled honors to participate as host or distinguished guest. In that situation, honors (ruffles and flourishes and *cannon salute*) are not appropriate.

- (2) Upon completion of the presentation and / or honors, the commander of troops commands his staff to **Order, ARMS**; *faces about*; and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST**.

- (3) Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about*, and command **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**. They then *face* to the front and execute *parade rest*.

- (4) When all troops are at *parade rest*, the commander of troops *faces about*. He and his staff remain at *attention*.

NOTE: When scheduled, retreat is integrated into the review at this point, Procedures are outlined in paragraph 9-6.

c. Inspection.

NOTE: The inspection may be omitted for decorations, awards, or retirement ceremonies. If the inspection is omitted, the ceremony continues (paragraph 9-4) immediately following the presentation and / or honors, or following retreat, if it is scheduled.

- (1) When the commander of troops has *faced* the reviewing stand, the reviewing officer and the host or host commander moves forward and *halts* 3 steps in front of the commander of troops. Staffs, aides-de-camp, flag bearers, and orderlies do not normally accompany the inspecting party.

- (2) The commander of troops *salutes* and reports **“Sir, The command is prepared for inspection.”** The band begins to play marching music on the *salute* of the commander of troops and continues to play until the reviewing officer has returned to his post.
- (3) The commander of troops guides the reviewing party to the right flank of the band. The commander of troops and the host or host commander *march* to the right of the reviewing officer. Whether *marching* or riding, the reviewing party passes between the line of brigade commanders and staffs, battalion commanders, and company commanders in division or similar-size reviews. In reviews for a battalion, or units of similar size, the inspecting party passes between the front rank of troops and the line of company commanders, or they pass immediately in front of the platoon leaders when companies are in a line formation.
- (4) When the inspection is made by motor vehicle, the reviewing party enters the vehicle in front of the reviewing stand. The reviewing officer enters first and occupies the left rear position. The host or host commander occupies the right rear position. The vehicle, approaching from the left of the commander of troops, proceeds to the post of the commander of troops and stops. The commander of troops *salutes*, reports, and enters the vehicle, occupying the right front position.
- (5) Upon the departure of the reviewing party, the senior staff officer commands the staff to **Parade, REST**. After the inspection has been completed, the senior staff officer commands **Staff, ATTENTION** before the return of the commander of troops.
- (6) When the reviewing party approaches the right flank of each unit, the unit commander *faces about* and commands **Company, ATTENTION**. He then *faces* to the front and over his right shoulder commands **Eyes, RIGHT**. On the command **Eyes, RIGHT**, the company commander, executive officer, and platoon leaders execute *eyes right* and *salute*. The guidon bearers execute *eyes right* and *present guidons*.

- NOTES:**
1. Platoon leaders give the command **Eyes, RIGHT** and *salute* when the company is in a line formation. The company commander *faces* his unit, but neither he nor his guidon bearer *salute*.
 2. When in battalion mass formations, the battalion commander *faces about* and commands **Battalion, ATTENTION** and **Eyes, RIGHT**, but neither he nor his staff *salute* or execute *eyes right*. The unit commanders, executive officers, platoon leaders, and guidon bearers *salute*. The battalion commander remains *facing* his unit, until the reviewing officer has passed the left front of his unit, at which time he commands **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**. He then commands his staff to **Parade REST** but remains *facing* his unit.

Each soldier turns his head to the right and, as the reviewing officer comes into his line of vision, each soldier follows the officer with his head and eyes, until the reviewing officer reaches the front. At that point, the head and eyes of each soldier remain to the front. As soon as the reviewing officer has cleared the unit, the commander commands **Order, ARMS**. He then *faces about* and commands **Parade, REST**, assumes the position himself, and remains *facing* his unit. The left flank unit remains at *attention* until the reviewing party has cleared the right rear of the unit. Other

commanders remain *facing* to the rear and command their units to **ATTENTION** as the party passes to the rear of their units. They then command **Parade, REST**, *face* to the front, and assume *parade rest*.

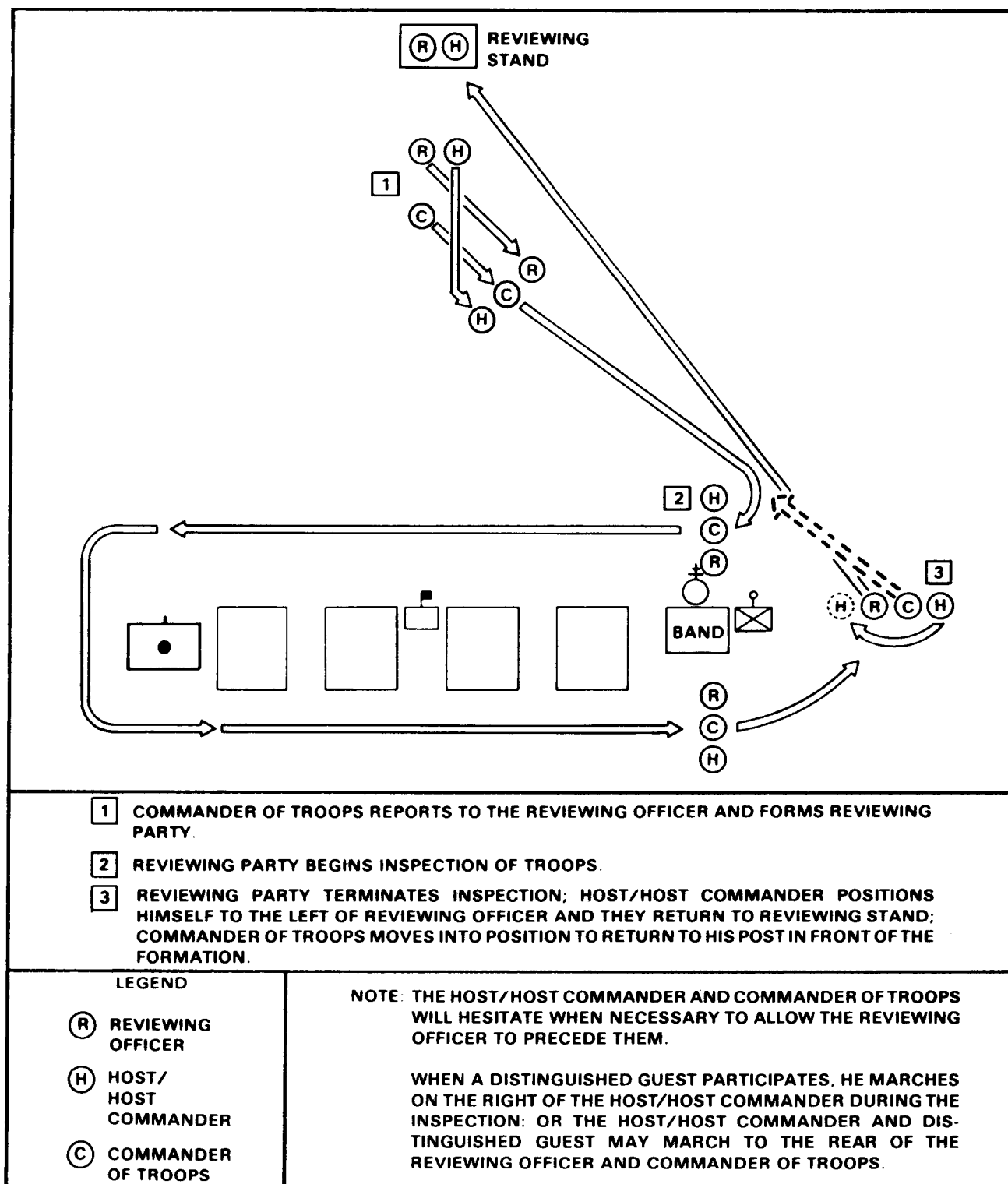


Figure 9-6. Movement of the Reviewing Party

- (7) As the reviewing party approaches the Colors, the commander of troops inconspicuously commands **Present, ARMS** (six steps from the Colors) and **Order, ARMS** (six steps beyond the Colors). They do not *salute* when passing to the rear of the Colors. The Color guard and bearers execute *eyes right*. The organizational color dips (*salutes*).
- (8) After passing in front of the troops (to include the salute battery), the inspection continues along the rear of the troops and terminates at the right flank of the band. The commander of troops commands **Party, HALT**. The bandmaster has the band play softly until the reviewing party members begin *marching* back to their posts. The commander of troops *faces* to the half left in *marching*, takes two steps, *halts*, and *faces about*. The host or host commander repositions himself to the left of the reviewing officer. When the host or host commander is in position, the commander of troops and the reviewing officer exchange *salutes*. Upon termination of the *salutes*, the reviewing officer and host or host commander immediately *face* to the half left in *marching* and return to their posts. The commander of troops hesitates momentarily and then *faces* to the right in *marching* and returns to his post (Figure 9-6).

NOTE: Other ceremonial activities may be integrated into the review at this point. The sequence of events and actions of individuals are discussed in paragraphs 9-4 and 9-5.

d. Honors to the Nation.

- (1) When the reviewing party members have returned to their posts, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS**. Unit commanders *face about* and command **Company (Battalion), ATTENTION** and **Present, ARMS**. Each commander then *faces about* and *salutes*. When all units have completed these movements, the commander of troops *faces about* and commands **Present, ARMS** for himself and his staff. On the execution of the *hand salute* by the commander of troops, the band begins to play the National Anthem.
 - (2) The reviewing party and all military spectators *salute* while the National Anthem is being played (Appendix E).
 - (3) Upon completion of the National Anthem, the commander of troops and staff terminate their *salutes* on his command. He then *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST**.
 - (4) Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*; *face about*; command **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**; *face about*; and execute *parade rest*.
 - (5) When the last unit has executed the directive, the commander of troops *faces about* and commands his staff and himself to **Parade, REST**.
- e. **Remarks.** After the commander of troops and his staff have assumed *parade rest*, the reviewing officer, the host or host commander, or the distinguished guest may address the command.

f. March in Review.

- (1) Upon completion of the remarks, the commander of troops commands his staff to **ATTENTION**, *faces about*, and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION**. Unit commanders *face about* and command **Company (Battalion), ATTENTION** and *face* back to the front. When the units are at *attention*, the commander of troops *faces* the reviewing officer.
- (2) When the commander of troops has *faced* the reviewing officer, the host or host commander directs **PASS IN REVIEW**.
- (3) The commander of troops *faces about* and directs **PASS IN REVIEW**. The band is then *faced* to the right and *marched* to a position that enables it to move straightforward onto the line of march without an initial *turning* movement, *halts*, and *faces* to the left. The left turn marker should be positioned to minimize the movement of the band (Figure 9-7).

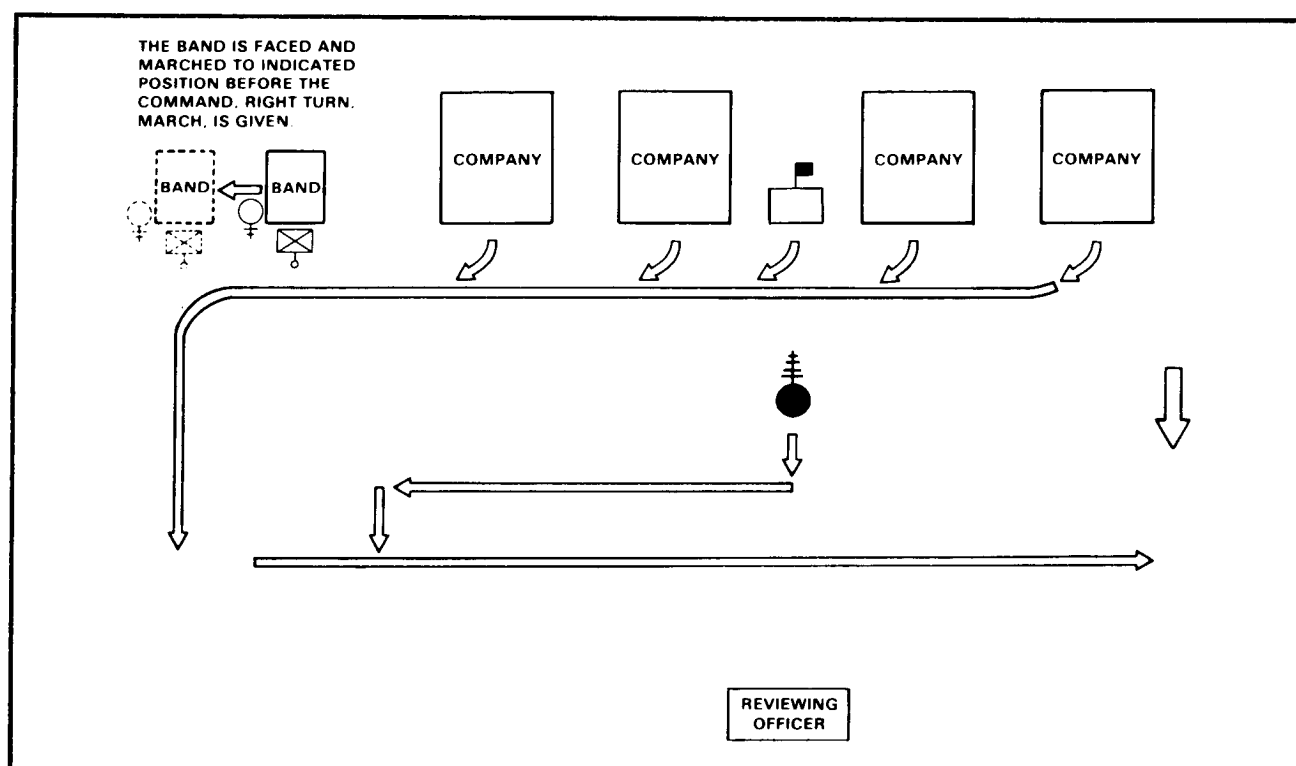


Figure 9-7. March in Review in Column with Units in Mass

- (4) Unit commanders *face* to the right when the commander of troops directs **PASS IN REVIEW**. If weapons are to be carried at *right shoulder arms*, the commander *faces about* and commands **Right shoulder, ARMS**. He then *faces* to the left. The commander next to the band waits until the band moves into position. He then commands **Right turn, MARCH** loud enough for the band to hear. The band takes this command as its signal to begin playing and to *march* forward onto the line of march.

- (5) Other units move out in procession in the same manner and follow in column at the prescribed distance (Figure 9-8). For larger reviews, commanders may command their units (in sequence) to *parade rest* while waiting their turn to move onto the line of march.

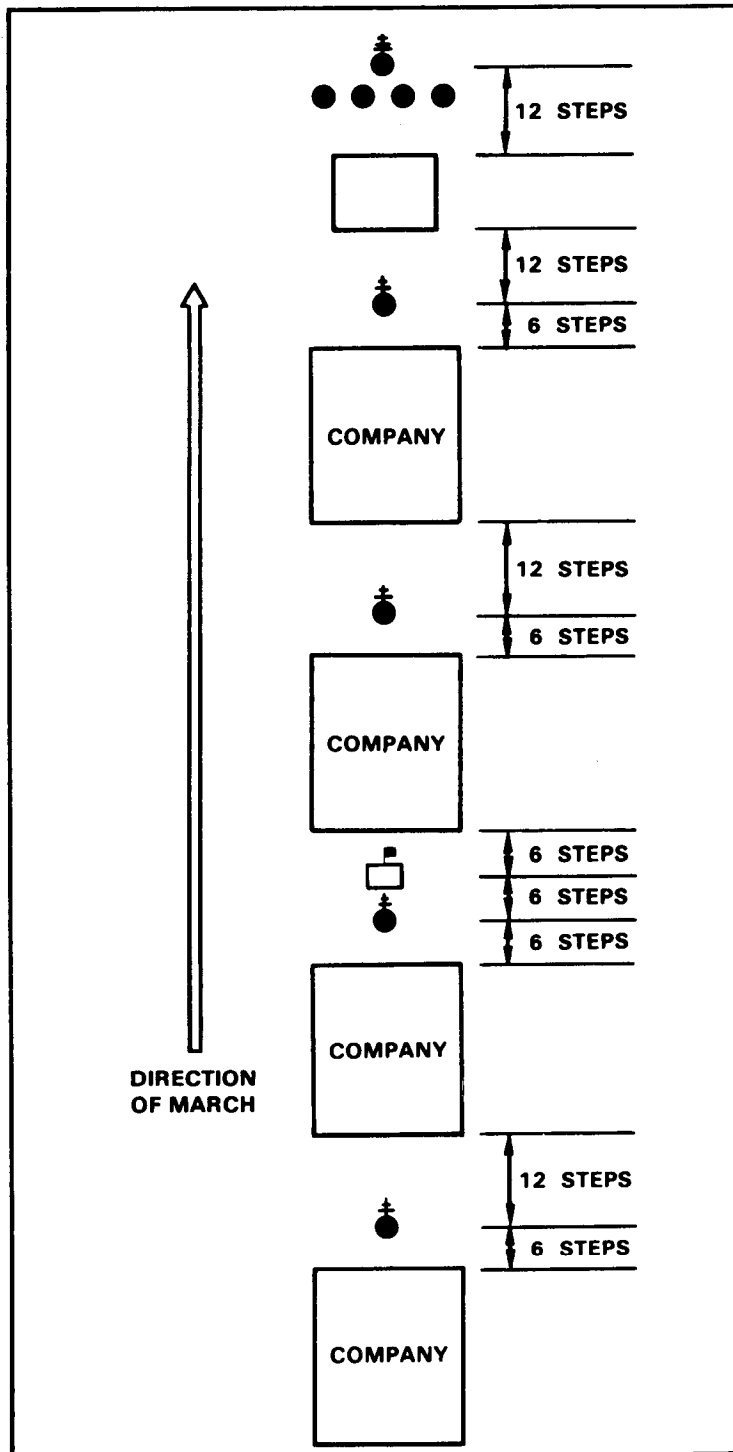


Figure 9-8. Battalion in Column with Companies in Mass

- (6) The band and each following unit change direction at points indicated by markers. The commander commands, **Left turn, MARCH**. The commander *faces about* while *marching* as his unit is making the turn. When his unit has completed the turn, the commander commands, **Forward MARCH**, and *faces* back to the front.
- (7) All commanders, except the commander of troops, move with their staff into positions in the column and at the head of their respective units just before turning onto the reviewing line (Figure 9-9).

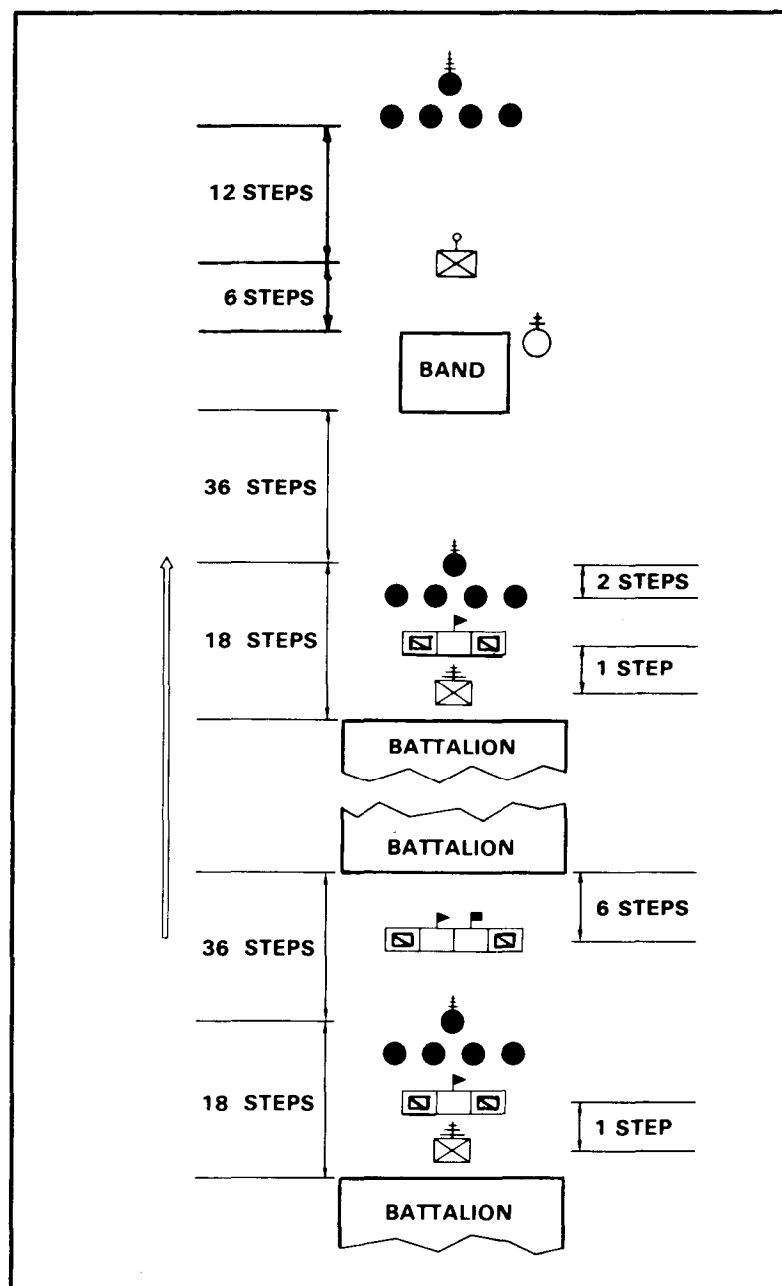


Figure 9-9. Brigade in Column with Battalions in Mass

- (8) The commander of troops and his staff move forward and execute *turning* movements to arrive at a position 12 steps in front of the drum major on the reviewing line.
- (9) On command, the commander of troops, the brigade and battalion commanders, their staffs, and the command sergeant major execute **EYES RIGHT** and *salute* at the *eyes right* marker. The commander commands **Ready, FRONT** and terminates the *salute* when their staffs have reached the *ready front* marker.
- (10) The reviewing officer returns only the *salute* of the commander of troops. (The return of the *salute* by the reviewing officer represents the *salute* for all subordinate commanders. This enables the reviewing officer to observe the review without being interrupted by frequent *salutes*.) The reviewing officer, the host or host commander, their staffs, and military spectators *salute* the National Color when it passes.
- (11) After terminating the *salute*, the commander of troops and his staff (without command) execute three *wheeling* movements and take their post with the commander of troops on line with and to the right of the reviewing officer.
- (12) Troop units execute *eyes right* on command from their company commander or from the center company commander when in battalion mass. Commanders give the preparatory command **Eyes** over their right shoulder two steps from the marker as the right foot strikes the marching surface. The command of execution **RIGHT** is given when the right foot strikes the marching surface again and on line with the marker. On the preparatory command, the guidon bearer executes *raised guidon*. On the command of execution, the company commander, executive officer, and platoon leaders execute *eyes right* and the *hand salute*. The guidon bearer executes *eyes right* and *present guidon*. The right file continues to look straight forward and maintains correct distance. All other members execute *eyes right* and maintain alignment. When the rear of the unit has passed six steps beyond the reviewing officer, company commanders command **Ready** as the left foot strikes the marching surface and **FRONT** the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface. Unit personnel end their *salutes* and turn their heads and eyes to the front. The guidon bearer executes *raised guidon* on the command **Ready** and returns to the *carry* position on the command **FRONT**.
- (13) When passing the reviewing officer, the bandmaster *salutes* and continues to look straight forward, and simultaneously the drum major executes *eyes right* and *salutes*. The other members of the band continue to play marching music without interruption. When the band has passed the reviewing officer, the drum major has the band execute three *left turns* into a position in front of and *facing* the reviewing officer and at least 12 steps from the left flank of the marching troops. As the Colors pass, the bandmaster and drum major *salute* while the band continues to play marching music without interruption.

- (14) As the Color guard passes the reviewing officer, each member, except the right flank man, executes *eyes right* on the command of the senior Color sergeant. The organizational color is *dipped* in *salute*.

g. Conclusion.

- (1) When the last troop element has passed the reviewing stand and has executed *ready front*, the band goes into an eight-bar drum cadence. On the first beat following the drum cadence, the band begins playing (in place) the official version of "The Army Goes Rolling Along," beginning at the introduction. At the appropriate time, the drum major has the band *march* forward and execute a *left turn* onto the reviewing line while continuing to play until the completion of the chorus.

NOTE: The band may play music representative of the command after the last troop element has passed the reviewing stand and before playing "The Army Goes Rolling Along."

- (2) At the completion of the Army song, the commander of troops and the reviewing officer face each other and exchange salutes, thus officially terminating the ceremony.
- (3) It is appropriate for spectators to rise and stand at *attention* while "The Army Goes Rolling Along" is being played.

9-4. Review with Decorations, Awards, and Individual Retirement (Sequence of Events)

NOTES: 1. If the inspection is omitted, the commander of troops (following *order arms* after the presentation and/or honor, or after "To the Color" is played) commands ***Persons to be honored and colors center*** (pause), **MARCH**. The ceremony then continues (as outlined in paragraph 9-4c through o).

2. The procedures mentioned provide latitude for recognition of one or a group of retirees of various grades. However, the host or host commander should consider it appropriate to have the review conducted in the retiree's honor when only one distinguished individual is retiring and allow that individual to participate as the reviewing officer. When the Colors *halt*, the reviewing officer (retiree) positions himself in front of and centered on the Colors *facing* the reviewing stand. After awards are presented by the host, the retiree returns to the reviewing officer's post. If there are several awardees and/or retirees, it may be desirable to have the host or host commander act as the reviewing officer. In such case, the following sequence will apply.

- a. The procedure for the formation of troops, presentation and honors, and inspection remain the same as previously mentioned.
- b. When the reviewing officer has completed the inspection and returned to his post, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs ***Bring your units to attention***. Unit commanders *face about*, command ***Company (Battalion), ATTENTION***, and *face* back to the front. The commander of troops then commands (loud enough for the band to hear) ***Persons to be honored and colors center*** (pause), **MARCH**.
- c. On the command **MARCH**, the band begins to play marching music and continues to play until the detachment *halts* in front of the reviewing officer.

- d. The persons to be decorated and retirees are formed at the ready line at correct distance behind the last rank of the color unit. (An alternate position for these personnel may be six steps to the left and on line with the reviewing officer. They then join the detachment after the Colors are brought forward.) They line up from left to right according to the rank of the decoration to be received. Those persons receiving decorations of the same rank take positions according to their military grade. On the command **CENTER**, persons to be decorated execute *right face*. On the command **MARCH**, they *march* forward to clear the right rear of the unit to their front. They then execute *column left*, *march* six steps in front of the line of company commanders, execute *column left*, *halt* in a position centered on the Colors, and execute *right face*. The commands **HALT** and **Right, FACE** are given by the last man in the file.
- e. When unit colors or guidons are to be decorated, each is accompanied by its commander and positioned in a single rank five steps in front of the persons to be decorated according to the rank of decorations to be bestowed (the highest ranking decoration on the right). The senior staff officer (battalion) or platoon leader (company) assumes command in the absence of the commander.
- f. On the command **MARCH**, the Colors *march* forward seven steps and *halt* one step in front of the line of company commanders.
- g. The staff of the commander of troops, on the command **CENTER**, executes *right face*. On the command **MARCH**, the staff *marches* forward far enough to provide clearance for the Colors and persons to be honored. The staff then *halts* and executes *left face* on command of the rear staff officer.
- h. The commander of troops *marches* forward and takes his post five steps in front of and centered on the leading element. He *faces* about and commands **Forward, MARCH**. The commander of troops, persons to be honored, and Colors *march* forward. The commander of troops commands **Detachment, HALT** when he is about six steps from the reviewing officer. He then *salutes* and reports **“Sir, The persons and colors to be honored are present.”** The host/host commander returns the *salute* and directs **PRESENT THE COMMAND**.
- i. The commander of troops *faces* to the right in *marching*, passes around the right flank of the persons being honored, and proceeds directly to his post, two steps in front of and centered on his staff. He then directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS**. Unit commanders *face about* and command **Present, ARMS**. They then *face about* and execute the *hand salute*. The commander of troops then *faces about* and commands **Detachment present, ARMS**; he and his staff come to *present arms* with the detachment.
- j. Honors to the nation are rendered at that time. At the last note of the National Anthem, the commander of troops commands (for himself, his staff, and the detachment) **Detachment order, ARMS**. He then *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST**. Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about*, and command **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**. They then *face* to the front and assume *parade rest*. The commander of troops *faces about* and commands **Parade, REST**; the commander of troops and his staff execute *parade rest*.

- k. The reviewing officer advances by the most direct route to the right front of the line of persons to be honored. A command sergeant major or designated soldier carrying the awards or certificates positions himself *one step to the rear* and *one 15-inch step to the left* of the reviewing officer. After the citation is read, the award bearer immediately steps forward and passes the award to the reviewing officer. After the award has been presented, the award bearer returns to his original position to the rear of the reviewing officer. The award bearer moves with the reviewing officer as he moves down the line of awardees. As soon as the reviewing party has *halted* in front of the first awardee, a narrator reads the citation. The narrator pauses between citations to permit the reviewing officer time to pin the medal on the person being decorated and move to the next man, or to fasten the streamer on the staff of the guidon or organizational color. As the reviewing officer approaches the guidon to be decorated, the bearer executes *present guidon* so that the reviewing officer may fasten the streamer. The Color bearer lowers the organizational color to be decorated far enough for the reviewing officer to fasten the streamer. The Color bearer gathers the organizational color around the staff so it will not touch the marching surface. He resumes the *carry position* after the streamer has been attached.
- l. When the last award has been presented, the reviewing officer and his party return to their posts.

NOTE: Remarks are made at this time. In some instances, for special ceremonies, the detachment (Colors, awardees) is posted prior to remarks. In this situation, the units are brought to *attention* before the Colors are moved and returned to *parade rest* when the Colors are in their original position.

- m. Upon completion of the remarks, the commander of troops brings his staff to *attention*, *faces about*, and direct **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION**. Unit commanders *face about* and command **Company (Battalion), ATTENTION**, and then *face about*. The commander of troops *faces about* and commands **Detachment, POST** (pause), **MARCH**. On the command **POST**, the following occurs simultaneously:
 - (1) Colors *reverse march* and *halt*.
 - (2) Awardees and/or retirees execute a *right face*; guidon bearers and/or commanders execute an *about face*.
- n. On the command **MARCH**, Colors and awardees step off and the band begins to play.
 - (1) Persons who were decorated *march* forward, execute two *column lefts* and *halt* on line (six steps to the left of the reviewing officer), and execute a *left face*. The commands **HALT** and **Left, FACE** are given by the last man in the file.
 - (2) Colors step off and return to their original posts.
- o. As the Colors pass his position, the commander of troops *faces* himself and his staff to the left and *marches* his staff back to the center of the field and *faces* them to the right. The commander of troops *faces* to the left; when the Colors are in position he then *faces* the reviewing officer.

- p. The host commander directs **PASS IN REVIEW**.
- q. The procedures from this point on are the same as described in paragraph 9-3 e,f, and g.

9-5. Review with Change of Command, Activation or Inactivation (Sequence of Events)

- a. The procedure for this formation of troops, presentation and honors, and the inspection are the same as described in paragraph 9-3.
- b. When the reviewing officer has completed the inspection, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION**. Unit commanders *face about* and command **Company (Battalion), ATTENTION**, then they *face about*. When the command has completed the movement, the commander of troops commands **Colors Center** (pause), **MARCH**.
- c. On that command, the Colors are brought forward in the same manner as previously described. Presenting the command and honors to the nation remain the same as previously described, paragraph 9-3d.
- d. On the completion of honors to the nation, the commander of troops commands **Detachment order, ARMS**, *faces about*, and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST**. Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about* and command **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**. They then *face about* and assume *parade rest*. The commander of troops *faces about* and commands **Parade, REST**; the commander of troops and his staff execute *parade rest*.
- e. As soon as the commander of troops and his staff have executed *parade rest*, the reviewing party moves forward to within four steps of the Colors and *halts*. As the party *marches* forward, the senior commander positions himself between the old and the new commander. The command sergeant major moves from his post (at the rear of the reviewing party) by the most direct route and *halts* directly in front of the organizational color.

NOTE: At the beginning of the ceremony, the outgoing commander should assume the role of host or host commander. The senior official or commander designated to “pass the organizational color” should assume the role of an honored guest or reviewing officer except during that brief portion of the ceremony wherein he may be called upon to act as a host or host commander for the purpose of passing the organizational color. Since the inspection of troops normally occurs early in the ceremony, the incoming commander is also at that time treated as a guest, and is expected to accompany the outgoing commander and senior official during the inspection. After the organizational color has been passed, the incoming commander should assume the role of host or host commander, and the senior official and outgoing commander both become honored guests or reviewing officers at this point and remain as such for the balance of the ceremony (Figure 9-10).

- (1) **Change-of-command ceremonies.** The outgoing commander positions himself four steps in front of his organizational color; the senior commander is directly to his left. The old and new commanders then take one step forward and execute *facing* movements so that they are *facing* each other.

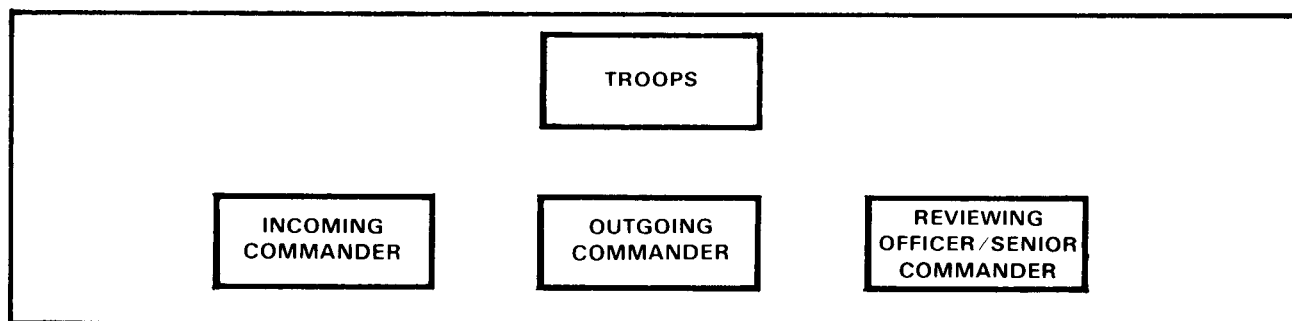


Figure 9-10. Reviewing Party for Change of Command

The command sergeant major removes the organizational color from the Color bearer's sling (with his right hand above his left hand), and *faces about*. The narrator reads the assumption-of-command order. Upon completion of the reading, the command sergeant major steps forward and presents the organizational color to the outgoing commander (1), who grasps the organizational color with the left hand above his right hand. The outgoing commander passes the organizational color to the senior commander (2), who grasps the color with his right hand above his left hand and, in turn, passes the organizational color to the new commander (3), who grasps the organizational color with his left hand above his right hand. The incoming commander passes the organizational color to the command sergeant major (4) who grasps it with his right hand above his left hand, *faces about* and returns the organizational color to the Color bearer's sling (Figure 9-11). As the command sergeant major *faces about*, both commanders then execute *facing* movements back to their original direction *facing* the Colors. The command sergeant major and the reviewing party *face about* and return to their post. Procedures from this point forward are the same as previously described, paragraph 9-4 m-o.

NOTE: 1. This procedure allows the organizational color to be over the heart of the incoming and outgoing commanders.

2. For a company level change of command, the reviewing party is lined up the same as in larger units. The guidon takes the place of the organizational color and the first sergeant replaces the command sergeant major. The guidon is passed in the same manner as the organizational color. The sequence of events remains the same with modifications made to fit available assets.

(2) **Activation ceremonies.** The position of the senior commander is four steps in front of the Color bearer (with an empty sling for the organizational color of the unit to be activated) with the unit commander to his left. The command sergeant major moves from his post with the cased organizational color and positions himself in front of and *facing* the senior commander. The narrator reads the activation order. Upon completion of the reading, the command sergeant major presents the cased organizational color to the senior commander and steps backward. The senior commander lowers the cased organizational color to allow the command sergeant major to uncase the organizational color. The command sergeant major folds the case and places it inside the Color bearer's cartridge belt (rear center). With the organizational color uncased, the senior commander rotates the staff

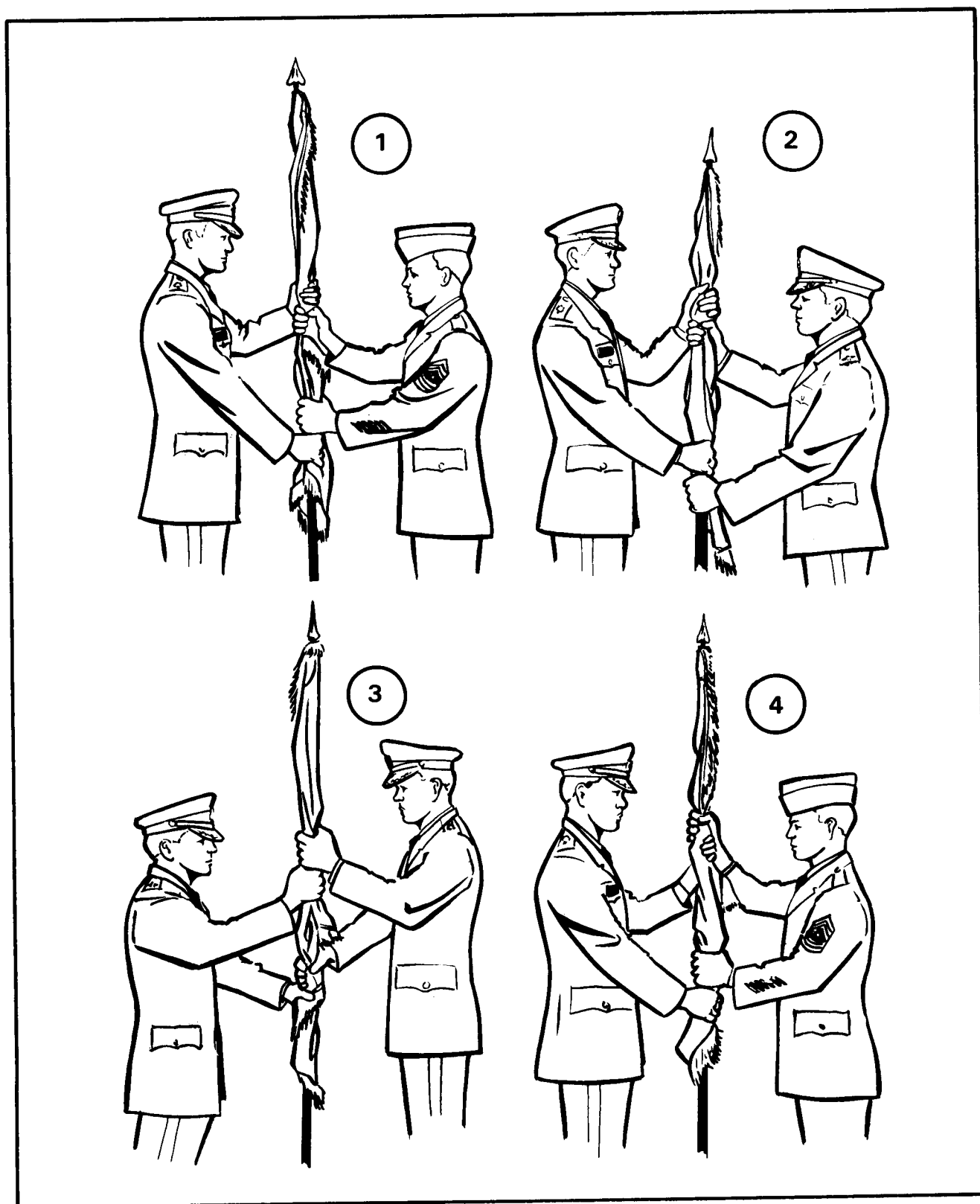


Figure 9-11. Passing of Organizational Color for Change of Command

to allow the organizational color to unfurl and drape freely. The senior commander presents the organizational color to the commander of the unit to be activated. The command sergeant major steps forward and accepts the organizational color from the unit commander and places it in the Color bearer's sling. When the command sergeant major *faces about*, the reviewing party *faces about* and returns to the reviewing stand. The command sergeant major returns to his original post. Procedures from this point forward are the same as previously described in paragraph 9-4, m-o.

- (3) **Inactivation ceremonies.** The position of the commander is four steps in front of the organizational color. The command sergeant major moves from his post and positions himself in front of the organizational color. He moves the organizational color from the bearer's sling and *faces about*. The narrator reads the inactivation order. Upon completion of the reading, the command sergeant major presents the organizational color to the commander and steps backward. The organizational color is grasped by the commanders and the command sergeant major as described for change-of-command ceremonies. The commander rotates and lowers the organizational color, allowing the command sergeant major to case the organizational color. Upon completion of the casing, the commander presents the cased organizational color to the senior commander and the command sergeant major steps forward and accepts the organizational color from the senior commander. The reviewing party *faces about* and returns to the reviewing stand. The command sergeant major hands the cased organizational color to a designated soldier who *marches* from the field and the command sergeant major returns to his post. The Color bearer of the inactivated unit *marches* with the Color guard for the remainder of the ceremony with an empty sling. The procedures from this point forward are the same as previously described in paragraph 9-4, m-o.

9-6. Review with Retreat (Sequence of Events)

- a. The formation of troops and presentation and honors are the same as previously described, paragraph 9-2.
- b. At the completion of the presentation and honors to the reviewing officer, the commander of troops commands his staff to **Order ARMS**, *faces about*, and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST**. Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about*, and command **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**. They then *face about* and assume *parade rest*. The commander of troops directs **SOUND RETREAT**, *faces about*, and commands his staff to **Parade, REST**. As soon as the commander of troops and his staff are at *parade rest*, the band sounds retreat. At the conclusion of retreat, the commander of troops commands his staff to **ATTENTION**, *faces* the troops, and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS**. When the units have completed these movements, he then *faces* the reviewing officer and commands his staff to **Present, ARMS**. This is the signal for the band to play "To the Color."

- c. When the ceremony is held on an Army post, the cannon is fired on the last note of "Retreat," and the flag is lowered while "To the Color" is played. (See Appendix E regarding appropriate procedures.)
- d. The reviewing officer and his staff stand at *attention* during the sounding of the retreat. On the first note of "To the Color," they *salute* and hold the *salute* until the last note is played.
- e. On the last note of the music, the commander of troops commands **Order, ARMS** for himself and his staff, *faces about*, and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST**. When the units have completed these movements, the commander of troops then *faces* the reviewing officer.
- f. The review then proceeds with the inspection as in a normal review.

9-7. Special Review

- a. A special review is conducted by a composite or representative unit and serves the same purposes as a standard review when a larger formation is not practical. The composite unit normally consists of a band, Colors, two or more platoons, and a salute battery (when appropriate).
- b. The reduced formation is not a reason to eliminate any of the components of a review or change their sequence.
- c. A special review is essentially the same as a battalion or larger unit review, except:
 - (1) The troops are formed on a final line.
 - (2) *Attention* and adjutant's call are not sounded.
 - (3) Neither the adjutant nor a staff participate.
 - (4) Unit guidons are not used in this formation. (Organizational colors represent the unit conducting the review.)
 - (5) The commander of troops gives commands rather than directives.
 - (6) The band positions itself in front of the reviewing officer by executing a *left turn* at a point midway between the final line and the reviewing line, and then *turns right* when on line and centered on the reviewing officer.
 - (7) Platoons pass the reviewing stand in line formation rather than column formation.
 - (8) On the directive **Pass in review** the commander of troops commands **Right FACE (Right shoulder, ARMS**, if appropriate); **Forward, MARCH**. The band steps off playing a march on the command of **Forward, MARCH**. Platoon leaders remain six steps to the front of and centered on their platoons. Platoon sergeants remain one step to the rear of and centered on their platoon.

- (9) Platoon leaders command **Column left, MARCH** at the first turn marker and **Left flank, MARCH** when centered on the reviewing line.
- d. Indoor ceremonies retain the same sequence as a normal review, excluding elements that are precluded because of space. Normally, a pass in review is not possible indoors.

Section II

PARADES

9-8. General

- a. The term parade had various meanings to Continental Army troops camped at Valley Forge. It could mean to form, march, and drill. Present day parade procedures originated from the daily activities conducted then to form, organize, instruct, and issue parole and countersign words to the various guards on duty (outpost, picket, camp, and quarters). Early parades also enabled commanders to give special instructions to subordinate leaders and to make command announcements. In the US Army Regulations of 1863, reviews were a type of parade, and “dress parades” were conducted daily, except on extraordinary and urgent occasions. The parade remains basically the same as the review except that it has retained its original intent — a method whereby unit commanders could inspect troops, present awards, and issue information. The sequence of a parade has the following steps — formation of troops, sound off by a band, honors to the nation, presentation, manual of arms, report, orders published, officers center, pass in review.
- b. Battalion and brigade parades are opened by adjutant’s call sounded on a trumpet. This call has opened parades of the American forces for over 150 years. After some preliminaries, the adjutant directs **SOUND OFF** and the band plays three chords. Having sounded off, the band *marches* in front of the troops and then *countermarches* to its original position. This *march* across the front of the line is said to have originated with the Crusades (A.D. 1095 to 1260). The troops offering themselves for holy service were drawn up in a long formation and the band countermarched only before those chosen to serve. In American ceremonies, the sound off has been handed down as a ceremonial tradition.
- c. After the band sounds off, the commanding officer may, if he wishes, give the troops some facings or movements of the manual of arms. This was the traditional way in which he established control over his command, and it has been practiced in the United States since the revolutionary war.
- d. Parades in the revolutionary army were usually held at “Troops” or about 8 o’clock in the morning and was the time used for sergeants to call the roll and report it to the adjutant.
- e. After the sergeants had returned to their posts, the commander directed that necessary orders and information be reported. After the adjutant had read the orders, he announced **“Parade is dismissed.”** At that time, officers moved

to a position centered on the commanding officer. As the commander gave specific instructions to the officers, the first sergeants would march their units back to their respective company areas where they would be dismissed.

9-9. Preparation

The appearance and movement of troops in formation are the primary characteristics of a parade. The preparation and organization of troops for a parade are similar to that for a review. In a parade, since the commander of troops is also the reviewing officer, the distance between the troops and the commander is greater than that for a review. Other differences are that the band conducts *sound off*, the inspection is omitted, a report is rendered, orders are published, and officers and guidons are *marched* forward and centered on the commander. If retreat is scheduled, honors to the nation are conducted concurrently with retreat.

9-10. Ceremonial Battalion Parade

a. Formation of Troops.

- (1) Units are moved to their positions on the ready line in the most convenient manner. The commander prescribes the routes, sequence, and time of arrival on the ready line. He and his staff take their posts prior to adjutant's call.
- (2) The procedure for moving from the ready line to the final line is the same as for a review.

b. Sound Off.

- (1) After the battalion has been formed, aligned, and given *parade rest* on the final line, the adjutant directs **SOUND OFF** and assumes the position of *parade rest*. He remains *facing* the formation.
- (2) At the directive *sound off*, the band plays three *sound off* chords. At the conclusion of the third chord, the band moves forward playing a march in quick time. The band executes a *left turn* to *march* across the front of the troops. At the left of the line of troops, the band *countermarches* and returns over the same ground to the right of the line. After the band has passed beyond the right of the troops, it executes a *right turn*, *countermarches* again, and *halts* in its original position. When the band has *halted*, it will cease playing at the next convenient place in the music and will again play the three *sound off* chords. (Trooping the line by the band may be eliminated when ceremonies are conducted indoors during inclement weather and space is limited).

NOTE: Retreat, when scheduled, is integrated at this point. Upon completion of the *sound off* chords, the band pauses briefly and then plays retreat (by the trumpet section) without a command from the adjutant. Upon completion of retreat, the adjutant comes to *attention* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS**. The adjutant *faces about* and *salutes*. At the conclusion of "To the Color" or the National Anthem, the adjutant comes to *order arms* and *faces about* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS**. After the last unit comes to *order arms*, the adjutant *faces about*. The commander and his staff assume **PARADE REST, ATTENTION, PRESENT ARMS**, and **ORDER ARMS** with the adjutant. The adjutant's *salute* is the signal for the band to play "To the Color" or the National Anthem.

c. **Honors to the Nation.**

- (1) If retreat is not conducted, the adjutant (after the band has completed *sound off*) assumes the position of *attention* and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS**.
- (2) Unit commanders assume the position of *attention*, *face about*, and command **Company, ATTENTION, Present, ARMS**. They *face about* and *salute*.
- (3) When all units are at *present arms*, the adjutant *faces about* and *salutes*. This is the signal for the band to play the National Anthem.
- (4) The battalion commander and his staff execute **Present, ARMS** on his command on the first note of the music.

d. **Presentation.**

- (1) Upon completion of the National Anthem, the battalion commander and his staff execute **Order, ARMS** on his command. The adjutant terminates his *salute*, *faces about*, and directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS**.
- (2) Unit commanders terminate their *salute*, *face about*, command **Order, ARMS**, and then *face* (back) to the front.
- (3) When all units are at *order arms*, the adjutant *faces about*, *salutes*, and reports **"Sir, The parade is formed."**
- (4) The battalion commander returns the *salute* and commands **POST**. The adjutant *marches* forward, passes by the battalion commander's right, and takes his post as the right flank member of the staff.

e. **Manual of Arms.**

- (1) After the adjutant has joined the staff, the battalion commander commands such movements in the manual of arms as he may desire.
- (2) When desired, the commander may direct, rather than command, **HAVE YOUR UNITS EXECUTE THE MANUAL OF ARMS**. The unit commanders in sequence from right to left command **Right shoulder, ARMS; Port, ARMS; Left shoulder, ARMS; Order, ARMS**. When the unit on the right has completed all of the movements, the next unit then begins and so on until the last unit has completed the movements.

f. **Report.**

- (1) When all units have completed the manual of arms, the battalion commander then directs **RECEIVE THE REPORT**.
- (2) The adjutant returns to his position at the center of the command and commands **REPORT**. Unit commanders in succession, from right to left, *salute* and report "_____ **Company, All present or accounted for.**" The adjutant returns each commander's *salute*.
- (3) After receiving the report, the adjutant *faces about*, *salutes*, and reports **"Sir, All present or accounted for."**

g. Publishing of Orders.

- (1) The battalion commander returns the *salute* and directs **PUBLISH THE ORDERS.**
- (2) The adjutant *faces about* and directs **ATTENTION TO ORDERS** (he then reads the orders).

h. Officers Center March.

- (1) After reading the orders, the adjutant directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PARADE REST.**
- (2) Unit commanders *face about* and command **Parade, REST.** They then *face about* and come to *parade rest*.
- (3) When all units are at *parade rest*, the adjutant commands (loud enough for the band to hear) **Officers** (pause), **Center** (long pause), **MARCH.** He then *faces about* and takes his post with the staff.
- (a) On the command **Officers**, all officers come to *attention* and guidon bearers come to *carry guidon*.
- (b) On the command **Center**, when companies are in mass formation, the company commanders and guidon bearers *face* to the center. Officers commanding platoons move one step forward and *face* to the center. Executive officers move through the interval between units nearest to the center and take their posts in the column formed by the platoon leaders.
- (c) At the command **MARCH**, the band plays marching music and continues to play until the officers have *halted* in front of the commander. Officers and guidon bearers close to the center, *halt*, and individually *face* to the front. Company commanders, when moving to the center, *face* half right or half left in *marching*, *march* to the front, and close on a line four steps in advance of the line of guidon bearers. The guidon bearers close on their own line, each taking a post to the rear of his company commander. All other officers close on the line of platoon leaders (Figure 9-12).

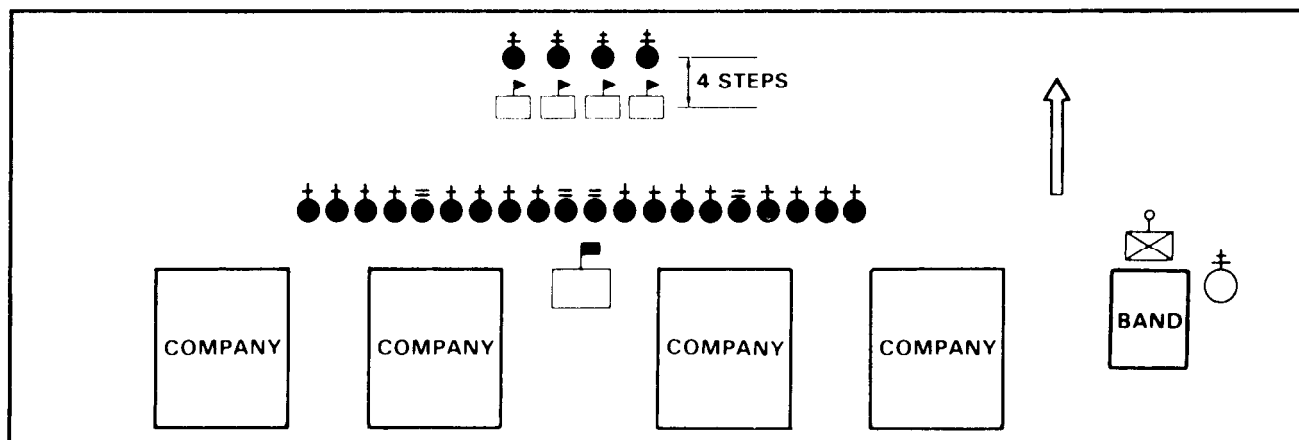


Figure 9-12. Position of Key Personnel After the Command *Officers, Center, MARCH*

- (4) After the officers and guidon bearers have closed and *faced* to the front, the senior company commander commands **Forward, MARCH**. The center officer of the leading rank is the guide. The officers and guidon bearers are *halted* with the leading rank six steps from the battalion commander, and they *salute*. The commands **HALT** and **Present ARMS** are given by the senior company commander. The battalion commander returns the *salute*. On the command **Order, ARMS** by the senior company commander, the officers execute *order arms* and the guidon bearers execute *carry guidon*.
 - (5) The battalion commander gives such instruction as he deems necessary and then commands **Officers, Post** (pause), **MARCH**.
 - (a) At the command **Post**, all officers and guidon bearers *face about*.
 - (b) At the command of execution **MARCH** the band begins to play and officers and guidon bearers step off.
 - (6) The senior commander commands **Officers, HALT**. He *halts* the leading rank in line, three steps from the line of companies. He then commands **Post** (pause), **MARCH**.
 - (a) At the command **Post**, the officers and guidon bearers *face* outward.
 - (b) At the command **MARCH**, the officers and guidon bearers step off and return to their posts and come to *parade rest*. The music ceases when the last officer has taken his post and come to *parade rest*.
 - (7) During the execution of *officers center* and *officers post*, except when *saluting*, all guidon bearers remain at *carry guidon*.
- i. **Pass in Review.**
- (1) When all officers have returned to their posts and the band has stopped playing, the battalion commander directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION**.
 - (2) Unit commanders assume the position of *attention*, *face about*, and command **Company, ATTENTION**. Then they *face about*.
 - (3) When all units are at *attention*, the battalion commander directs **PASS IN REVIEW**.
 - (4) The battalion *passes in review* in the same manner as prescribed for a review except the units render honors when six steps to the left of the commander of troops and staff, and terminate honors when the unit is six steps to the right of the commander of troops and staff. The commander of troops and staff then assume the role of the reviewing party at their location on the field.
- j. **Conclusion.**
- (1) When the last element of troops has passed the reviewing stand and executed *ready front*, the band ceases playing and goes immediately into an eight-bar drum cadence. On the first beat following drum cadence, the band begins playing (in place) the official version of "The Army Goes Rolling Along," beginning at the introduction. On the second time through letter

A (or ninth bar), the drum major has the band *march* forward and execute a *left turn* onto the reviewing line while continuing to play until the completion of the chorus.

- (2) The completion of “The Army Goes Rolling Along” terminates the ceremony.
- (3) It is appropriate for spectators to rise and stand at the position of *attention* while “The Army Goes Rolling Along” is being played.

9-11. Ceremonial Brigade Parade

- a. The brigade ordinarily is formed in line with battalions in mass formations. The parade is the same as the ceremonial battalion parade with the following exceptions:
 - (1) The brigade commander is substituted for battalion commander, and brigade for battalion, in the description.
 - (2) In moving across the front of the brigade, the band passes in front of the line of battalion commanders during the *sound off*.
- b. The battalions execute *present arms*, *order arms*, *parade rest*, and come to *attention* on the command of execution of their respective commanders. Reports are made by the battalion commanders instead of company commanders.
- c. At the command of execution **MARCH**, of **Officers, Center, MARCH**, the battalion commanders, their staffs, and Colors close on the line of battalion commanders and staffs. The company commanders *face* to the half right or half left in *marching* and close on a line four steps to the rear of the battalion color. The guidon bearers *face* half right or half left in *marching* and close on a line four steps back of the company commanders. The other officers *face* half right or half left in *marching* and close on a line four steps in back of the guidon bearers. The command sergeant major remains in place and assumes command of the battalion.
- d. The officers, guidon bearers, and Colors having closed and *faced* to the front, the senior battalion commander commands **Forward, MARCH**. The center officer of the leading rank is the guide. On the command of the senior battalion commander, the officers, guidon bearers, and Colors are *halted* with the leading ranks six steps from the brigade commander. They *salute* the brigade commander; he returns the *salute*. The commands **Present, ARMS** and **Order, ARMS** are given by the senior battalion commander.
- e. The brigade commander commands **Officers, Post** (pause), **MARCH**. On the command **Post**, the Colors execute *reverse march*. All others execute *about face*. On the command of execution **MARCH**, the officers, Colors, and guidon bearers *march* forward. The senior battalion commander commands **Officers, HALT** so that the rank of battalion commanders is on line with its original position. The senior battalion commander then commands **Post** (pause), **MARCH**. On the command **Post**, the battalion commanders and staffs *face* outward, the battalion Color guard executes *wheeling* movements, and on the command of execution **MARCH** the color guard *marches* back to its original position. The company commanders, guidon bearers, and other officers *face*

to the half right or half left in *marching* and move back to their original positions.

9-12. Street Parades

- a. For street parades, troops are formed and *marched* in the most convenient manner. Street parades may include military vehicles. Towed or transported weapons add to the drama of a street parade. Cargo vehicles are included only when it is desired to increase the size of the display.
- b. Practical formations for street parades are:
 - (1) Columns of threes and fours.
 - (2) Two or more columns of threes and fours abreast.
 - (3) Mass formation.
- c. The vehicles move in a single column or column of twos, threes, or fours abreast, as the width of the street permits.
- d. In order to keep military units in the same cadence, units should not *march* between two bands.

Section III HONOR GUARDS

9-13. General

- a. In the Continental Army, honor guards were used as a protective measure and as a means of showing the improvement in discipline in the newly formed army. They were probably selected specifically for their size and strength and maybe their proven prowess in combat. Today, the honor guard formation is a special courtesy to visiting dignitaries.
- b. Members of the guard are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline. An honor guard consists of a band, Colors, salute battery (when available and appropriate), and a formation of troops. Honor guards render personal honors to persons of high military or civilian rank or position upon arrival or departure from a military command. Honor guards are not a substitute for those ceremonies appropriate in a review or parade.
- c. An honor guard should not be so large as to compromise the exceptional standards required of honor guards. Uniforms will be those prescribed in Army regulations and tables of allowance.
- d. The senior commander or his appointed representative is the host and takes part in the ceremony. He is briefed on the sequence of events and advises the person to be honored of actions that will take place.
- e. Prior to the arrival of the person(s) to be honored, the honor guard commander positions the band, formation of troops, and salute battery from right to left in that order. The troops are formed in line of companies or platoons with

the Colors centered. When conditions dictate, the salute battery may be located separately but its control and purpose must not be impaired.

9-14. Sequence of Events and Individual Actions

- a. At the approach of the person(s) to be honored, the honor guard commander *faces about* and commands **Honor guard, ATTENTION** and then *faces about*. The host welcomes the person(s) to be honored on arrival, escorts him to the position not more than 20 steps in front of and *facing* the honor guard commander, and takes his position on the guest's left. When the person(s) to be honored has *halted* in his position, the honor guard commander *faces about*, commands **Present, ARMS**, *faces about*, and *salutes*.
- b. As the honor guard commander executes the *hand salute*, the band begins the appropriate honors. When a salute battery is employed, the first round is fired simultaneously with the first note of the music and remaining rounds are fired at three-second intervals. All military personnel in the vicinity of the honor guard formation, except those on security duty, *salute* during the firing of the *cannon salute* and the rendering of honors (AR 600-25).

NOTE: If a foreign dignitary's honors include his national anthem, the sequence of the ceremony is: honors, inspection, and the "Army Goes Rolling Along" concluding the ceremony.

- c. On the completion of the honors, the honor guard commander terminates his *salute*, *faces about*, and commands **Order, ARMS**. He then *faces about*.
- d. At this time, the honoree(s) and host *march* forward and *halt* three steps from the honor guard commander. The honor guard commander *salutes* and reports **"Sir, The honor guard is prepared for inspection."** The band begins to play appropriate music upon the *salute* of the guard commander and continues to play until the members of the reviewing party have returned to their posts. The guard commander then guides the honoree(s) and host to the right of the band. The inspecting party passes along the front and rear of the line of troops, to include the salute battery (if used), with the option of omitting the salute battery from the inspection if its distance from the remainder of the honor guard is prohibitive.
- e. The honor guard commander takes a position on the right of the person(s) honored and guides him through the inspection. The host takes a position on the right of the honor guard commander.
- f. The inspection begins at the right of the band. The inspecting party passes along the front rank of troops. Ranks are not opened; the individual members of the honor guard do not come to *inspection arms* or execute *eyes right*.
- g. The members of the inspecting party render *hand salutes* when they pass in front of the Colors.
- h. The inspection terminates at the right flank of the band. The honor guard commander commands **Party, HALT**. The bandmaster has the band to play softly until the reviewing party members begin *marching* back to their posts. The honor guard commander *faces* to the half left in *marching*, takes two steps, *halts*, and *faces about*. The host repositions himself to the left of the

honoree(s). When the host is in position, the honor guard commander and the honoree(s) exchange *salutes*. Upon termination of the *salutes*, the honoree(s) and the host immediately *face* to the half left in *marching* and return to their posts. The honor guard commander hesitates momentarily, then *faces* to the right in *marching*, and returns to his post.

- i. After the inspection is terminated and the honoree(s) and host return to their positions, the honor guard is given **Present, ARMS** and the band plays the National Anthem. If the honoree(s) is a foreign dignitary, the national anthem of his country is played first, followed by an approximate three-second drum roll and the playing of “The Star-Spangled Banner.”
- j. When “The Star-Spangled Banner” ends, the command **Order, ARMS** is given. The honor guard commander *faces about* after the command for *order arms* is given and remains at *attention* while the band plays one chorus of “The Army Goes Rolling Along,” beginning at the introduction. At the completion of “The Army Goes Rolling Along,” the honor guards commander *salutes* and announces **“Sir, This concludes the ceremony.”** The honor guard remains at *attention* until the honoree(s) has departed. The band may play incidental background music while the honoree(s) is being introduced to the staff and other guests.

9-15. Honor Cordon Ceremonies

- a. In addition to a scheduled honor guard ceremony, honor cordon ceremonies may be used when welcoming or bidding farewell to distinguished visitors. The ceremony consists of a select group of soldiers with characteristics associated with honor guards, designated to honor and provide security at the immediate arrival or departure site.
- b. The honor cordon normally consists of two squads, a senior sergeant, a cordon commander, and a host. When deemed appropriate, the commander may elect to use a band, Colors, and distinguishing flags.
 - (1) **Arrival.** Upon arrival of the craft or vehicle, the cordon is *marched* to a position near the exit (ramp) in two columns, centered on the exit, *faced* to the center, and dressed with about three steps distance between the ranks. As the honored guest(s) and greeting party depart the immediate vicinity of the exit, and approach within three steps of the host, the cordon commander commands **Present, ARMS**, and the entire cordon *salutes* simultaneously. After the honored guest(s) and all greeting party members have cleared the formation, the cordon commander commands **Order, ARMS**, and the cordon members come to *order arms* simultaneously (Figure 9-13).
 - (2) **Departure.** The formation for the honor cordon upon departure is basically the same as that described upon arrival, except the cordon commander and the senior sergeant position themselves on the flank of the formation away from the departure site. At the approach (about three steps) of the honored guest(s) and host, the cordon commander commands **Present, ARMS**, and the cordon *salutes* simultaneously. After the honored guest

has entered the conveyance, the cordon commander commands **Order, ARMS** and remains in place until the conveyance has departed. If it is an aircraft, the cordon commander commands **Order, ARMS; Guards, FACE**, and the guards *face* toward the cordon commander. The honor cordon departs the area.

- c. When a band and Colors are a part of the arrival or departure ceremonies, they are positioned as shown in Figure 9-13. The band plays appropriate music during the ceremony. The organizational color is dipped in *salute* when the honored guest(s) approaches to within six steps. After he passes, it is returned to the *carry* position. As soon as the guest(s) has entered the conveyance during a departure ceremony, the Colors and distinguishing flags depart the area with the honor cordon.

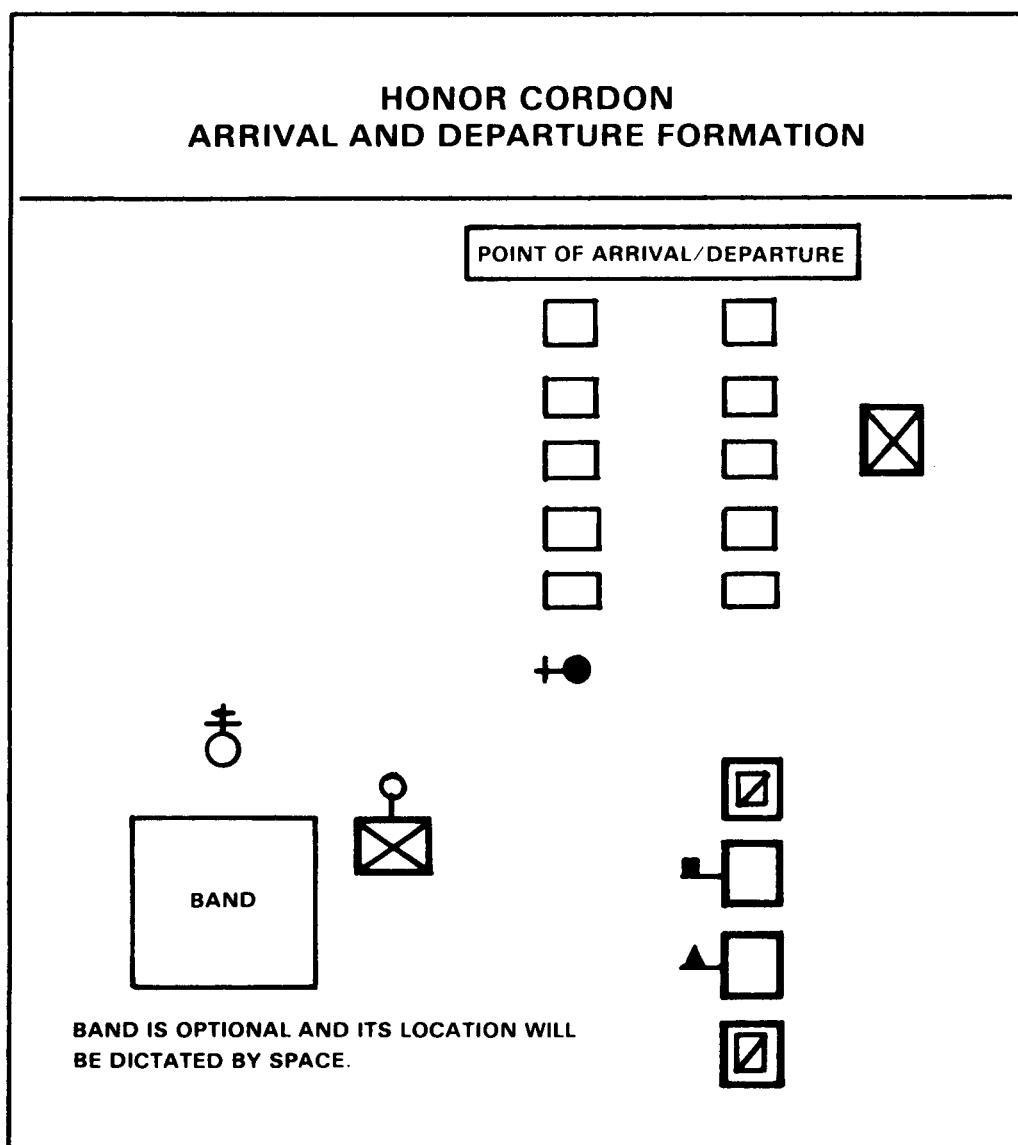


Figure 9-13. Honor Cordon Formations

Section IV

COMMAND RETREAT

9-16. General

In the 18th century, command retreat was a daily occurrence, not to honor the flag but as a signal for units to call the roll as a final accounting before reveille the following morning.

9-17. Meaning

Command retreat is a ceremony conducted with all members of the command present. Normally, it is conducted by a battalion or larger unit.

9-18. Sequence of Events

- a. The unit is formed in line formation *facing* the flag (if possible). Subunits may be in mass formation.
- b. Subunits are brought to *attention* at the approach of the commander and his staff, or at a predesignated signal.
- c. The commander of troops forms his staff in line, takes his position two steps in front of the staff, and *marches* them to a position centered on and in front of the line of troops. He gives the proper commands to have himself and his staff *facing* the line of troops when *halted*.
- d. The adjutant, as soon as the staff is *halted* and without command, moves from his position with the staff to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders.
- e. The adjutant commands **REPORT**. All unit commanders *salute* and report in succession from right to left **“Sir _____ company all present or accounted for.”** The adjutant returns each *salute*.
- f. The adjutant then commands **Present, ARMS**, *faces about*, *salutes*, and reports to the commander of troops **“Sir, All present or accounted for.”**
- g. The commander of troops returns the *salute* and directs **POST**.
- h. The adjutant moves to his position with the staff.
- i. The commander of troops commands **Order, ARMS**.
- j. The left flank member of the staff gives the commands to move the staff from behind the commander of troops to a position two steps in front of the commander of troops.
- k. The commander of troops commands **Parade, REST**. If a band or field music is to be used, the commander comes to *attention* at the appointed time and commands **SOUND RETREAT**. He then returns to *parade rest*.
- l. On the last note of “Retreat,” the evening gun is fired, the commander of troops commands **Battalion, ATTENTION** and **Present, ARMS**. He then executes *about face* and commands himself and his staff to **Present, ARMS**.

The commander's *salute* is the signal for the band to begin playing "To the Color" or the National Anthem as the flag is lowered.

- m. After the last note of music, the commander of troops commands himself and his staff to **Order, ARMS**, *faces about*, commands **Order, ARMS** and directs **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS**. The unit commanders render the *hand salute*. The commander of troops returns all *salutes* with one *salute*.
- n. The commander of troops *marches* his staff away or *dismisses* them at this time.

Section V

COMMAND REVEILLE

9-19. General

Command reveille was conducted as **Troop** in 1812 and designed to muster the unit or for roll call.

9-20. Meaning

Today, command reveille is conducted with all members of the command present. Normally, command reveille is conducted by a battalion or larger unit.

9-21. Sequence of Events

- a. The unit is formed in line formation *facing* the flag, if possible. Subunits may be in mass formation.
- b. Subunits are commanded to *attention* at the approach of the commander and his staff.
- c. The commander of troops takes his post two steps in front of and centered on his staff, commands **Forward, MARCH** and *marches* his staff to a position centered on and in front of the line of troops. The commander of troops gives the proper commands to *halt* his staff in a position *facing* the line of troops.
- d. As soon as the staff is *halted* by the commander of troops, the adjutant *moues* (without command) from his position with the staff to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders.
- e. The adjutant commands **Present, ARMS**, *faces* the commander of troops, *salutes*, and reports **"Sir, The battalion (brigade) is formed."**
- f. The commander of troops returns the *salute* and directs the adjutant to *receive the reports*.
- g. The adjutant *faces about* and commands **Order, ARMS** and **REPORT**.
- h. Unit commanders *salute* and report in succession from right to left **"Sir, _____ company, all present or accounted for."**
- i. The adjutant returns each unit commander's *salute*.
- j. After all unit commanders have reported, the adjutant *faces* the commander

of troops, *salutes*, and reports “**Sir, All present or accounted for.**”

- k. The commander of troops returns the *salute* and directs the adjutant to *publish the orders*.
- l. The adjutant *faces about* without *saluting* and commands **ATTENTION TO ORDERS**. The adjutant then reads any orders or makes any announcements the commander of troops desires to publish.
- m. The adjutant, on completion of the publishing of orders, *faces about* and takes his post with the staff without *saluting*.
- n. When the adjutant is in position, the left flank staff member commands **Right, FACE; Forward, MARCH; Column left, MARCH; Column left, MARCH**. When the staff is centered on the commander of troops he then commands **Staff, HALT; Left, FACE**. About 30 seconds before the sounding of reveille, the commander of troops commands **Present, ARMS**, executes *about face* and commands **Staff, Present, ARMS**. Reveille is then sounded either by record, field music, or band as the flag is raised. At the first note of “Reveille,” the morning gun is fired. After the last note of music, the commander of troops commands **Staff, Order, ARMS**, executes *about face*, and commands **Order, ARMS**; he then directs, **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS**. The unit commanders *salute*. The commander of troops returns all *salutes* with one *salute*. He then *marches* his staff away or *dismisses* them. This terminates the ceremony.

Section VI RETREAT

9-22. General

- a. The term “Retreat” is taken from the French word “Retraite” and refers to the evening ceremony. The bugle call sounded at retreat was first used in the French army and dates back to the Crusades. Retreat was sounded at sunset to notify sentries to start challenging until sunrise, and to tell the rank and file to go to their quarters. The ceremony remains as a tradition.
- b. The old cavalry call “To the Standard,” in use from about 1835, has been replaced by the present call of “To the Color.” This remains as music honoring the flag as it is lowered in the evening.

9-23. Meaning

Retreat is a ceremony in which the unit honors the US flag when it is lowered in the evening. This ceremony is conducted at the direction of the unit commanders. The installation commander sets the time for sounding retreat.

9-24. Sequence of Events

- a. The unit is formed *facing* the flag five minutes (if possible) before the sounding of retreat.

- b. Four minutes before the sounding of retreat, the adjutant or other appointed officer takes his position centered on and *facing* the line of troops and commands **Battalion, ATTENTION** and then **Parade, REST**.
- c. The adjutant *faces about* and executes *parade rest*. On the last note of "Retreat," the evening gun is fired. The adjutant then comes to *attention, faces about*, and commands **Battalion, ATTENTION** and **Present, ARMS** so that the unit is at *present arms* when the first note of "To the Color" or the National Anthem is sounded. The adjutant then *faces about* and executes *present arms*. The adjutant's *salute* is the signal for the band to begin playing "To the Color."
- d. At the last note of "To the Color" or the National Anthem, the adjutant *faces about*, commands **Order, ARMS**, and then directs **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS**.
- e. Unit commanders render the *hand salute*. The adjutant returns all *salutes* with one *salute*. This terminates the retreat formation.

NOTE: When subordinate units stand retreat, not as a part of a major command, the sequence is the same except the unit commander gives the commands.

Section VII REVEILLE

9-25. General

Reveille was not originally intended as honors to the flag. In 1812, it was a drum call to signify that soldiers should rise for day duty and sentries should leave off night challenging. As time passed, reveille came to denote when the flag was raised in the morning and honors paid to it.

9-26. Meaning

Reveille is a ceremony in which a unit honors the US flag as it is raised in the morning. This ceremony is conducted at the direction of the commander. The installation commander sets the time for sounding reveille.

9-27. Sequence of Events

- a. The unit is formed *facing* the flag five minutes (if possible) before the sounding of reveille.
- b. Four minutes before the sounding of reveille, the adjutant or other appointed officer (normally the duty officer) takes his position centered on the line of troops, commands the unit to **ATTENTION**, and commands **REPORT**.
- c. All subunits (companies, batteries, or troops) report in succession from right to left, "**Sir, _____ company all present or accounted for,**" or "**Sir, _____ company, _____ men absent.**" *Salutes* are exchanged with each report.

- d. The adjutant commands **Parade, REST** and then assumes parade rest himself. If a band is present, about 30 seconds before reveille, the adjutant commands **ATTENTION**, directs **SOUND REVEILLE**, commands **Present, ARMS**, and then *faces about*. The adjutant's *salute* is the signal for the band to sound reveille and to fire the morning gun. When reveille is sounded by a recording, the call **ATTENTION** is sounded about 30 seconds before reveille. This ensures that the adjutant has sufficient time to command the units to **Present, ARMS** before the first note of "Reveille."
- e. After the last note of "Reveille" has sounded, the adjutant terminates his *salute*, *faces about*, commands **Order, ARMS**, and then directs **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS**. The adjutant returns all *salutes* with one *salute*. This terminates the ceremony.

NOTE: When a unit conducts the reveille ceremony not as a member of a major command, battalion, or company, the sequence of events remains the same except the unit commander gives all commands.

Section VIII FUNERALS

9-28. General

- a. Funeral services of great magnificence evolved as custom (from what is known about early Christian mourning) in the 6th century. To this day, no religious ceremonies are conducted with more pomp than those intended to commemorate the departed.
- b. The funerals of soldiers, more than any other ceremony, have followed an old pattern as the living honor the brave dead.
- c. The first general mourning proclaimed in America was on the death of Benjamin Franklin in 1791 and the next on the death of George Washington in 1799. The deep and widespread grief occasioned by the death of the first President assembled a great number of people for the purpose of paying him a last tribute of respect, and on Wednesday, 18 December 1799, attended by military honors and the simplest but grandest ceremonies of religion, his body was deposited in the family vault at Mount Vernon, Virginia.
- d. Several military traditions employed today have been brought forward from the past
 - (1) Reversed arms, displayed by one opponent on the battlefield, signaled that a truce was requested so that the dead and wounded could be carried off and the dead buried.
 - (2) Today's customary three volleys fired over a grave probably originated as far back as the Roman Empire. The Roman funeral rites of casting dirt three times on the coffin constituted the "burial." It was customary among the Romans to call the dead three times by name, which ended the funeral ceremony, after which the friends and relatives of the deceased pronounced the word "vale" (farewell) three times as they departed from

the tomb. In more recent history, three musket volleys were fired to announce that the burying of the dead was completed and the burial party was ready for battle again.

- (3) The custom of using a caisson to carry a coffin most likely had its origins in the 1800s when horse-drawn caissons that pulled artillery pieces also doubled as a conveyance to clear fallen soldiers from the battlefield.
- (4) In the mid to late 1800s a funeral procession of a mounted officer or enlisted man was accompanied by a riderless horse in mourning caparison followed by a hearse. It was also a custom to have the boots of the deceased thrown over the saddle with heels to the front signifying that his march was ended.

9-29. Types of Funerals

- a. Military funerals are divided into the two following classes:
 - (1) Chapel service, followed by movement to the grave or place of local disposition with the prescribed escort.
 - (2) With graveside service only.
- b. A full military funeral normally consists of the following elements:
 - (1) Band.
 - (2) Escort appropriate to the grade of the deceased, including a firing party and bugler (AR 600-25).
 - (3) Colors.
 - (4) Clergy.
 - (5) Hearse (caisson) and active pallbearers.
 - (6) Honorary pallbearers.
 - (7) Personal color (if appropriate).
- c. Upon request, chaplains conduct or arrange for appropriate burial services for interment of members of the military service, active and retired, and for members of their families. The family of the deceased (or its representative) may, however, request some other clergyman to officiate in lieu of a military chaplain. A civilian clergyman can conduct all religious elements of a military funeral or interment. The desires of the family are given the fullest consideration possible in the selection of elements involved, but the funeral is conducted as prescribed in this manual.
- d. The commanding officer or his representative, in coordination with the cemetery superintendent and the funeral director, makes the funeral arrangements and supervises the conduct of the funeral.
- e. When honorary pallbearers are desired, they are selected by the family of the deceased or its representative, or when the family or its representative so desires, by the commanding officer. As a rule, no more than twelve honorary pallbearers should be selected.

- f. At a military funeral, persons in military uniform attending in their individual capacity *face* the casket and execute the *hand salute* at the following times: when honors, if any, are sounded; at any time when the casket is being moved (the exception being when they themselves are moving); during *cannon salutes*, if sounded; during the firing of volleys; and while “Taps” is being played.
 - (1) Honorary pallbearers in uniform conform to those instructions when not in motion.
 - (2) Military personnel in civilian clothes in the above cases, and during the service at the grave, stand at *attention*, *uncover*, and hold the headdress over the *left* shoulder with the *right* hand over the heart. If no headdress is worn, the *right* hand is held over the heart.
 - (3) Female military personnel in civilian clothes hold the *right* hand over the heart.
- g. During the religious graveside service, all personnel bow their heads at the words “Let us pray.” All mourners at graveside except the active pallbearers follow the example of the officiating chaplain. If he *uncovers*, they *uncover*; if he remains covered, they remain covered. When the officiating chaplain wears a biretta (clerical headpiece) during the graveside service, all personnel, as indicated above, *uncover*. When the officiating chaplain wears a yarmulke (Jewish skull cap), all personnel remain covered.
- h. The remains of a member of the armed forces, who died while on active duty, may be consigned directly to a national cemetery from a military installation. In such cases, the cemetery superintendent will, regardless of time of arrival, if not otherwise provided for, engage a funeral director to receive the remains at the common carrier terminal, hold the remains at his establishment until the date of the funeral, if necessary, and deliver the remains to the cemetery. The superintendent will not authorize a funeral director to render any other service incident to the interment.
- i. The word chapel is interpreted to include the church, home, or other place where services are held, other than the service at the grave.
- j. The word casket is interpreted to include a receptacle containing the cremated remains of the deceased.

9-30. Funeral with Chapel Service

- a. Before the beginning of the service, the funeral escort is formed in line *facing* the chapel. The band forms on the flank toward which it is to *march*.
- b. Members of the immediate family, relatives, and friends of the deceased are requested to enter the chapel and be seated before the casket is taken in. Members of the immediate family and relatives occupy pews (seats) to the right (front) of the chapel.
- c. The hearse bearing the remains to the chapel should arrive in front of the chapel a few moments before the time set for the service. As the hearse

approaches, the escort commander commands **Escort, ATTENTION** and he *salutes* until the hearse stops in front of the chapel. When all is in readiness to move the casket into the chapel, the commander of the escort brings the escort to **Present, ARMS**. As the escort commander *presents arms*, the band renders the honors prescribed in AR 600-25, if appropriate, followed by a hymn. At the first note of the hymn, the casket is moved from the hearse by the active pallbearers and carried between the ranks of honorary pallbearers, if any, into the chapel. The remains are handled in a dignified, reverent, and military manner, ensuring that the casket is carried level and feet first at all times. As soon as the casket enters the chapel, the band ceases to play, and the escort commander brings the escort to **Order, ARMS** and **AT EASE**.

- d. When honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in two ranks, each *facing* the other, in order of seniority, most senior closest to the hearse, thus forming an aisle from the hearse to the entrance of the chapel. At the first note of the music, and while the casket is being borne between the ranks of honorary pallbearers, they *uncover* or *salute* as prescribed in paragraph 9-29f. They then follow the casket in column of twos and occupy pews (seats) to the left front of the chapel.
- e. When the casket has been placed on the church truck, two active pallbearers push the truck to the front of the church while the other active pallbearers move to the vestibule and await the termination of the church service. If there is no church truck, the active pallbearers carry the casket to the front of the church as instructed by the chaplain before the service. When no honorary pallbearers are used, and if the active pallbearers are selected friends of the family, they may, if desired by the family, occupy the pews (seats) to the left front of the chapel.
- f. After the chapel service, the honorary pallbearers (if present) precede the casket in column of twos as the two active pallbearers push the church truck to the entrance of the chapel. The honorary pallbearers again form an aisle from the entrance of the chapel to the hearse with the senior closest to the chapel. They *uncover* or *salute* as prescribed. When the casket has been placed in the hearse, the honorary pallbearers enter their vehicles. When *marching*, the honorary pallbearers form columns of files on each side of the hearse, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the hearse.
- g. The casket, followed by the family group, is moved to the entrance immediately behind the honorary pallbearers. As soon as the honorary pallbearers have taken their positions, the active pallbearers carry the casket to the hearse and form a column of twos behind it if the honorary pallbearers *march*. If the honorary pallbearers do not *march*, the active pallbearers form files on each side of the hearse, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels. The family group remains at the chapel entrance until the honorary pallbearers have broken ranks to enter their vehicles or have taken their positions for *marching*. The members of the family group then are guided to their vehicles.
- h. When the casket appears at the entrance of the chapel at the conclusion of the service, the funeral escort and band repeat the procedure as prescribed

for entering the chapel. The band ceases playing and the escort is brought to the *order* when the casket has been secured into the hearse.

i. The procession is then formed in the following order (Figure 9-14):

- (1) Escort commander.
- (2) Band.
- (3) Escort, including colors, firing party, and bugler.
- (4) Honorary pallbearers, if riding in cars.
- (5) Clergy.
- (6) Caisson or hearse, and honorary pallbearers, if walking.
- (7) Active pallbearers.
- (8) Personal color (if appropriate).
- (9) Family.
- (10) Members of the former command of the deceased.
- (11) Friends and patriotic or fraternal organization.

NOTE: The firing party and bugler will be pre-positioned at gravesite if they are not a part of the escort (AR 600-25).

- j. When the procession has been formed, the escort commander commands **Forward, MARCH**, to the band and escort. The elements in the rear conform. The procession *marches* slowly to solemn music (cadence of 100 beats per minute). When there is considerable distance from the chapel to the grave, the escort, after leaving the vicinity of the chapel, may *march* in *quick time*. The band plays appropriate music throughout the *march*. Care is exercised to avoid disturbing other funeral processions or services that may be passed on the route of *march*. When the escort is in the vicinity of the grave, it resumes a slow cadence to solemn music. Customary music is used.
- k. As the procession approaches the grave, the marching elements move directly to their predesignated positions. The band and military escort are formed in line in view of the next of kin. The other marching elements are *halted* as near as practicable to the grave. The firing party is positioned so that it fires over the grave, and so that it is in view of the next of kin.
- l. Before the hearse is *halted*, the honorary pallbearers are formed in two ranks, senior closest to the hearse, forming an aisle extending from the hearse toward the grave. When the grave is too near the road to permit this formation, they take their position at the grave before the casket is removed from the hearse.
- m. When all is in readiness to move the casket from the hearse, the escort commander commands **Present, ARMS**. At the command of execution **ARMS**, the escort executes *present arms* and the band renders honors, if appropriate, followed by a hymn. At the first note of the hymn, the active pallbearers remove the casket from the hearse.

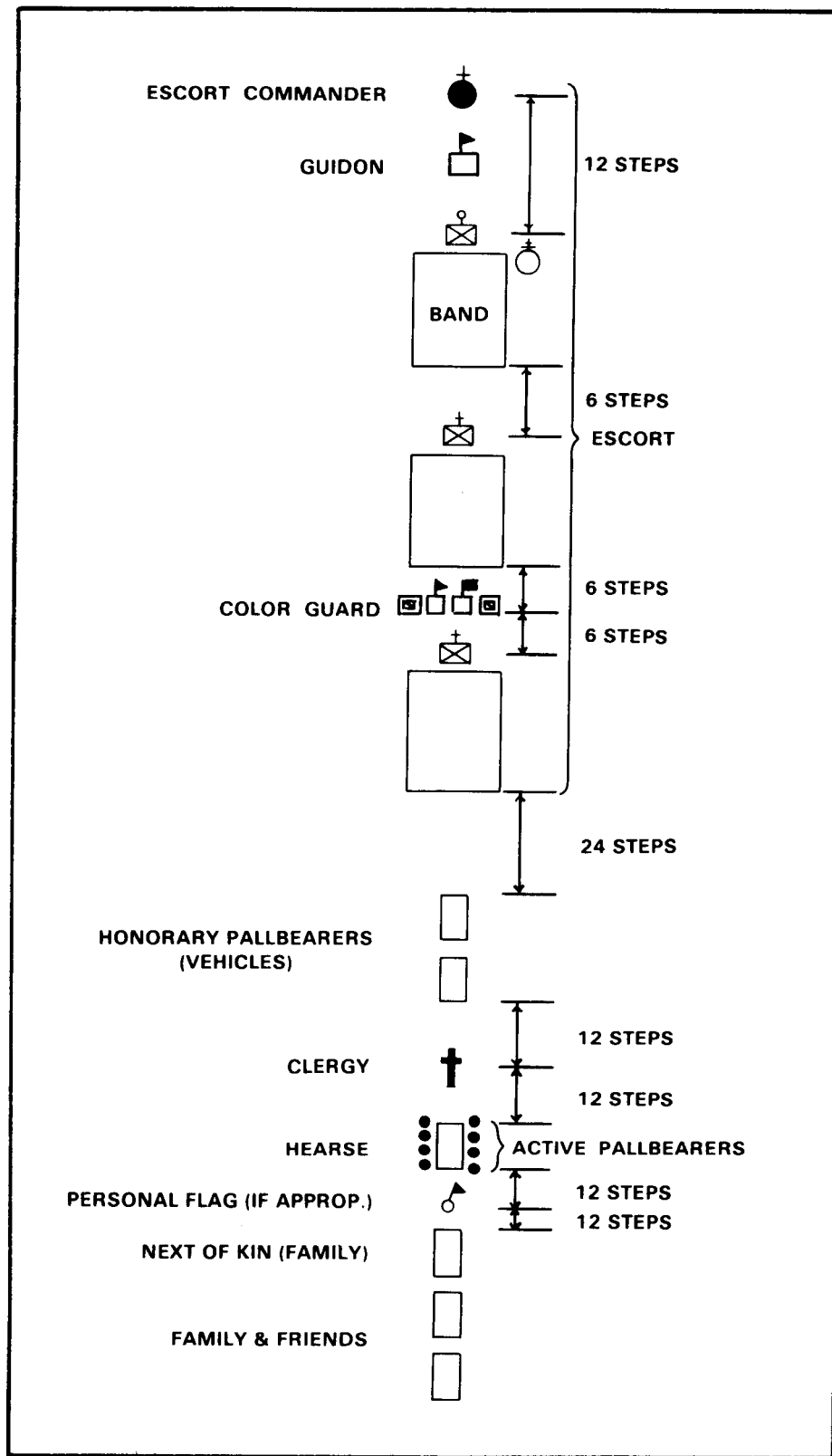


Figure 9-14. Funeral Procession

- n. The chaplain and the cemetery representative or funeral director precede the active pallbearers bearing the casket between the ranks of honorary pallbearers. As soon as the casket has passed, the honorary pallbearers *face* toward the grave and follow the casket in column of twos, followed by personal colors (when appropriate), the family, and friends. The active pallbearers, on reaching the grave, place the casket on the lowering device and remain in place *facing* the casket. Honorary pallbearers move to a predetermined position near the grave. Active pallbearers raise the flag from the casket and hold it in a horizontal position, waist high, until the conclusion of "Taps."
- o. When the casket has been placed over the grave, the band ceases playing, and the escort commander commands **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**.
- p. When the escort has been brought to *parade rest*, the chaplain conducts the graveside service. At the conclusion of the benediction, he moves two steps to the side or rear.

NOTE: If the deceased is entitled to a *gun salute*, the chaplain, before the benediction, moves two steps to the side or rear, the escort commander commands **Escort, ATTENTION** and **Present, ARMS**; the salute battery fires appropriate honors at five-second intervals; at the conclusion the escort commander commands **Order, ARMS**. The chaplain returns to his position and pronounces the benediction, concluding the service.

- q. When the service has been completed, the commander commands **Escort, Present, ARMS; Firing party, FIRE THREE VOLLEYS**. The firing party fires three volleys of blank cartridges, assumes the position of *present arms* at the command of the noncommissioned officer in charge, and remains in this position until the conclusion of "Taps." The bugler, positioned near the firing party and in view of the next of kin, sounds "Taps" immediately after the firing party has been brought to *present arms*. At the first note of taps, and until its last note has sounded, military personnel attending in the individual capacity and honorary pallbearers *uncover* or *salute*.
- r. At the conclusion of "Taps," the rifles of the firing party are locked, and the escort commander commands **Order, ARMS** and **Parade, REST**. The active pallbearers holding the flag above the casket fold the flag into the shape of a cocked hat (Figure 9-16). The band plays appropriate music as the flag is folded. The flag, when folded, is passed to a pallbearer who *faces left* at the head of the grave and places the flag at chest level into the hands of the officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge. The pallbearer *salutes* the flag for three seconds and then *faces right* to assume his original position. The active pallbearers *face left* or *right* together and *march* away from the grave in *column of twos*. The officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge presents the flag to the next of kin or passes it to the military chaplain for presentation. The presenter uses an expression similar to that which has become standard at Army Funerals: "This flag is presented on behalf of a grateful nation, as a token of our appreciation for the honorable and faithful service rendered by your loved one." The band and escort remain in position until the family begins to move away from the grave. The escort commander commands the band and escort to *march* from the area, at, *quick time*, with a single drum tap; the other elements conform. At the first *halt*, the rifles of the firing party are unloaded and inspected.

NOTE: If a military chaplain is not present the officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge will present the flag to the next of kin.

9-31. Graveside Service

For a funeral without chapel service, all elements of a military funeral are present and used as described in paragraph 9-30. However, if troops are not conveniently available, or if the family desires to eliminate other elements, the following are used (Figure 9-15):

- a. Clergy.
- b. Officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge, appropriate to the grade of the deceased (AR 600-25).
- c. Active pallbearers.
- d. Firing party.
- e. Bugler.
- f. Personal color bearer (if appropriate).

These elements are in position at the graveside before the arrival of the remains.

9-32. Cremated Remains

- a. When the remains are cremated and the ashes interred with military honors, the provisions of paragraphs 9-29 and 9-30, with necessary modifications, will govern.
- b. For all phases of the funeral, where the cremated remains are carried by hand, one man is detailed to carry the receptacle (casket) containing the ashes and another is detailed to carry the flag, folded into the shape of a cocked hat. The pallbearer carrying the flag is always positioned to the right of the remains (Figure 9-17). When the receptacle is carried from the hearse into the chapel and from the chapel to the hearse, these two men are the only participants in the ceremony. During the procession to the gravesite, the receptacle and flag are carried by the two pallbearers followed by four additional pallbearers. When the receptacle has been placed on the gravesite, all six pallbearers unfold the flag and hold it over the grave.
- c. When the receptacle and flag are placed before the chancel of the chapel or transported to gravesite by vehicle, the receptacle and folded flag are placed side by side. If the pallbearers walk to the gravesite, the two bearers who carried the receptacle and the flag join the other four pallbearers already prepositioned on either side of the hearse.
- d. When no hearse is used, suitable transportation is provided for the receptacle and flag bearers, and the other pallbearers.
- e. When the remains are moved to a crematory and the ashes are to be interred with military honors at a later time, the ceremony consists only of the escort to the crematory. All personnel *salute* as the remains are carried into the crematory. The firing of volleys and the sounding of "Taps" are omitted. When

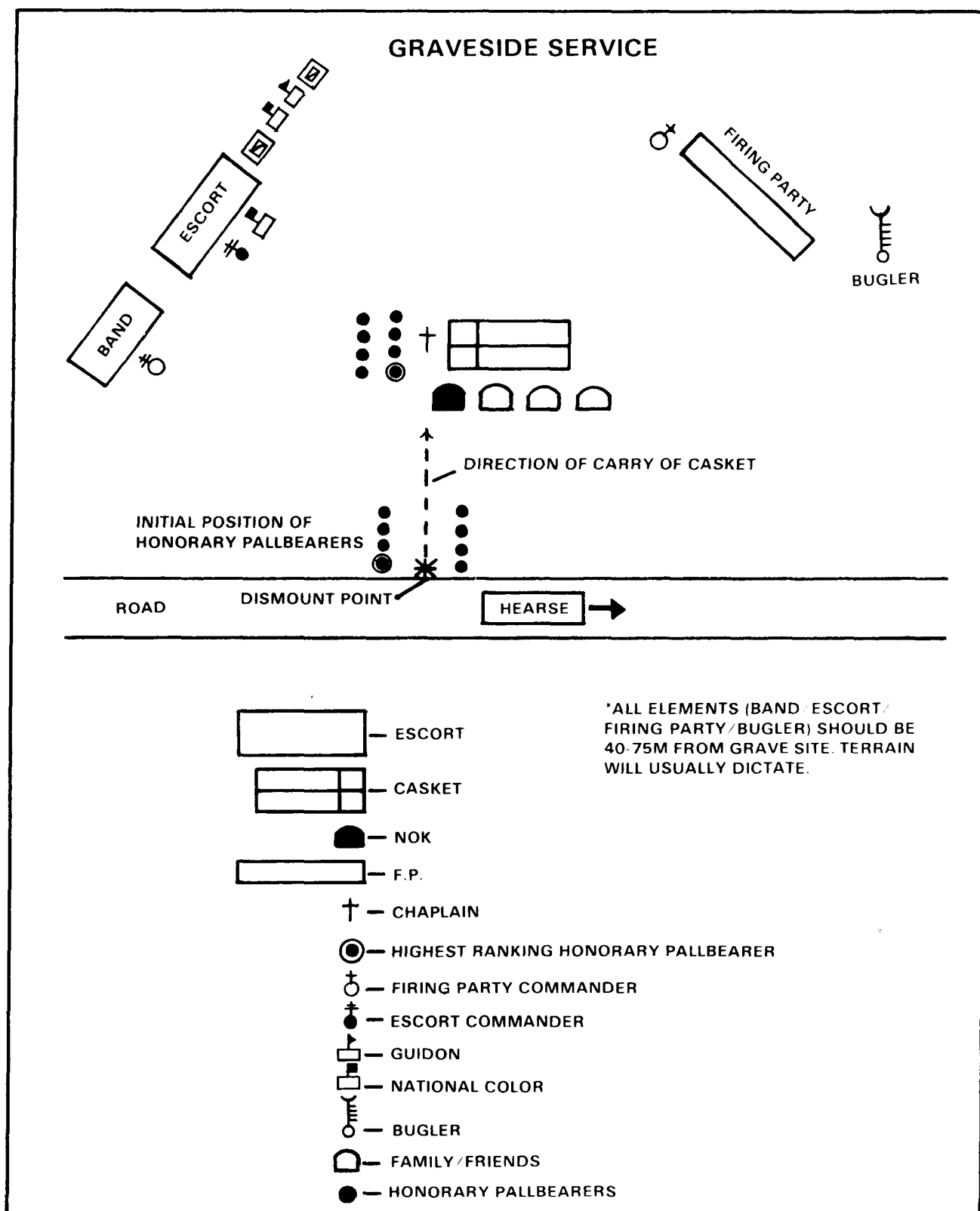


Figure 9-15. Graveside Service

the funeral ceremony is held at the crematory, and when no further honors are anticipated, the volleys are fired and "Taps" is sounded at the discretion of the commanding officer.

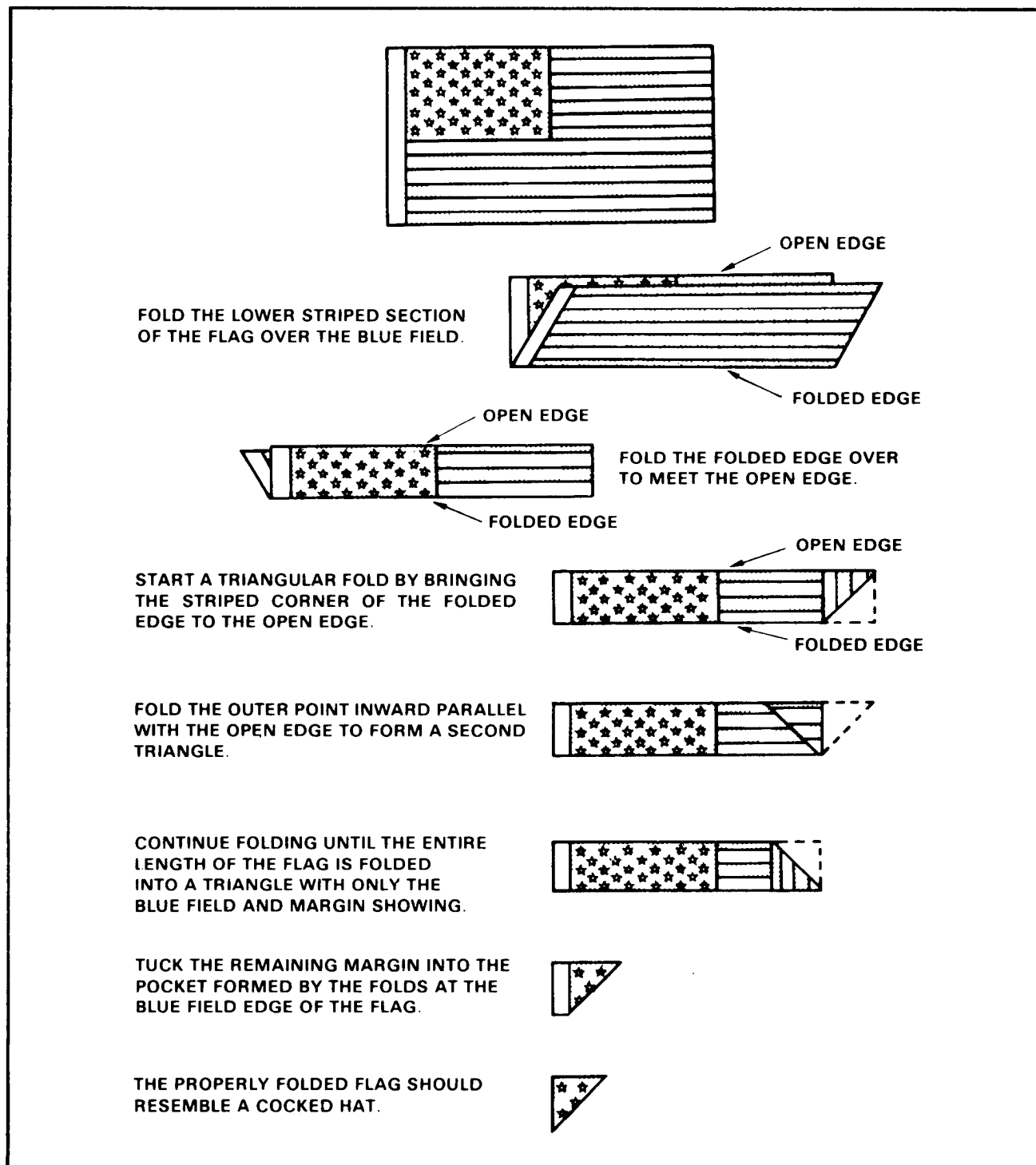


Figure 9-16. Correct Method of Folding United States Flag

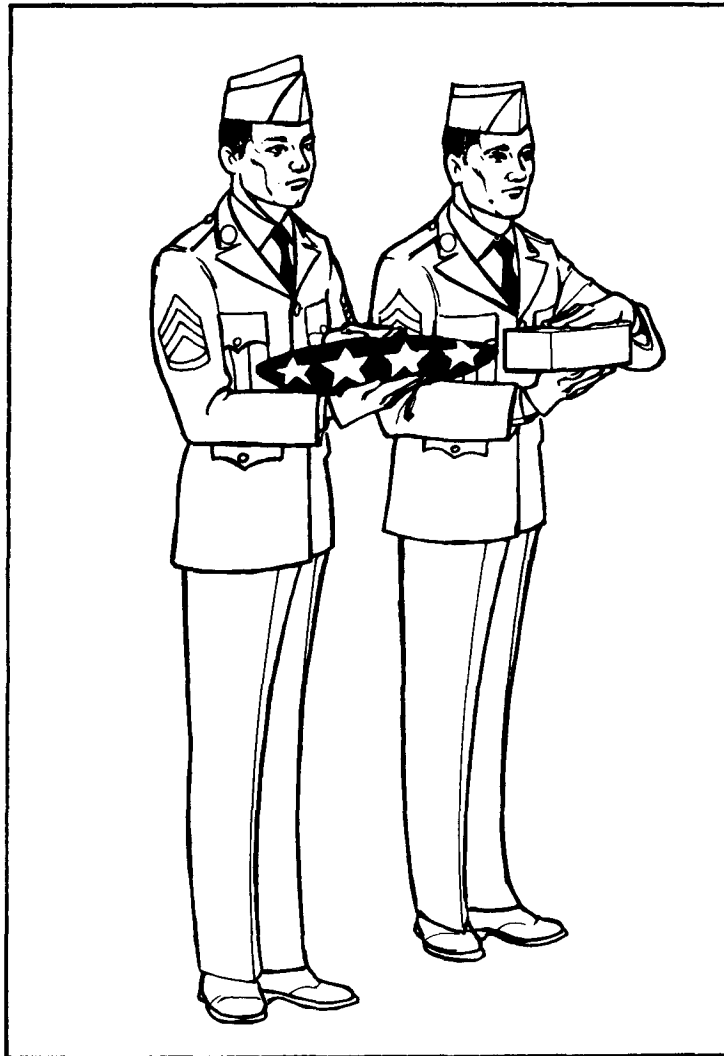


Figure 9-17. Pallbearers for Cremated Remains

9-33. Ceremony Before Shipment of Remains

When the remains of a deceased soldier are moved to a railway station or other point for shipment to another place for interment or final disposition, funeral services are modified as necessary. When no further military honors are anticipated at the place of interment or final disposition, the volleys are fired and "Taps" sounded at the discretion of the commanding officer. When military honors are anticipated at the place of final disposition, the volleys and "Taps" are omitted.

9-34. Cannon Salute

- a. When the funeral of a general officer on the active or retired list, who was entitled to a *cannon salute*, takes place at or near a military installation, guns equal to the number to which the officer was entitled (AR 600-25) may be fired at noon on the day of the funeral. The military installation mentioned in general orders will fire the prescribed *salutes*.

- b. Immediately preceding the benediction, a *cannon salute* corresponding to the grade of the deceased (AR 600-25) is fired at five-second intervals. Following the benediction, three volleys of musketry are *fired*.

9-35. Funerals Off Post

- a. The commander, upon request, provides a funeral detail for deceased active duty or retired Army personnel when the burial is to take place in a civilian or national cemetery off the installation (for veteran funerals, see AR 600-25). The detail is normally composed as follows:

- (1) Officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge.
- (2) Six active pallbearers.
- (3) Firing party.
- (4) Bugler.

NOTE: When military pallbearers are not available the firing party will fold the flag.

- b. The arrangements for the funeral are supervised by the survivor assistance officer. The officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge of the funeral detail coordinates all aspects of the ceremonies with this officer.
- c. Upon arrival at the city where the funeral is to be conducted, the officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge meets the survivor assistance officer and ascertains the sequence of the ceremony. The normal sequence of events is as follows:
 - (1) At the funeral home, on the order of the funeral director, the pallbearers move the casket to the hearse. The pallbearers should be certain to carry the casket feet first and level at all times.
 - (2) At the church:
 - (a) The active pallbearers carry the casket from the hearse into the chapel.
 - (b) When the casket has been placed on the church truck, two pallbearers push the truck to the front of the church while the other pallbearers move to the vestibule and await the termination of the church service. If there is no church truck, the pallbearers carry the casket to the front of the church as instructed by the funeral director or minister concerned. If desired by the family, the active pallbearers may occupy the pews (seats) to the left front of the church.
 - (c) After the church service, the pallbearers, under the direction of the funeral director, move the casket to the hearse. When the casket has been placed in the hearse, the pallbearers enter their vehicles.
 - (3) At the cemetery:
 - (a) The officer in charge or a designated individual commands the prepositioned firing party and bugler to **Detail, ATTENTION** and **Present, ARMS** as soon as the casket is moved from the hearse. The command **Order, ARMS** is given when the casket reaches the grave.

- (b) The pallbearers carry the casket, feet first and level, to the grave. On reaching the grave, the casket is placed on the lowering device. The pallbearers raise the flag from the casket and hold it in a horizontal position, waist high, until the conclusion of "Taps."
- (c) The remainder of the ceremony is conducted as prescribed in paragraphs 9-29 and paragraph 9-30 p-r.
- (d) Firing is conducted as outlined in paragraph 9-41.

9-36. Participation of Aviation

When aviation participates in a military funeral, it is timed so that the aircraft appear over the procession.

9-37. Participation of Fraternal or Patriotic Organizations

The family or representative of the deceased may request fraternal or patriotic organizations, of which the deceased was a member, to take part in the funeral service. With immediate family approval fraternal or patriotic organizations may conduct graveside service, at the conclusion of the military portion of the ceremony, signified by the flag presentation to the next of kin and escort departure from the cemetery.

9-38. Duties of the Chaplain

The chaplain takes his position in front of the chapel before the arrival of the remains. He precedes the casket, when it is carried from the hearse into the chapel and from the chapel to the hearse. While the remains are being placed in the hearse, he stands at the rear and to the side *facing* the hearse. When he is wearing vestments, he may, at his discretion, proceed from the chancel to the sacristy (vestry) at the conclusion of the chapel service and divest, joining the procession before it moves from the chapel. He then precedes the hearse to the graveside and precedes the casket to the grave.

9-39. Preliminary Arrangements

The officer in charge of a military funeral, the commander of the escort, the funeral director, and the superintendent of the cemetery or his representative visit the places involved and make careful arrangements before the time set for the funeral. They determine the positions at the grave for the various elements of the funeral and make arrangements for traffic control.

9-40. Floral Tributes

- a. In the absence of the chaplain, the chaplain's assistant helps the funeral director in arranging all floral tributes in the chapel. The commanding officer or his representative coordinates with the funeral director the necessary transportation for prompt transfer of floral tributes from the chapel to the gravesite. The vehicle bearing the floral tributes is loaded promptly at the conclusion

of the chapel service. It precedes the funeral procession, moving as rapidly as practicable to the site of the grave. The funeral procession does not move from the chapel until the vehicle carrying the floral tributes has cleared the escort.

- b. The funeral director or the cemetery representative is responsible for removing cards and making a record that gives a brief description of the floral piece pertaining to each card. After completion of the funeral services, the cards and records are turned over to a member of the family of the deceased.

9-41. Rules for Ceremonial Firing

- a. For ceremonial firing, the firing party consists of not more than eight riflemen and not less than five with one noncommissioned officer in charge (Figure 9-18).
- b. The firing party is normally pre-positioned at the gravesite and *facing* in the direction that allows it to fire directly over the grave. However, care should be taken to ensure that rifles are fired at a 45-degree angle from the horizontal.

(1) To load:

- (a) Magazines or clips are loaded with three rounds and blank adapters are attached before forming the firing party.
- (b) At the conclusion of the religious services or on the escort commander's command, the noncommissioned officer in charge commands **With blank ammunition, LOAD**. At the command **LOAD**, each rifleman executes *port arms*, *faces* to the half right, and moves his right foot 10 inches to the right to a position that gives him a firm, steady stance. He then chambers a round, places the weapon in the safe position, and resumes *port arms*.

(2) To fire by volley:

- (a) When the riflemen have completed the movements and the weapons are locked, the commands are **Ready, Aim, FIRE**. At the command **Ready**, each rifleman moves the safety to the fire position. On the command **Aim**, the rifle is shouldered with both hands with the muzzle to the front at an angle of 45 degrees from the horizontal. On the command of execution **FIRE**, the trigger is squeezed quickly, and the weapon is immediately returned to *port arms*.
- (b) To continue the firing with weapons that function automatically (blank adapter), the commands **Aim** and **FIRE** are given and executed as previously prescribed. To continue the firing with weapons that must be manually operated to chamber another round (without blank adapters), the commands **Ready, Aim, FIRE** are again given. On the command **Ready**, each rifleman manually chambers the next round. The commands **Aim** and **FIRE** are then given and executed as previously prescribed.
- (c) When the third round has been fired and the riflemen have resumed *port arms*, the noncommissioned officer in charge commands **CEASE FIRING**. The riflemen immediately place the weapon on safe, assume

the position of *attention* (at *port arms*), and *face* to half left. From this position, the firing party is commanded to **Present arms** before the playing of "Taps." After "Taps," they are commanded to *order arms*. The noncommissioned officer in charge executes a *right (left) face* and remains at *attention* until the flag has been folded and *saluted* by the officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge of the funeral detail. At this time, the firing party noncommissioned officer in charge executes a *right (left) face* and commands **Right (Left), FACE; Port, ARMS; and Forward, MARCH**. The weapons are unloaded and cleared as soon as possible after leaving the gravesite.

NOTE: The noncommissioned officer in charge may position himself on the opposite flank or to the rear of the firing party.

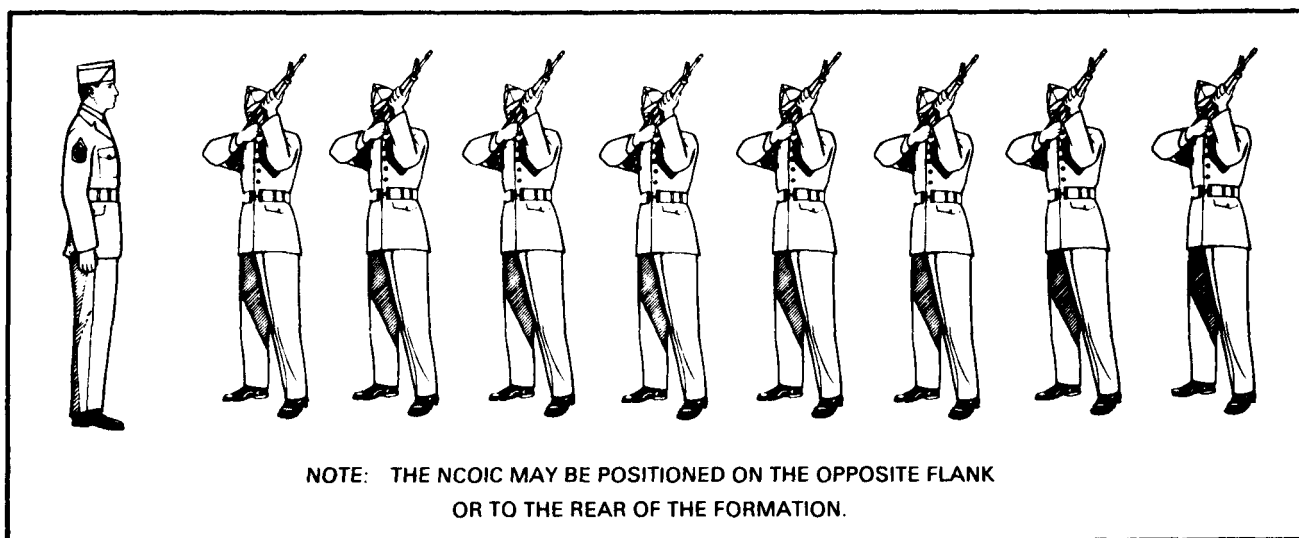


Figure 9-18. Position of Fire, Ceremonial Firing

Section IX COLORS

9-42. General

- a. Flags are almost as old as civilization itself. Imperial Egypt as well as the armies of Babylon, Chaldea, and Assyria followed the colors of their kings. The Old Testament frequently mentions banners and standards. Until comparatively recent years, the flags that identified nations usually were based on the personal or family heraldry of the reigning monarch or ruling nobleman. As autocracies faded or disappeared, dynastic colors were no longer popular and national flags, as thought of today, came into being. These national flags, such as the Union Jack of Great Britain, the Tricolor of France, and the Stars and Stripes, are relatively new to history. Many flags of different designs were present in parts of the American colonies before the Revolution. When the struggle for independence united the colonies, there grew a desire for a single flag to represent the new nation. The first flag borne by the Army as a

representative of the 13 colonies was the Grand Union flag. It was raised over the Continental Army at Cambridge, Massachusetts, on 2 January 1776. That flag had the familiar 13 stripes (red and white) of the present flag, but the blue square contained the Crosses of St. George and St. Andrew from the British flag.

- b. The Stars and Stripes was born on 14 June 1777, two years to the day after the birth of the Army. On that date, Congress resolved that the flag of the United States be 13 stripes, alternate red and white, and that the union be 13 stars, white in a blue field, representing a new constellation. The arrangement of the stars on the blue field was not specified.
- c. According to some historians, the Stars and Stripes was first raised over Fort Stanwix, New York, on 3 August 1777. In that Army version of the flag, the stars were arranged in a circle. (The Navy version had the stars arranged to form crosses similar to the British flag.)
- d. When Vermont and Kentucky joined the Union, the flag was modified so that there were 15 stars and 15 stripes. It was that flag, flying triumphantly over Fort McHenry, Maryland, on 13 and 14 September 1814, inspiring Francis Scott Key to compose the verses of "The Star-Spangled Banner." That flag was the national banner from 1795 until 1818. Thus, when it was raised over Tripoli by the Marines in 1805, it was the first United States flag to be hoisted over conquered territory in the Old World. Later, it was flown by General Andrew Jackson at the Battle of New Orleans.
- e. Realizing that adding a stripe for each new state would soon spoil the appearance of the flag, Congress passed a law in 1818 fixing the number of stripes at 13 and providing for the addition of a star in the Blue Union for each new state. The star is to be added and the new flag to become official on the Fourth of July following the admission of the new state to the Union.
- f. It was not until shortly before the Civil War that the Stars and Stripes actually became the National Color.
- g. From the earliest times, warriors used a banner or other symbol to identify specific units and to serve as a rallying point for troops. In medieval days, the standard or banner was used to signal a general assault, which was generated by a cry of "Advance your banners."
- h. After the Battle of Waterloo, a British sergeant wrote "About 4 o'clock I was ordered to the Colours; this, although I was used to warfare as much as anyone, was a job I did not at all like. But still I went as boldly to work as I could. There had been before me that day 14 sergeants already killed and wounded and the staff and the Colours almost cut to pieces."
- i. Before the Civil War, in lieu of a National Color, the US soldiers carried a blue silk color on which was embroidered the arms of the United States, and an American eagle bearing a shield on its breast, and in its talons an olive branch and arrows, signifying peace and war. After the National Color was authorized, the organizational color with the eagle became the regimental color. Because of the high casualty rate among the members of the Color party, plus the advent of modern weapons, the time-honored practice of carrying the

Colors in battle was discontinued. Today, the Colors, with battle streamers attached, join their unit in formations during ceremonies to signify their presence during past battles.

9-43. The Color and Colors

- a. The National and organizational flags carried by Color-bearing units are called the National Color and the organizational color. When used singularly, the term Color implies the National Color. The term Colors means the national and positional or organizational colors. By regulation, the organizational color is not authorized a *salute*; however, in the past some organizations have observed the custom of *saluting* the organizational color.
- b. In garrison, the Colors are normally kept at the office or headquarters of the commanding officer. They are escorted to and from the headquarters or office by the Color guard. In the field, the Colors are normally displayed from reveille to retreat in front of the commanding officer's tent or command post. During inclement weather, they are cased and placed in the commanding officer's office, headquarters, or tent.
- c. Individuals or units passing or being passed by uncased Colors out of doors render honors. Individuals, not part of a formation, *salute* six steps distance from the Colors and hold the *salute* until they have passed six steps beyond the Colors. The individual in charge of a formation calls the formation to **ATTENTION** and ***Present, ARMS.***
- d. The Colors may be carried in any formation in which two or more companies, honor guards, or representative elements of a command participate.
- e. Traditionally, the command sergeant major is responsible for the safeguarding, care, and display of the organizational color. He is also responsible for the selection, training, and performance of the Color bearers and Color guards.
- f. The regulation for individual flags and distinguishing flags for general officers and other dignitaries is the same as that for organizational colors (AR 840-10).
- g. During a review, parade, or honor guard ceremony, ordinarily only one National Color is present. The National Color is given the honor position and is carried on the *marching* right of positional and organizational colors. The United States Army flag or the Army field flag (when authorized) is earned to the immediate left of the National Color. The organizational color of the senior headquarters sponsoring the ceremony is carried to the left of the Army flag or field flag, if present. The Colors belonging to the headquarters conducting the ceremonies are positioned on line with and centered on the command. Subordinate Color-bearing organizations ordinarily carry only their organizational colors (four steps to the rear of their staff).
- h. When desired or considered more appropriate by the local commander, he may also authorize subordinate Color-bearing organizations to carry their National Color with their organizational colors behind their staffs. Consideration must be given as to the number of times the spectators will be required to stand

during the pass in review. Also, consideration must be given to the frequency of *salutes* required by the reviewing officer. Another method in which subordinate Color-bearing units may carry their Colors is to have them participate in a massed Colors formation. Because of many complications caused by massed Colors, units should prescribe a local SOP governing the desired procedures. Examples of complications include: organizational colors lose their identity, order of precedence, resizing of Color guards and bearers, uniformity when the first rank consists of five men rather than four, and presenting a good appearance when returning to the formation after being brought forward while keeping the National Color on the *marching* right.

- i. When Colors are participating in a ceremony they will be received (posted) and dismissed (retired) as described in paragraphs 9-48 and 9-49.

9-44. Salutes

- a. The National Color renders no *salute* (dip). An exception to this rule is followed by naval vessels when, upon receiving a *salute* of this type from a vessel registered by a nation formally recognized by the United States, the compliment must be returned.
- b. The organizational color *salutes* (dips) in all military ceremonies while the National Anthem, "To the Color," or a foreign national anthem is being played, and when rendering honors to the organizational commander, an individual of higher grade including foreign dignitaries of higher grade, but in no other case. The United States Army flag is considered to be an organizational color and as such is also dipped while the National Anthem, "To the Color," or a foreign national anthem is being played, and when rendering honors to the Chief of Staff of the United States Army, his direct representative, or an individual of equivalent or higher grade, but in no other case.
- c. When *marching*, organizational colors *salute* when six steps from the person entitled to the *salute*. They are returned to the *carry* position when six steps beyond the person.

9-45. Color Guard

- a. The Color guard consists of two (three) sergeants and two specialists or privates. It is an honor to be selected as a member of the Color guard. The senior (Color) sergeant carries the National Color and commands the Color guard. He gives the necessary commands for the movements and for rendering honors.
- b. When battalions or brigades carry their organizational colors in a ceremony as part of a larger command, the battalion or brigade color is carried four steps to the rear of the staff. A sergeant acts as Color bearer and two experienced specialist or privates, selected by the battalion or brigade command sergeant major, act as members of the Color guard.
- c. The Color guard is formed and *marched* in one rank at *close interval*, the bearers in the center. They do not execute *rear march* or *about face*. The Color guard *marches* at *right shoulder arms* and executes *facing* movements by

wheeling to the right or left. The command for a *facing* movement is, **Right (Left) wheel, MARCH**. To execute a *wheeling* movement, the guard nearest the direction of turn serves as the pivot point and executes the movement by *marching* in place and simultaneously turning in the new direction. Other members shorten their steps and turn in an arc keeping abreast of each other to maintain alignment. When the movement has been completed, each member automatically *marches* in place until the command **HALT** or **Forward, MARCH** is given.

- d. When passing in review, the Color guard executes *eyes right* at the prescribed *saluting* distance on the command of the Color sergeant. The commands are **Eyes, RIGHT** and **Ready, FRONT**. The organizational color *salutes* at the command **RIGHT**, and resumes the *carry* at the command **FRONT**. The guard on the right flank of the Color guard does not execute *eyes right*.
- e. During ceremonies, the Color guards remain at *right shoulder arms* except (as specified in subparagraph 9-45 g) when *presenting arms*.
- f. When not participating in a ceremony and a situation occurs that warrants a *salute* by the organizational color, the Color sergeant commands **Color, SALUTE**. The return to the *carry* is made at the command **Carry, COLOR**.
- g. When in formation with the Color company, and not during a ceremony, the Color bearers execute *at ease* and *rest*, keeping the staffs of the Colors vertical. The Color guard executes *right shoulder, order arms*, and *present arms* with the Color company. During ceremonies when the Colors are not forward and remarks are to be made, the Color guards and Color bearers execute *order arms* and *parade rest* on command of the Color company commander. During any ceremony when the units are *at ease*, the Color guard and Color bearers are at *parade rest*.
- h. The uniform for Color guards should be the same as prescribed for participating troops.

9-46. Receiving or Dismissing the Colors by the Color Guard

- a. When receiving uncased Colors on display in the commander's office, the Color guard is positioned in a single rank *facing* the Colors. The Color sergeant commands **Present, ARMS** and **Order, ARMS**. On completion of *order arms*, the Color bearers (without command) secure the Colors. The Color guard files outside (guard, National Color, organizational color, guard) and *re-forms* in a line formation. The Color guards execute *right shoulder arms* and the Color bearers assume the *carry position*.
- b. To *dismiss* the Colors, the procedures are basically the same except that the Colors are placed back in their stands before executing *present arms*.

9-47. Casing and Uncasing the Colors

- a. The Color guard is formed in a line formation with the cased Colors at the *carry position* (*order position* when indoors). The command sergeant major

(or his direct representative) positions himself six steps in front of and centered on the formation. He then commands **Sling, ARMS**. The Color guards immediately adjust their slings and assume *sling arms*. The command sergeant major commands **POST**. The Color guards *face* to the half left (right) in *marching*, take four steps, *halt*, and execute *about face*. The command sergeant major then directs **UNCASE THE COLORS**. The Color bearers lower the Colors (same as *present guidon*). The two guards move forward and untie and uncase the Colors. The Color bearers unfurl and immediately return the Colors to the *carry (order) position*. While the Colors are being unfurled, the guards fold the cases and secure them in their left hand. When the Colors are in the *carry position*, the command sergeant major commands **Present, ARMS**. The command sergeant major, Color guards, and the organizational color salute. He commands **Order, ARMS**, and then commands **POST**. On the command of execution **POST**, the Color guards place the folded canvas cases inside the cartridge belts (center rear) of the Color bearers. The Color guards assume their original positions, adjust their slings, and return to *right shoulder arms*. If the command sergeant major or his representative is not present, the senior Color sergeant gives the necessary commands.

- b. To case the Colors, the procedures are basically the same except *present arms* is given before the Colors are lowered.
- c. When casing or uncasing the Colors with the command present, the commander directs **UNCASE (CASE) THE COLORS**. The command sergeant major and Color guards execute the movement (previously stated) except that they execute *present arms* and *order arms* with the Color company. When the Colors are uncased and returned to the *carry position*, the commander directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS**. After the units have executed this directive, he then directs **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS**.
- d. If the Colors are to be cased or uncased during the receiving or dismissing by the Color company, the Color guards execute *present arms* and *order arms* on command of the company commander.
- e. The command sergeant major uncases the organizational color when it is displayed by itself. He may also assist the Color guards when uncasing more than two Colors.

9-48. Receiving or Dismissing the Colors by Color Company

The designated Color company receives the Colors as follows:

- a. The Color company should receive the Colors before it forms with the battalion.
- b. The Color company forms at *attention* with the commander *facing* to the front as the Colors near the Color company.
- c. The Color guard, guided by the senior sergeant, approaches from the front and *halts* 10 steps from the company commander.
- d. The company commander then *faces about* and commands **Present arms, faces the Colors and salutes**. He terminates his *salute, faces about* and commands **Order, ARMS**.

- e. The specialists or privates of the Color guard execute *present arms* and return to *right shoulder arms* on the commands of the company commander (*present arms* and *order arms*).
- f. The senior sergeant then *marches* the Color guard to its position within the company formation. If the company is in column formation, the Color guard forms at the rear of the company. When the company is in line or mass, the Color guard forms at the left of the company. The Color company may join the battalion before the battalion forms at the ceremony site or join with the battalion at the ceremony site. When the Color company joins the battalion, the senior Color sergeant *marches* the Color guard to its appropriate post in the battalion formation.
- g. The Color guard is *dismissed* at the conclusion of the ceremony. This can occur in the vicinity of the ceremony site, in the Color company area, or at the battalion headquarters. At the designated area, the senior sergeant *marches* and *halts* the Color guard 10 steps in front of and *facing* the commander of the Color company. The actions for dismissing the Colors are the same as receiving the Colors. After being *dismissed*, the Color guard *marches* to the office, headquarters, or tent of the commanding officer.
- h. The Colors are received and dismissed from organizations smaller than a company, such as a funeral escort, in a similar manner.
- i. Casing and uncasing the Colors may be scheduled in conjunction with receiving and dismissing the Colors, as described in paragraphs 9-48.

9-49. Posting and Retiring the Colors.

Formal assemblies conducted indoors begin with the presentation of the Colors, referred to as Posting the Colors, and end with the Retirement of the Colors. The following instructions outline the procedures for posting and retiring the Colors, with a head table and without head table. Since indoor areas vary in size, configuration, and intended purpose, these instructions do not apply to all situations. Therefore, persons planning an indoor ceremony can modify these instructions based on their specific floor plan.

a. Posting the Colors.

- (1) The Color guard forms outside the entrance to the dining area, auditorium, or meeting hall.
- (2) The audience is directed to stand until the Colors are posted. If the playing of the National Anthem (or other appropriate music) and the invocation are scheduled, the audience will remain standing until they are completed.
- (a) When the arrangements include a head table, the Color guard enters in a line formation, preferably, or forms in a line immediately inside the room and moves to a position centered on and *facing* the head table. The procedures are as follows:
 - 1. When the Colors arrive at the predesignated position, the Color sergeant commands **Colors, HALT, and Present, ARMS;** and reports **The**

colors are present. The host acknowledges the report and directs, **POST THE COLORS.** The area should be arranged to allow adequate space for the Color guard to move between the head table and the flag stand.

2. The Color sergeant then commands **Order, ARMS; Right, FACE;** and **Forward, MARCH.** On the command of execution **MARCH,** the Color guard *marches* to the rear of the head table (Figure 9-19).
 3. Once the Color guard is centered on the flag stand, they *mark time* and the Color sergeant commands **Colors, HALT** and **Right, FACE.** The Color guard should approach the flag stands from the right to position the National Color bearer in front of the flag holder on the right, *facing* the audience.
 4. The Color bearers, without command, place the colors in the stand.
 5. When the Colors are in the stand, the color sergeant commands **Present, ARMS** and **Order, ARMS.** The guards return to *right shoulder arms;* the Color sergeant commands **Left, FACE** and **Forward, MARCH;** and the Color guard exits the area.
- (b) When a head table is not used, the Color guard enters and moves to a predesignated position centered on and *facing* the audience. This may require the Color guard to move in a column and use *facing* movements. The movement must be planned so that the National Color is always on the right when in line and is leading when in column. The procedures are as follows:
1. When the Colors arrive at the predesignated position, the Color sergeant commands **Colors, HALT; LEFT (right), FACE;** and **Present, ARMS.** If music or the Pledge of Allegiance is scheduled, it occurs at this time. The Color sergeant then commands **Order, ARMS.**
 2. The Color sergeant commands **Right (Left), FACE** and **Forward, MARCH.** On the command of execution **MARCH,** the Color guard *marches* to the flag stand where the actions of the Color guard are the same as described in paragraph (a) 3, 4, and 5, above.
- b. **Retiring the Colors.**
- (1) The audience is directed to stand for the retiring of the Colors.
 - (2) When a head table is used, the Color sergeant moves the Color guard to the head table.
 - (a) The Color sergeant commands **Color guard, HALT; Present, ARMS,** and reports to the host, **“Sir, Request permission to retire the colors.”** The host acknowledges the report and directs **RETIRE THE COLORS.**
 - (b) The Color sergeant commands **Order, ARMS; Right, FACE; Forward, MARCH;** and moves the Color guard until they are centered on the flag stand where they *mark time.*
 - (c) The Color sergeant commands **Color guard, HALT; Right, FACE; Present, ARMS;** and **Order, ARMS.** Upon completion of **Order arms**

the color bearers, without command, retrieve the colors and assume the *carry* position.

- (d) The Color sergeant commands ***Left, FACE*** and ***Forward, MARCH***. The Color guard exits the area.
- (3) When the head table is not used, the Color guard moves directly to the flag stands where the Colors are retrieved, and the Color guard exits as described in paragraph (2) (c) and (d) above.

NOTE: The above procedures will vary when the command sergeant major is in charge of the Colors during a formal dining-in.

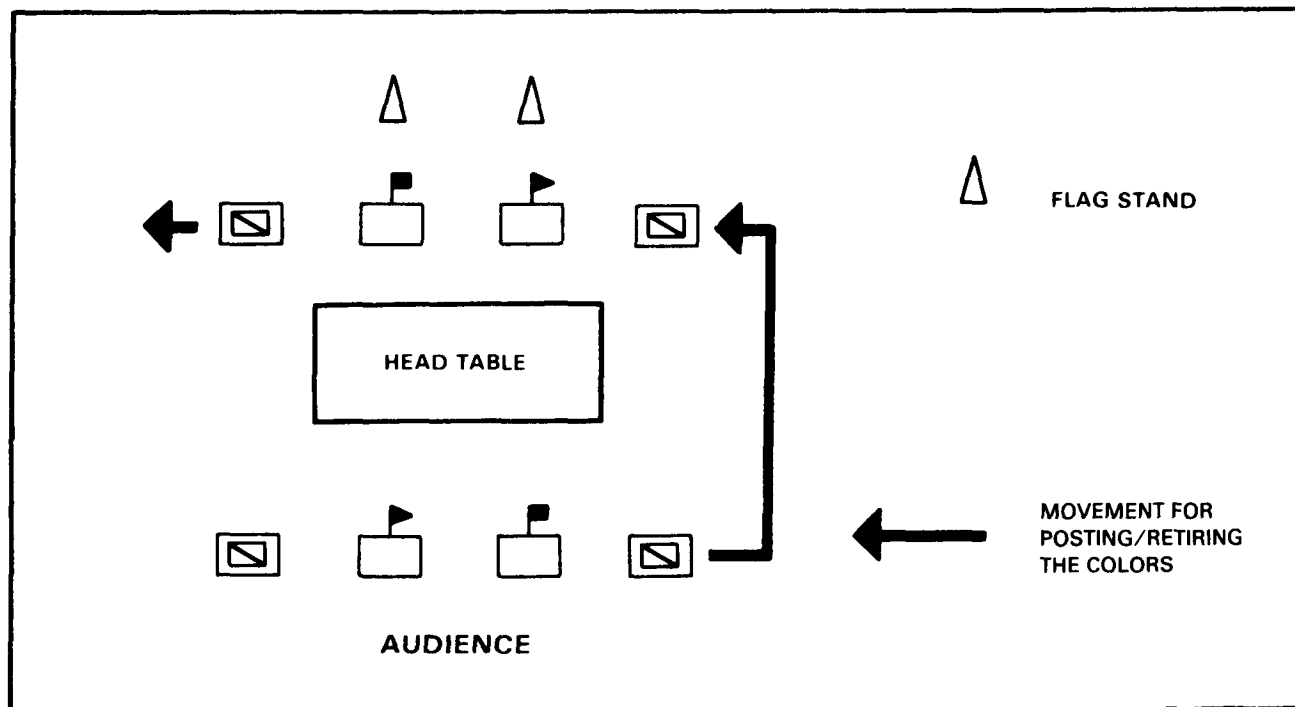


Figure 9-19. Posting and Retiring the Colors.

9-50. Movement of Three-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To *face* a three-man Color guard to the rear, the command is ***Colors reverse, MARCH***, and each man simultaneously executes the following movements:

- a. Number 1 *faces* left while *marking time*, takes two steps forward, and *faces* to the left while *marking time*.
- b. Number 2 takes one full step forward, executes *about face* while *marking time*, and takes one full step in the new direction, *marking time*.
- c. Number 3 takes one full step and two half steps forward, *faces* to the right while *marking time*, takes two full steps, *faces* to the right in *marching*, taking two full steps, and *marks time*.
- d. When all are abreast of each other, they step off together or *halt*, as commanded (Figure 9-20).

9-51. Movement of Four-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face a four-man Color guard to the rear, the command is **Colors reverse, MARCH**. At the command **MARCH**, each man simultaneously executes the following movements:

- Number 1 takes two steps forward, *faces to the left in marching*, takes one full step and three half steps, *faces to the left in marching*, and takes two steps in the new direction.
- Number 2 *faces to the left in marching* and *faces to the left while marking time*.
- Number 3 takes one step forward, *faces to the right in marching*, takes two half steps, *faces to the right in marching*, and takes one step in the new direction.
- Number 4 takes one step forward, *faces to the right in marching*, takes one full step and three half steps, *faces to the right in marching*, and takes one step forward in the new direction.

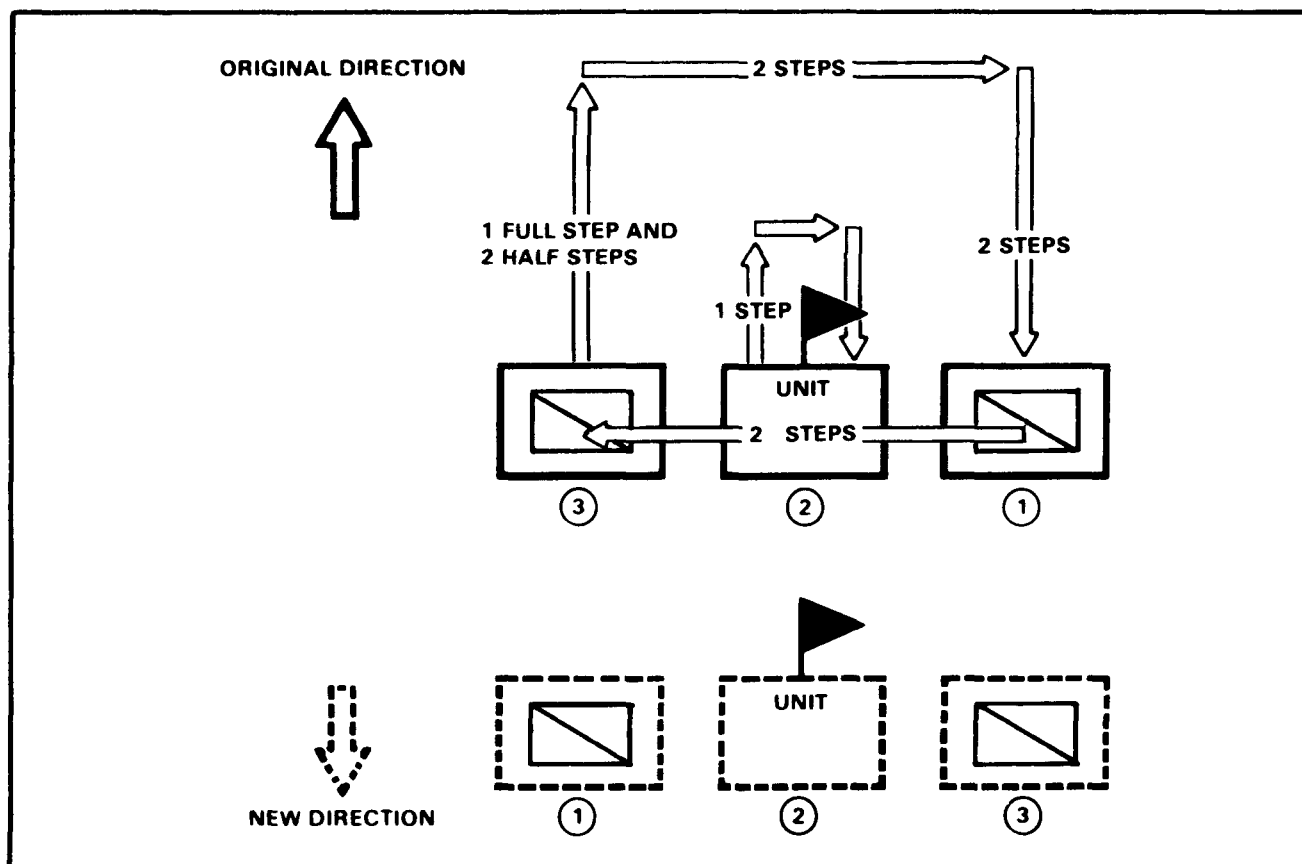


Figure 9-20. Movement of Three-Man Color Guard to the Rear

- Numbers 2, 3, and 4 *mark time* after completing their movements until all men are abreast, then step off together or *halt*, as the situation dictates (Figure 9-21).

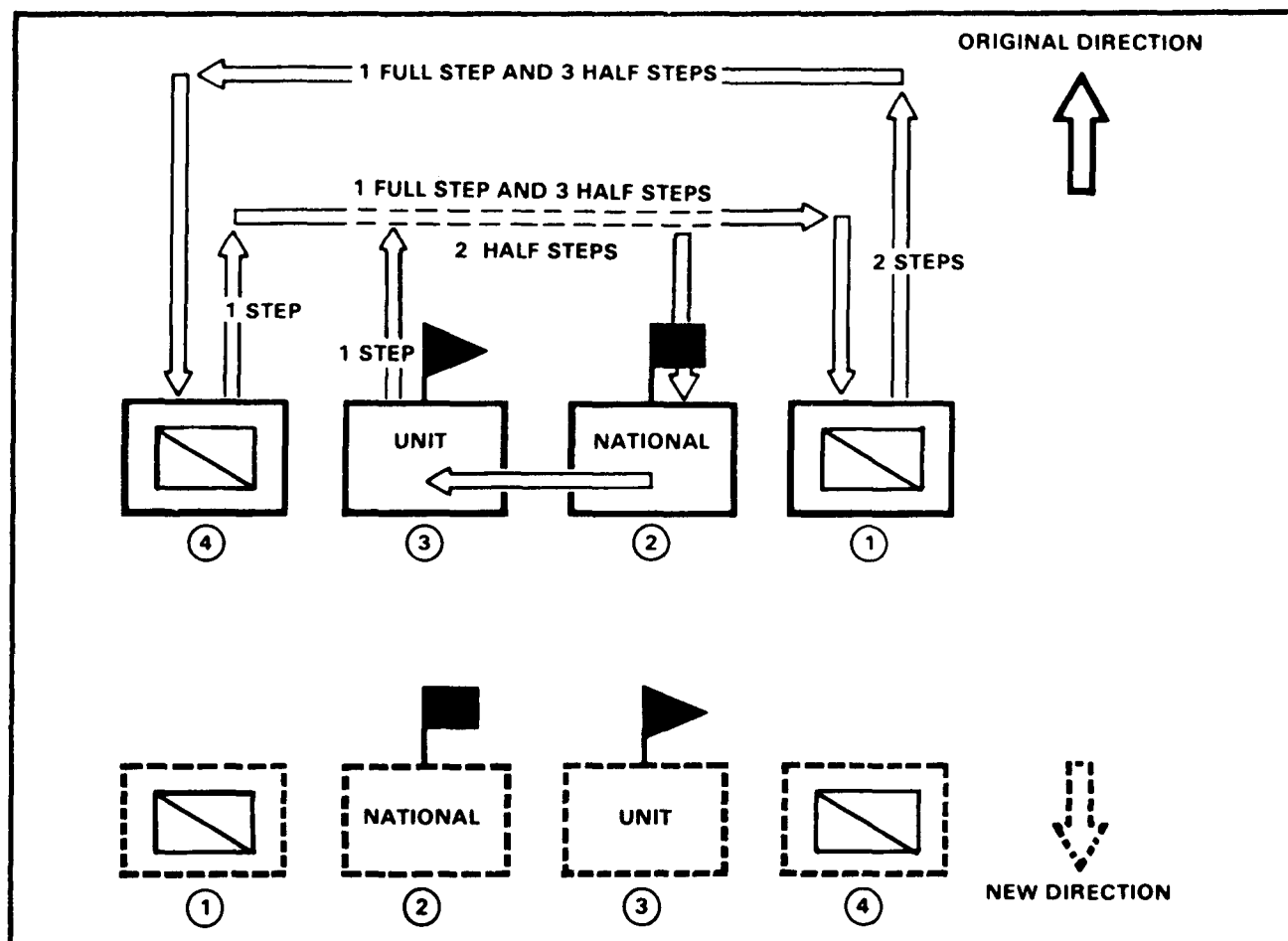


Figure 9-21. Movement of Four-Man Color Guard to the Rear

9-52. Movement of Five-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face a five-man Color guard to the rear, the command is **Colors reverse, MARCH**. At the command **MARCH**, each man simultaneously executes the following movements:

- Number 1 takes four steps forward, *faces to the left in marching*, takes four full steps forward, *faces to the left in marching*, takes four full steps in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- Number 2 *faces left while marking time*, takes two steps forward, and *faces to the left while marking time*.
- Number 3 takes one full step forward, executes *about face while marking time*, and takes one full step in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- Number 4 takes one full step and two half steps, *faces to the right while marching*, takes two full steps, *faces to the right in marching*, takes two full steps, and *marks time*.
- Number 5 takes three full steps forward, *faces to the right in marching*, takes

four full steps forward, *faces to the right in marching*, takes three full steps forward, and *marks time*.

- f. Numbers 2, 3, 4, and 5 *mark time* after completing their movements.
- g. When all men are abreast of each other, they step off together or *halt*, as the situation dictates (Figure 9-22).

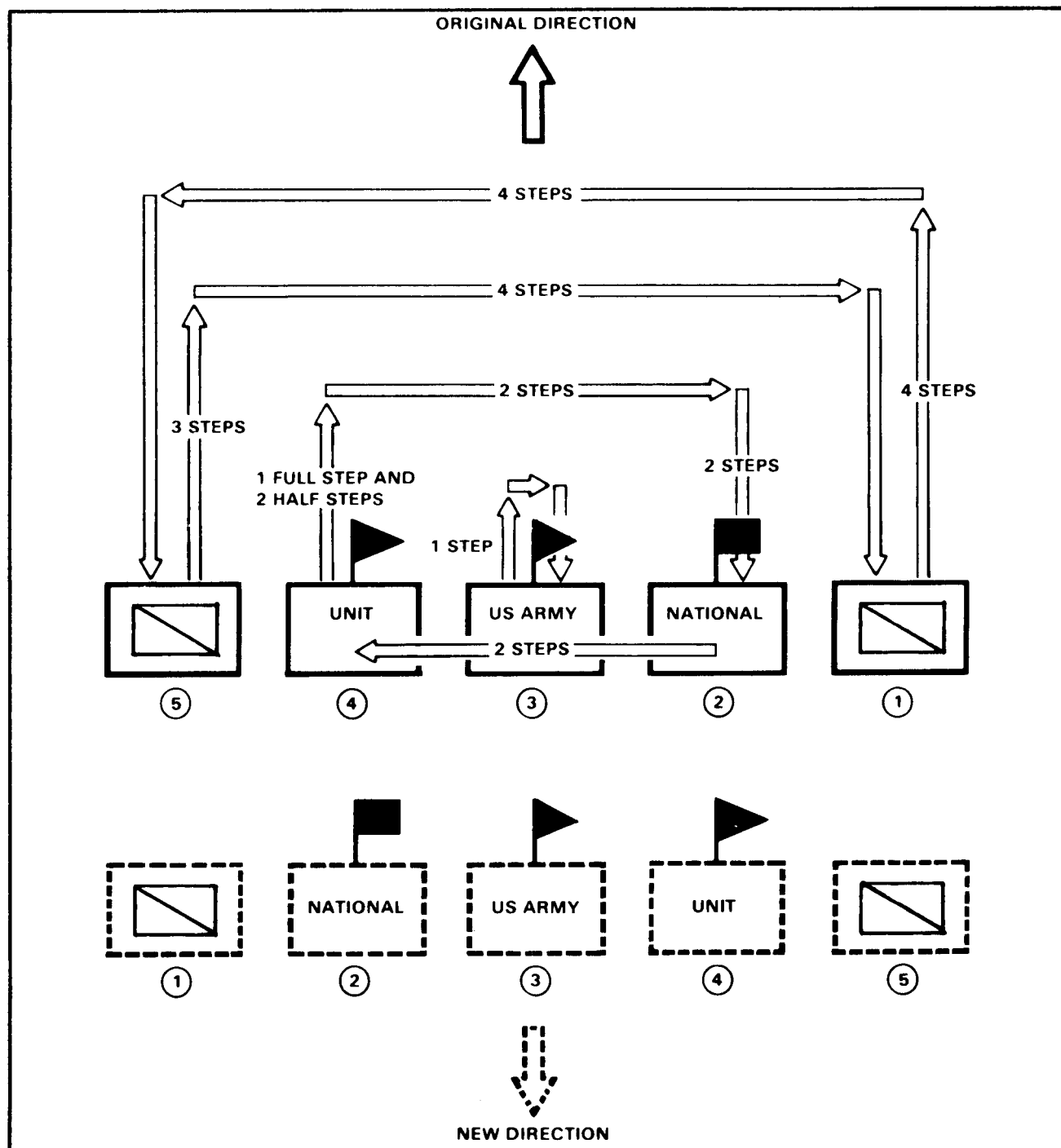


Figure 9-22. Movement of Five-Man Color Guard to the Rear

NOTE: *Left about* may be used in lieu of *colors reverse*. The command for this movement is ***Left about, MARCH***. The Color sergeant is the pivot man for the movement. On the command of execution, the Color sergeant *marches* in place and *turns* to the left. Other members shorten their step and turn in an arc keeping abreast of each other and maintaining alignment. When the movement has been completed, each man *marches* in place until the command **HALT** or ***Forward, MARCH*** is given. This movement may be executed from the **HALT** or while *marching*.

9-53. Movement of Six-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face a six-man Color guard to the rear, the command is ***Colors reverse, MARCH***. At the command **MARCH**, each man simultaneously executes the following movements:

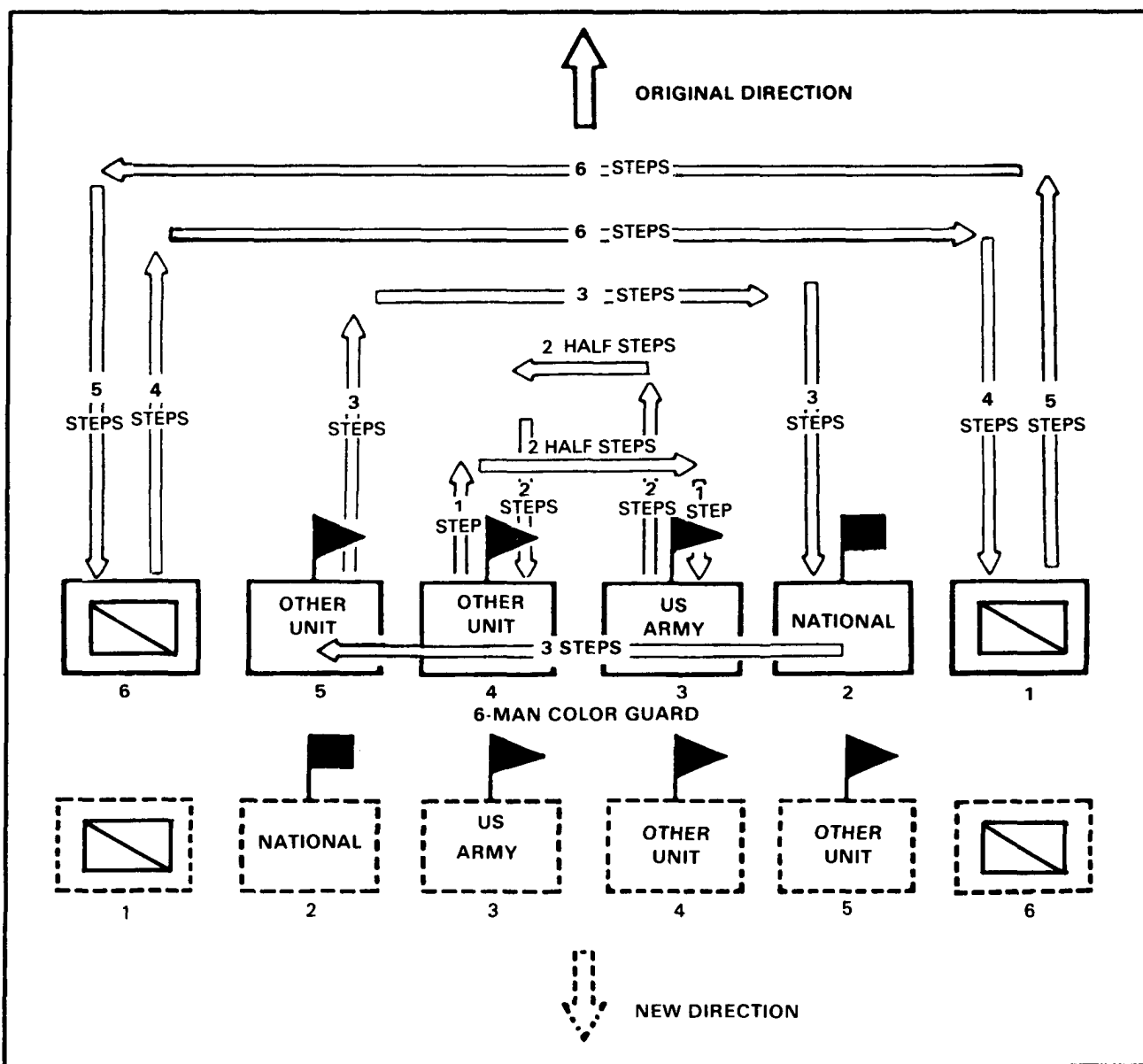


Figure 9-23. Movement of Six-Man Color Guard to the Rear.

- a. Number 1 takes five steps forward, *faces* to the left in *marching*, takes six full steps forward, *faces* to the left in *marching*, takes five full steps in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- b. Number 2 *faces* left while *marking time*, takes three full steps forward, and *faces* to the left in the new direction, while *marking time*.
- c. Number 3 takes two full steps forward, *faces* to the left while *marching*, takes two steps forward, *faces* to the left while *marching*, takes two full steps in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- d. Number 4 takes one full step forward, *faces* to the right while *marching*, takes two half steps forward, *faces* to the right in *marching*, takes one full step in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- e. Number 5 takes three full steps forward, *faces* to the right in *marching*, takes three full steps forward, *faces* to the right in *marching*, takes three full steps in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- f. Number 6 takes four full steps forward, *faces* to the right in *marching*, takes six full steps forward, *faces* to the right in *marching*, takes four full steps in the new direction, and *marks time*.
- g. Numbers 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 *mark time* after completing their movement.
- h. When all men are abreast of each other, they step off together or *halt*, as the situation dictates (Figure 9-23).

9-54. Position of the Colors at the Order

At the order, the ferrule of the staff is rested on the marching surface and touching the outside of the right footgear opposite the ball of the right foot. Hold the staff in the right hand with the back of the hand facing outward and the fingers wrapped around the staff. Rest the staff against the hollow of the shoulder (Figure 9-24).

9-55. Position of the Colors at the Carry

At the *carry*, the ferrule of the staff is rested in the socket of the sling. The socket is below the waist and adjusted to ensure that the finials of all Colors are of equal height (Figure 9-25). The staff is grasped with the right hand (even with the mouth) and inclined slightly to the front with the left hand securing the ferrule in the socket. The left hand may be positioned immediately below the right hand to more firmly secure the Colors on windy days.

9-56. Position of the Colors at Parade Rest

- a. *Parade rest* with the Colors is executed with staffs vertical.
- b. The *order* and *parade rest* are executed with the Color company except during ceremonies when the Colors remain at the *carry position* (Figure 9-26).

9-57. Position of the Organizational Color at Color Salute

- a. This position is assumed from the carry by slipping the right hand upward about 4 inches and then thrusting the arm forward shoulder high and horizontal

to the marching surface forming an approximate 45-degree angle. When the Colors *salute* with troops who execute *present arms* from the order, the Color bearers assume the position of *carry* at the command **ARMS** and then execute the Color *salute* (Figure 9-27).

- b. When casing or uncasing Colors indoors (at the *order*), the organizational Color bearer *salutes* (dips) by slipping his right hand upward and grasping the staff firmly, with the forearm horizontal and the staff thrust forward until the arm is fully extended.

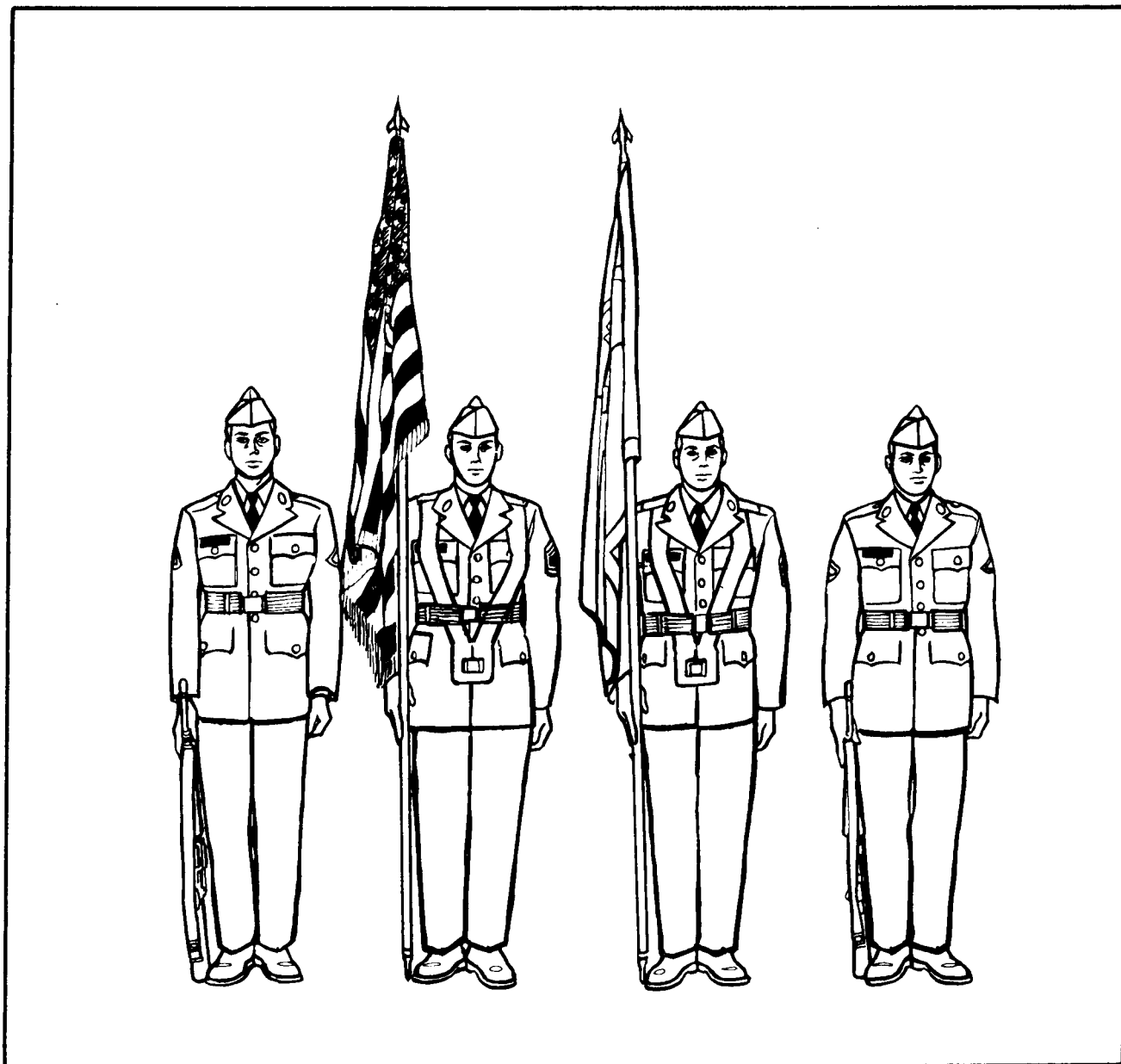


Figure 9-24. Position of the Colors at the Order.

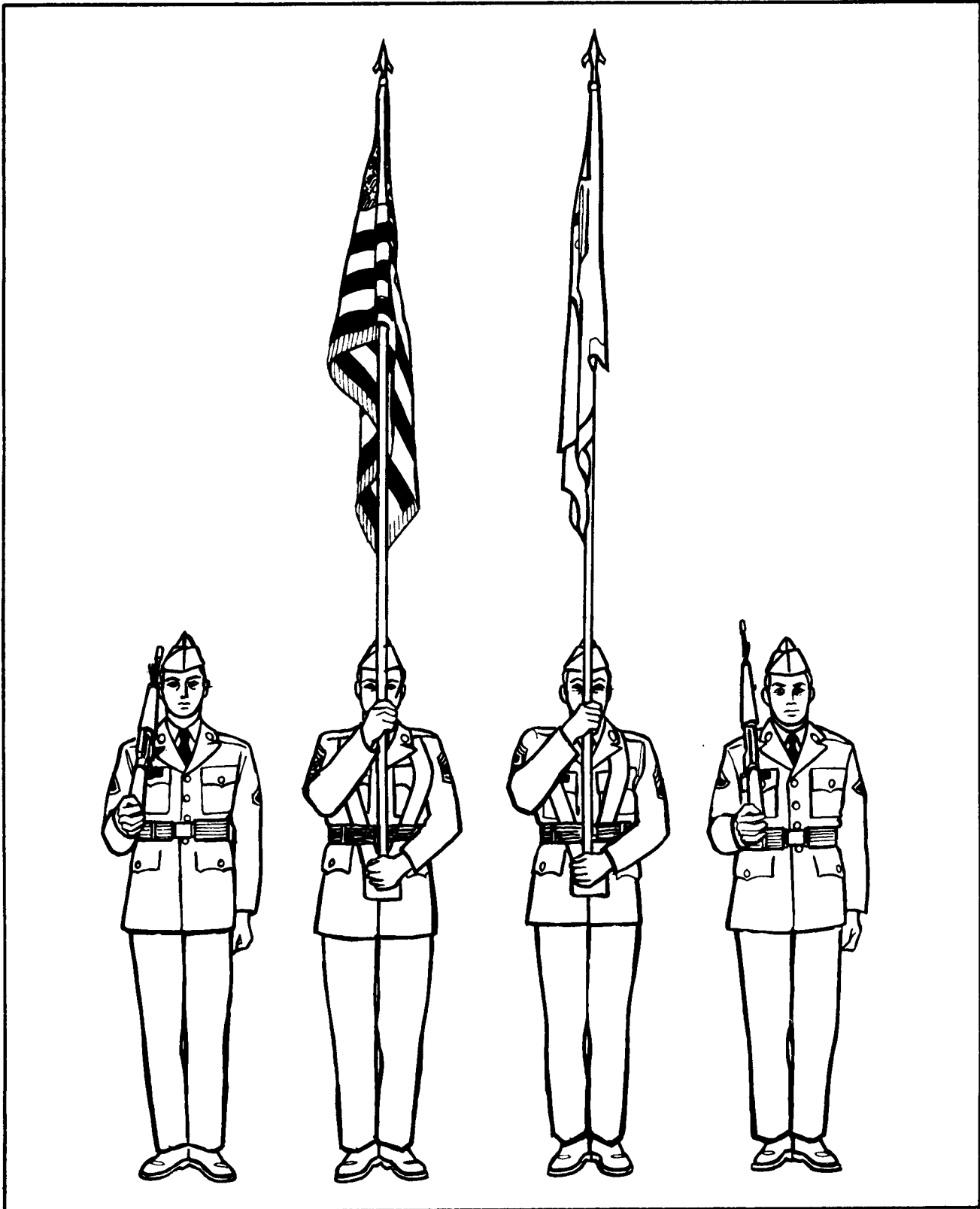


Figure 9-25. Position of the Colors at the Carry.

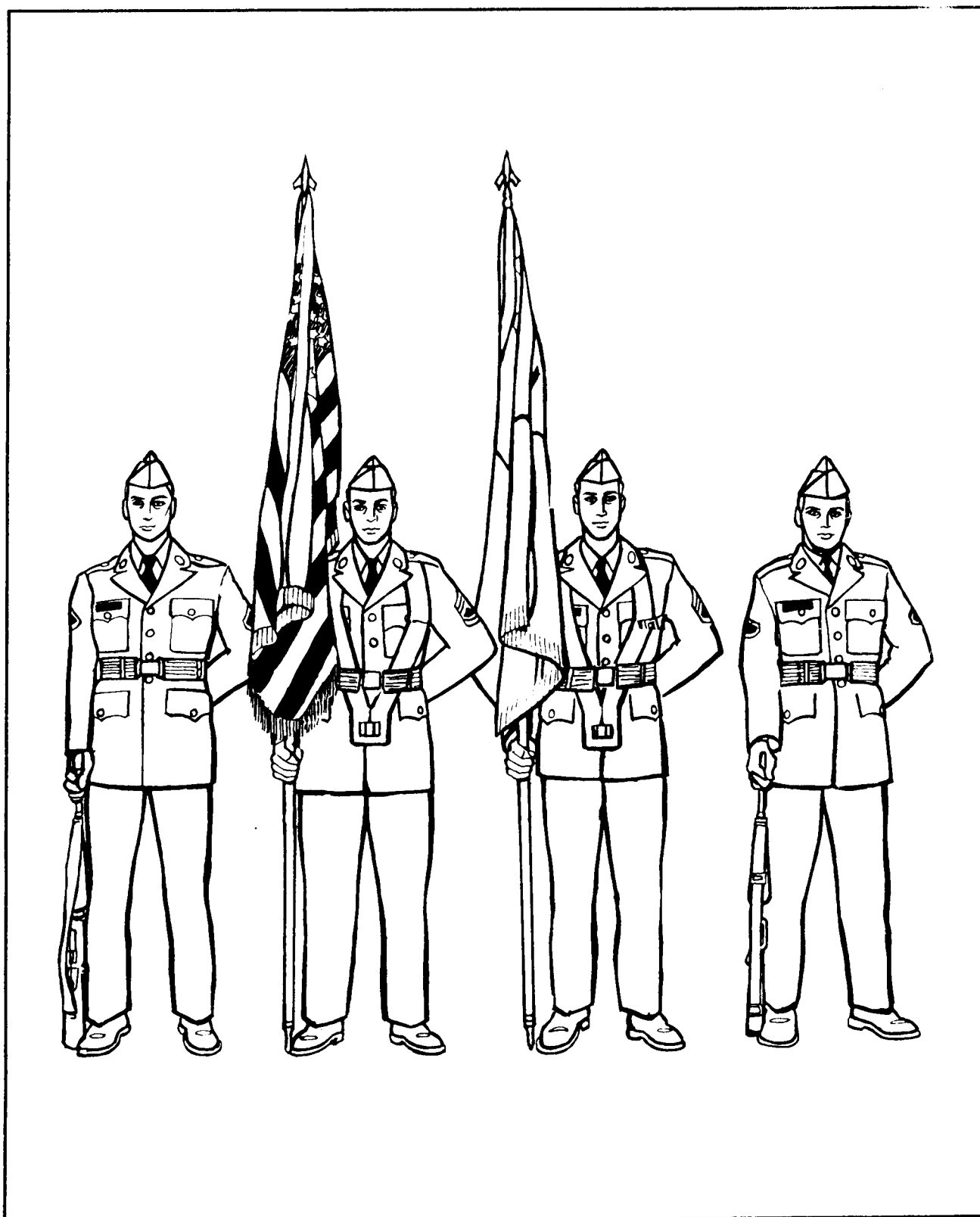


Figure 9-26. Position of the Colors at Parade Rest

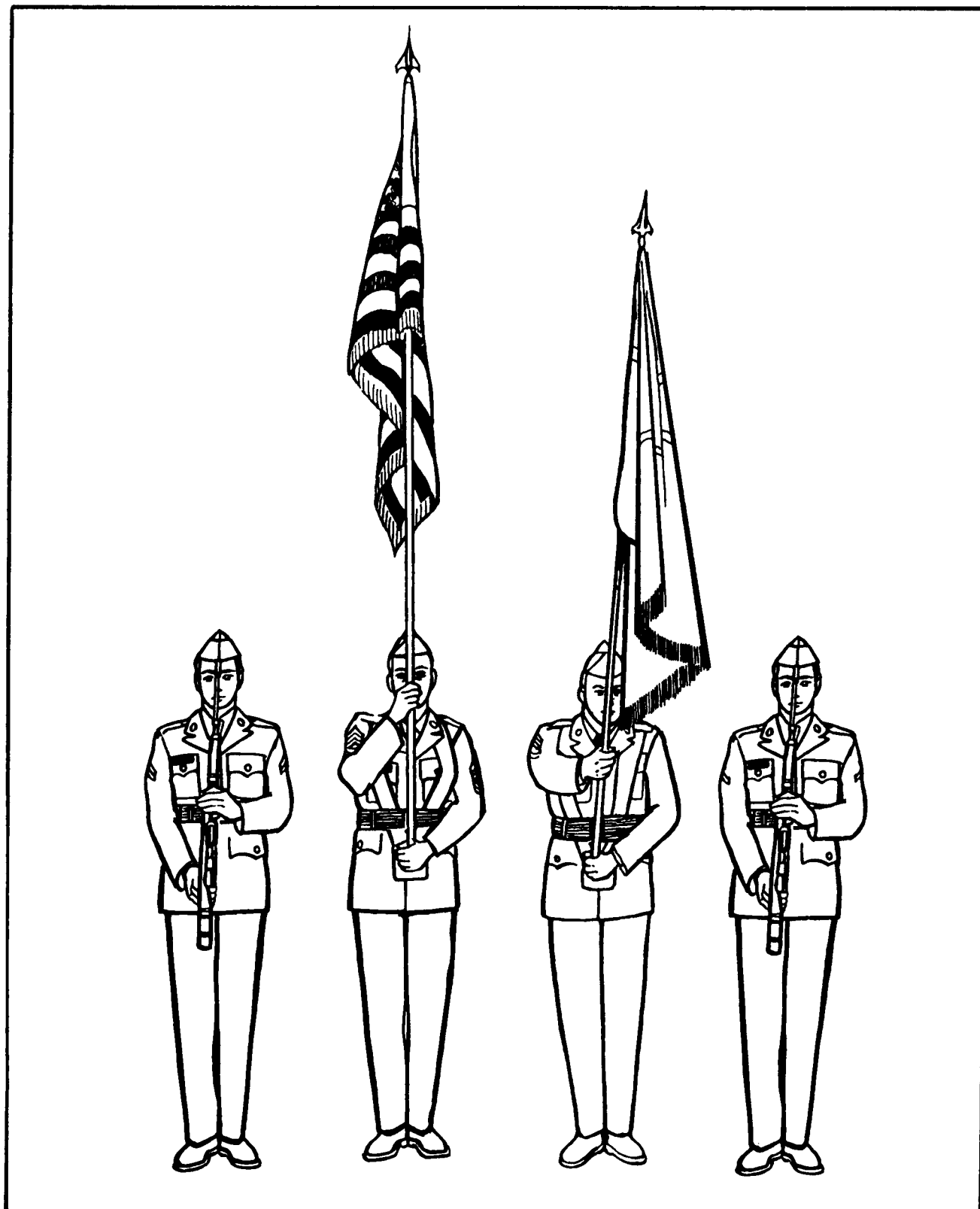


Figure 9-27. Position of the Organizational Color at Color Salute.

Section X

SALUTE BATTERY

9-58. General

Ceremonies did not originally use field artillery as a salute battery. In the 19th century, branches of service were lined up from right to left: infantry, field artillery, and cavalry, respectively. Field artillery lined up their guns but did not fire them. When honors began to be fired in ceremonies, the guns were moved out of the formation to avoid injury to other elements of the formation.

9-59. Preparation

- a. The salute battery should arrive at the ceremonial site early enough to position their pieces before the arrival of units on the ready line.
- b. The pieces are positioned downwind from the ceremony site with the muzzles pointing away from the reviewing stand. When possible, the opened trails are two steps to the rear of the final line and the number six piece is positioned twelve steps from the left flank unit. Other pieces are positioned about four steps apart (measure from inside wheels) and on line with number six.
- c. Once the pieces are in position, the battery is formed to the left of the number one piece and in front of the line so that the number six and three sections are on the final line (Figure 9-28).

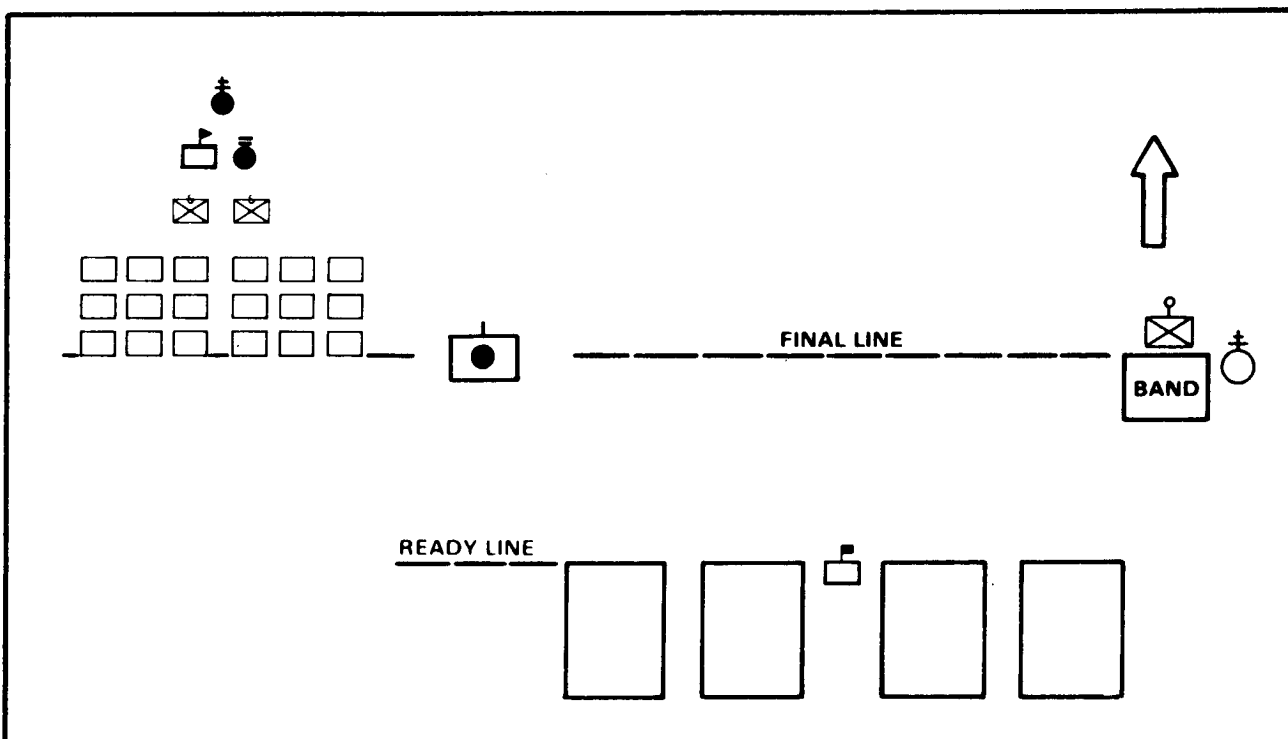


Figure 9-28. Position of Salute Battery and Personnel Before the Review.

9-60. Sequence of Events and Individual Actions

a. Formation of Troops.

- (1) On hearing the band sound *attention*, the battery commander *faces about*, commands **Battery, ATTENTION**, and again *faces about*.
- (2) On completion of adjutant's call, the battery commander *faces about* and commands **Right, FACE**. He then commands **Section, POST**.
- (3) The section chiefs in sequence (6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1) command **Forward, MARCH** or **Column half right, MARCH**. The sections *march* forward along the final line and *halt* when centered on the piece.
- (4) The battery commander *faces* to the left and commands (himself and his staff) **Column half right, MARCH**. They *march* forward (*inclining* as necessary) so that when *halted* the battery commander is six steps from and centered on the firing battery. The section chief and the counter should be centered and three steps to the rear of the commander. The executive officer is on line with the guidon bearer.
- (5) When the battery commander has *halted* his staff, he *faces* to the right and commands **Left, FACE**. Then he commands **Dress right, DRESS; Ready, FRONT**, and **Parade, REST** (for large reviews, the command **AT EASE** may be substituted for **Parade, REST**). The commander then *faces about* and executes *parade rest*.

b. Presentation of Honors.

- (1) When the commander of troops has directed *order arms* (adjutant has taken his post), the battery commander *faces about* and commands **Order, ARMS**. He then directs **FIRE THE SALUTE** and *faces about*.
- (2) The battery commander quietly commands (himself and the guidon bearer) **Present, ARMS** and **Order, ARMS** as appropriate.
- (3) The executive officer, counter, and chief of firing battery *face about*. The executive officer commands **Cannoneers, POST**.
- (4) The cannoneers immediately move to their firing positions.
- (5) The executive officer commands **With blank ammunition** (pause), **LOAD**. He then commands **STAND BY, NUMBER ONE**.
- (6) As each piece is ready to fire, the section chief raises his arm (nearest the executive officer) and looks at the executive officer.
- (7) When all section chiefs have indicated they are ready (arm raised), the executive officer raises his right arm and looks at the commander of troops.
- (8) The commander of troops takes the raised arm as the signal that the battery is ready to fire. He then *faces about* and commands (himself and his staff) **Present, ARMS**.
- (9) As the commander's hand touches his headgear, the executive officer signals the first piece to fire.

- (10) The executive officer drops his arm to a horizontal position and then raises it back to a vertical position for each round. Rounds are fired at three-second intervals for normal honors and five-second intervals for funerals (AR 600-25).
 - (11) During the *salute*, as the second to last round is fired, the counter *faces about* and announces **ELEVEN**.
 - (12) As the next to last round is fired, the chief of the firing battery *faces about* and announces **TWELVE**. This is the signal for the executive officer to fire one more round.
 - (13) During the firing, each section immediately reloads after each round is fired and is prepared to fire in case of a misfire.
 - (14) When the last round has been fired, the executive officer signals **CEASE FIRE** and then signals **UNLOAD**.
 - (15) When all pieces are unloaded and the cannoneers are at *attention*, the executive officer commands to the rear of the piece, **FALL IN** (cannoneers automatically *fall in* at *dress right*); he then commands **Ready, FRONT** and **Parade, REST**.
 - (16) When all sections are back in position on the final line, the executive officer *faces about*.
- c. **Inspection.**
- (1) As the reviewing party approaches piece number six, the battery commander *faces about* and commands **Battery, ATTENTION**. He then *faces* to the front and (over his right shoulder) commands **Eyes, RIGHT**.
 - (2) The battery commander and executive officer execute *eyes right* and *salute*.
 - (3) The guidon bearer executes *eyes right* and *present guidon*.
 - (4) All others execute *eyes right* and follow the reviewing officer, turning the head until *facing* to the front.
 - (5) When the reviewing party has passed the last piece, the battery commander commands **Order, ARMS** for himself, the executive officer, and the guidon bearer. He then *faces about*. When the reviewing party has cleared the right rear of his unit, he then commands **Parade, REST**, *faces about*, and assumes *parade rest*.
- d. **Honors to the Nation.** The battery executes appropriate movements on command or directives by the commander of troops.
- e. **Remarks.** Reference honors to the nation.
- f. **March in Review.** On the command or directive to **PASS IN REVIEW**, the battery commander *faces about* and commands **Parade, REST**. He then *faces about* and assumes *parade rest*.
- g. **Conclusion.**
- (1) When the band begins the eight-bar drum beat (before “The Army Goes Rolling Along”) the battery commander *faces about* and commands **Battery ATTENTION**. He then *faces about*.

- (2) When the band has finished playing the music, the battery commander *faces about* and commands **REST**.

Section XI

CIVILIAN PARTICIPATION IN MILITARY CEREMONIES

9-61. General

Since its inception at the beginning of the American Revolution, the US Army has always seen the importance of civilian control of the military and participation of civilians in military activities. As a result, military ceremonies are frequently held to honor civilians.

9-62. Purpose

This section serves as a guide for commanders in planning and conducting military ceremonies with civilian participation.

9-63. Types of Ceremonies

Civilians may participate in three general categories of military ceremonies:

- a. Civilians present awards.
- b. Civilians receive awards.
- c. Civilians are honored.

9-64. Civilians Presenting Awards

This category includes occasions when an award is made to another civilian and occasions when awards are presented to military personnel by a civilian. These ceremonies are conducted as outlined in paragraph 9-4 with the following exceptions:

- a. The host or reviewing officer is accompanied to the reviewing stand by the civilian. The reviewing officer may relinquish the place of honor to the civilian.
- b. The reviewing officer accompanies the civilian throughout the sequence of events.
- c. Because of lack of familiarity with military ceremonies, it may be necessary to brief the civilian before and during the conduct of the ceremony.

9-65. Civilians Receiving Awards

- a. Conduct of these ceremonies should be guided by paragraph 9-4 with the following exceptions:
 - (1) Civilians should be initially positioned to the left of the reviewing stand and not *marched* forward with the military personnel, if any, to receive awards.
 - (2) When the Colors are brought forward, civilians move to a position five steps in front of and centered on the Colors. When military and civilians

receive an award at the same time, they are aligned from right to left with the highest award on the right.

- (3) When the awardees are posted, they remain in the same order. If there are no military awardees, the civilians move to the left of the reviewing stand, as stated in paragraph 9-4.

NOTE: If there is only one awardee, he may be the reviewing official.

- b. When this ceremony is conducted for presenting posthumous awards, other types of awards are not incorporated. A carefully selected escort officer should accompany relatives of persons receiving posthumous awards.

9-66. Reviews in Honor of Civilians

- a. Government employees, private citizens, and local, state, national, or foreign officials may be honored by a review.
- b. Consult AR 600-25 for special honors due certain officials. Other civilians may be honored, as noted above, by participating in the place of or with the reviewing officer.

APPENDIX A

Saluting

A-1. General

The origin of the hand salute is uncertain. Some historians believe it began in late Roman times when assassinations were common. A citizen who wanted to see a public official had to approach with his right hand raised to show that he did not hold a weapon. Knights in armor raised visors with the right hand when meeting a comrade. This practice gradually became a way of showing respect and, in early American history, sometimes involved removing the hat. By 1820, the motion was modified to touching the hat, and since then it has become the hand salute used today.

A-2. When to Salute

- a. Army personnel in uniform are required to *salute* when they meet and recognize persons entitled (by grade) to a *salute* except when it is inappropriate or impractical (in public conveyances such as planes and buses, in public places such as inside theaters, or when driving a vehicle). A *salute* is also rendered:
 - (1) When the United States National Anthem, "To the Color," "Hail to the Chief," or foreign national anthems are played.
 - (2) To uncased National Color outdoors.
 - (3) On ceremonial occasions as prescribed in Chapter 9.
 - (4) At reveille and retreat ceremonies, during the raising or lowering of the flag.
 - (5) During the sounding of honors.
 - (6) When pledging allegiance to the US flag outdoors.
 - (7) When turning over control of formations.
 - (8) When rendering reports.
 - (9) To officers of friendly foreign countries.
- b. *Salutes* are not required when:
 - (1) Indoors, except when reporting to an officer or when on duty as a guard.
 - (2) A prisoner.
 - (3) *Saluting* is obviously inappropriate. (Example: A person carrying articles with both hands, or being otherwise so occupied as to make *saluting* impracticable, is not required to *salute* a senior person or return the salute to a subordinate.) In any case not covered by specific instructions, the *salute* is rendered.

- (4) Either the senior or the subordinate is wearing civilian clothes.

A-3. Reporting Indoors

When reporting to an officer in his office, the soldier removes his headgear, knocks, and enters when told to do so. He approaches within two steps of the officer's desk, *halts, salutes*, and reports, "**Sir (Ma'am), Private Jones reports.**" The *salute* is held until the report is completed and the *salute* has been returned by the officer. When the business is completed, the soldier *salutes*, holds the *salute* until it has been returned, executes the appropriate *facing movement*, and departs. When reporting indoors under arms, the procedure is the same except that the headgear is not removed and the soldier renders the *salute* prescribed for the weapon with which he is armed.

NOTE: The expression under arms means carrying a weapon in your hands, by a sling or holster.

A-4. Reporting Outdoors

When reporting outdoors, the soldier moves rapidly toward the officer, *halts* approximately three steps from the officer, *salutes*, and reports (as when indoors). When the soldier is *dismissed* by the officer, *salutes* are again exchanged. If under arms, the soldier carries the weapon in the manner prescribed for *saluting*.

A-5. Report for Pay

When reporting for pay, the soldier answers "**Here, Sir (Ma'am),**" or "**Here, Sergeant,**" when his name is called, *salutes* the officer making payment (in this instance, the officer does not return the *salute*), reports, "**Sir (Ma'am), Private Jones reports for pay,**" counts the money as it is handed to him, signs the pay voucher, and leaves the room without *saluting* again.

A-6. Saluting Persons in Vehicles

The practice of *saluting* officers in official vehicles (recognized individually by grade or identifying vehicle plates and / or flags) is considered an appropriate courtesy. *Salutes* are not required to be rendered by or to personnel who are driving or riding in privately owned vehicles except by gate guards, who render *salutes* to recognized officers in all vehicles unless their duties make the *salute* impractical. When military personnel are drivers of a moving vehicle, they do not initiate a *salute* (AR 600-25).

A-7. Other Salutes

- a. **In Formation.** Individuals in formation do not *salute* or return *salutes* except at the command **Present, ARMS**. The individual in charge *salutes* and acknowledges *salutes* for the entire formation. Commanders of organizations or detachments that are not a part of a larger formation *salute* officers of higher grade by bringing the organization or detachment to *attention* before *saluting*. When in the field under battle or simulated battle conditions, the organization or detachment is not brought to *attention*. An individual in formation *at ease* or *at rest* comes to *attention* when addressed by an officer.

- b. **Not in Formation.** On the approach of an officer, a group of individuals not in formation is called to attention by the first person noticing the officer, and all come sharply to *attention* and *salute*. Individuals participating in games, and members of work details, do not *salute*. The individual in charge of a work detail, if not actively engaged, *salutes* and acknowledges *salutes* for the entire detail. A unit *resting* alongside a road does not come to *attention* upon the approach of an officer; however, if the officer addresses an individual (or group), the individual (or group) comes to *attention* and remains at *attention* (unless otherwise ordered) until the termination of the conversation, at which time the individual (or group) *salutes* the officer.
- c. **Outdoors.** Whenever and wherever the United States National Anthem, "To the Color," "Reveille," or "Hail to the Chief" is played, at the first note, all dismounted personnel in uniform and not in formation *face* the flag (or the music, if the flag is not in view), stand at *attention*, and render the prescribed *salute*. The position of *salute* is held until the last note of the music is sounded. Military personnel not in uniform will stand at *attention* (remove headdress, if any, with the right hand) and place the right hand over the heart. Vehicles in motion are brought to a *halt*. Persons riding in a passenger car or on a motorcycle dismount and *salute*. Occupants of other types of military vehicles and buses remain in the vehicle; the individual in charge of each vehicle dismounts and renders the *hand salute*. Tank and armored car commanders *salute* from the vehicle.
- d. **Indoors.** When the National Anthem is played indoors, officers and enlisted personnel stand at *attention* and *face* the music, or the flag if one is present.

NOTE: Narrators or printed programs can assist in informing spectators of appropriate responses.

A-8. Saluting Colors

National and organizational flags, which are mounted on flagstaffs equipped with finials are called Colors. Military personnel passing an uncased National Color *salute* at six steps distance and hold the *salute* until they have passed six steps beyond it. Similarly, when the uncased Color passes by, they *salute* when it is six steps away and hold the *salute* until it has passed six steps beyond them.

NOTE: Small flags carried by individuals, such as those carried by civilian spectators at a parade, are not *saluted*. It is improper to *salute* with any object in the right hand or with a cigarette, cigar, or pipe in the mouth.

A-9. Uncovering

- a. Officers and enlisted men under arms *uncover* only when:
 - (1) Seated as a member of (or in attendance on) a court or board.
 - (2) Entering places of divine worship.
 - (3) In attendance at an official reception.
- b. Male personnel remove their headdress indoors. When outdoors, military headdress is never removed, or raised as a form of salutation. When appropriate, civilians may be *saluted* in lieu of removing the headdress.

- c. Female military personnel will remain *covered* at all times when it would be appropriate for civilian women at a similar function to wear a hat. They must wear headgear when in uniform outdoors if headgear is authorized.

A-10. Saluting Upon Boarding Naval Ships

When Army personnel board US Navy ships, either as an individual or as a unit leader, they *salute* according to naval procedures.

- a. When boarding a naval ship, upon reaching the top of the gangway, *face* and *salute* the national ensign. After completing this *salute*, *salute* the officer of the deck who will be standing on the quarterdeck at the head of the gangway. When *saluting* the officer of the deck, request permission to board, ***“Sir, Request permission to come aboard.”*** The officer of the deck will return the *salute*.
- b. When leaving the ship, render the same *salutes* in reverse order, and request permission to leave, ***“Sir, Request permission to go ashore.”***

APPENDIX B

Symbols

	BRIGADE COMMANDER/ COMMANDER OF TROOPS		DRUM MAJOR
	BATTALION COMMANDER/ COMMANDER OF TROOPS		FIRE TEAM LEADER
	COMPANY COMMANDER		SQUAD MEMBER
	EXECUTIVE OFFICER (COMPANY)		PERSONAL FLAG (IF APPROP)
	PLATOON LEADER		GUIDON OR ORGANIZATIONAL COLOR(S) BEARER
	COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR		COLOR OR FLAG BEARER
	STAFF OF UNIT COMMANDER		COLOR GUARD
	BAND MASTER		FLAG POLE
	FIRST SERGEANT		SALUTE BATTERY
	PLATOON SERGEANT		PARADE GROUND MARKER
	PLATOON SERGEANT (ALTERNATE POSITION)*		DIRECTION TROOPS ARE FACING OR MARCHING
	SQUAD LEADER		NEW DIRECTION
	SECTION LEADER		CLERGY

*NOTE: ALL DASH-LINE SYMBOLS INDICATE ALTERNATE POSITIONS

APPENDIX C

Manual of the Guidon

C-1. General

- a. The guidon is a company, battery, or troop identification flag. It is present at all unit formations unless otherwise directed by the commander.
- b. When armed with a rifle, the guidon bearer slings the weapon behind his back with the sling diagonally across his chest and the muzzle end up and to the left (Figure C-1).
- c. When the unit is formed, the guidon bearer is one step in front of and two (15-inch) left steps to the right of and *facing* the person forming the unit (the person forming the unit is *facing* the unit.) If the first sergeant forms the unit, the guidon bearer steps forward three steps on the command **POST**.
- d. To *face* with the guidon, raise the ferrule one inch off the marching surface by bending the right elbow slightly. After executing the movement, automatically lower the ferrule to the *order* position. Keep the staff vertical throughout the movement.
- e. Execute *facing* movements, *marching* movements, *present arms* (*present guidon*), and *rest* movements with the unit. During manual of arms movements, remain at *order guidon* except for *present arms* (Figure C-1).
- f. When in a line formation and the company is *faced* to the right for a *marching* movement, *face* to the right in *marching*, assume the *double time* position and *double time* from that position to a position five steps forward of and centered on the squad leaders of the first platoon. If the company commander joins the formation at the head of the column (six steps in front of and centered on the squad leaders), execute two *left steps* (Figure C-6).

NOTE: Execute *raised guidon* only on the preparatory commands for **Present, ARMS; Eyes, RIGHT**; and on the preparatory command **Order** of **Order, ARMS** following the execution of *present arms* and *eyes right*. Also execute *raised guidon* on the preparatory command **Ready** of **Ready, FRONT**.

C-2. Order Guidon

At *order guidon* (position of *attention*), keep the ferrule on the marching surface and touching the outside of the right foot, opposite the ball of the right foot. Hold the staff in the right hand in the “U” formed by the fingers (extended and joined pointing downward) and thumb. Keep the right hand and arm behind the staff. Rest the staff against the hollow of the shoulder (Figure C-1).

C-3. Rest Positions

- a. On the preparatory command **Parade**, move the right hand up the staff until the forearm is horizontal and grasp the staff (1, Figure C-2). On the command of execution **REST**, thrust the staff straight forward keeping the ferrule on the marching surface until the arm is fully extended, and at the same time, execute *parade rest* as in individual drill (2, Figure C-2).

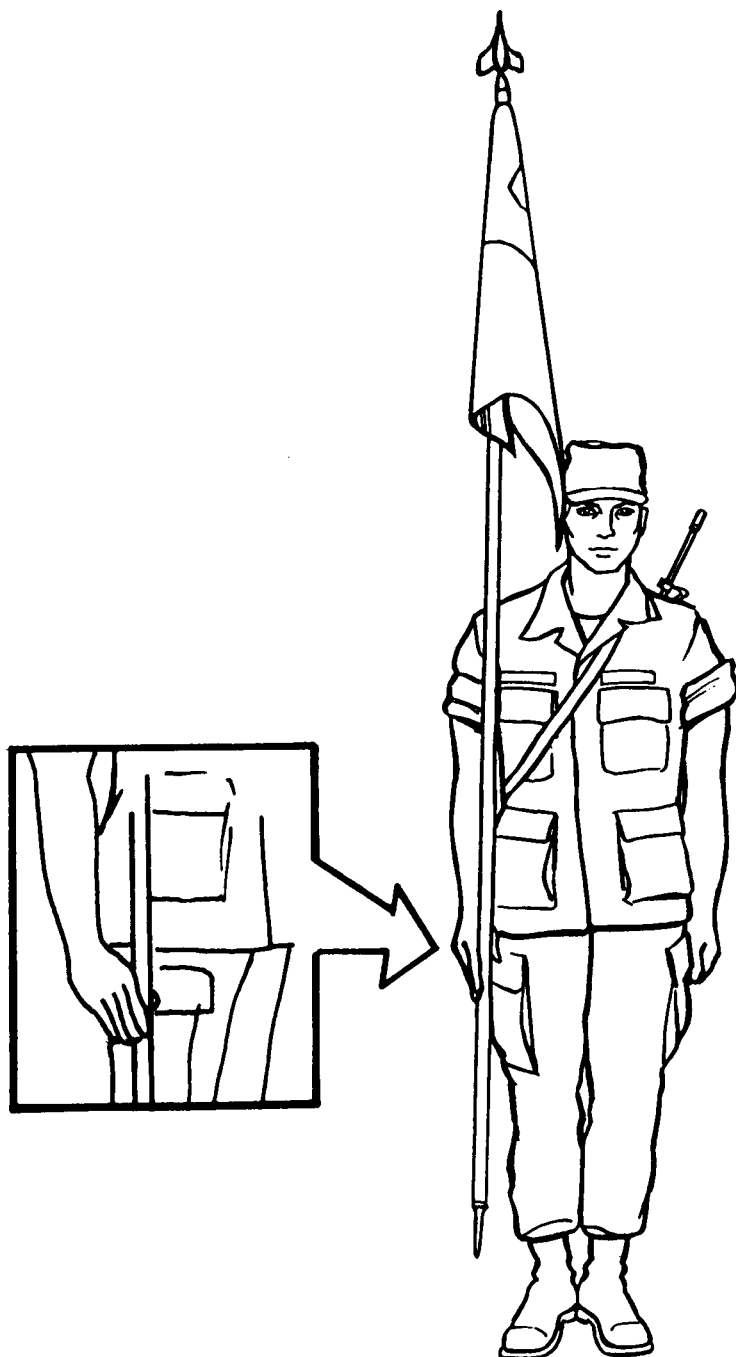


Figure C-1. Order Guidon

- b. *Stand at ease* is the same as *parade rest*, except that the eyes and head are turned toward the commander.
- c. Execute *at ease* and *rest* with the guidon from the *order guidon* position.

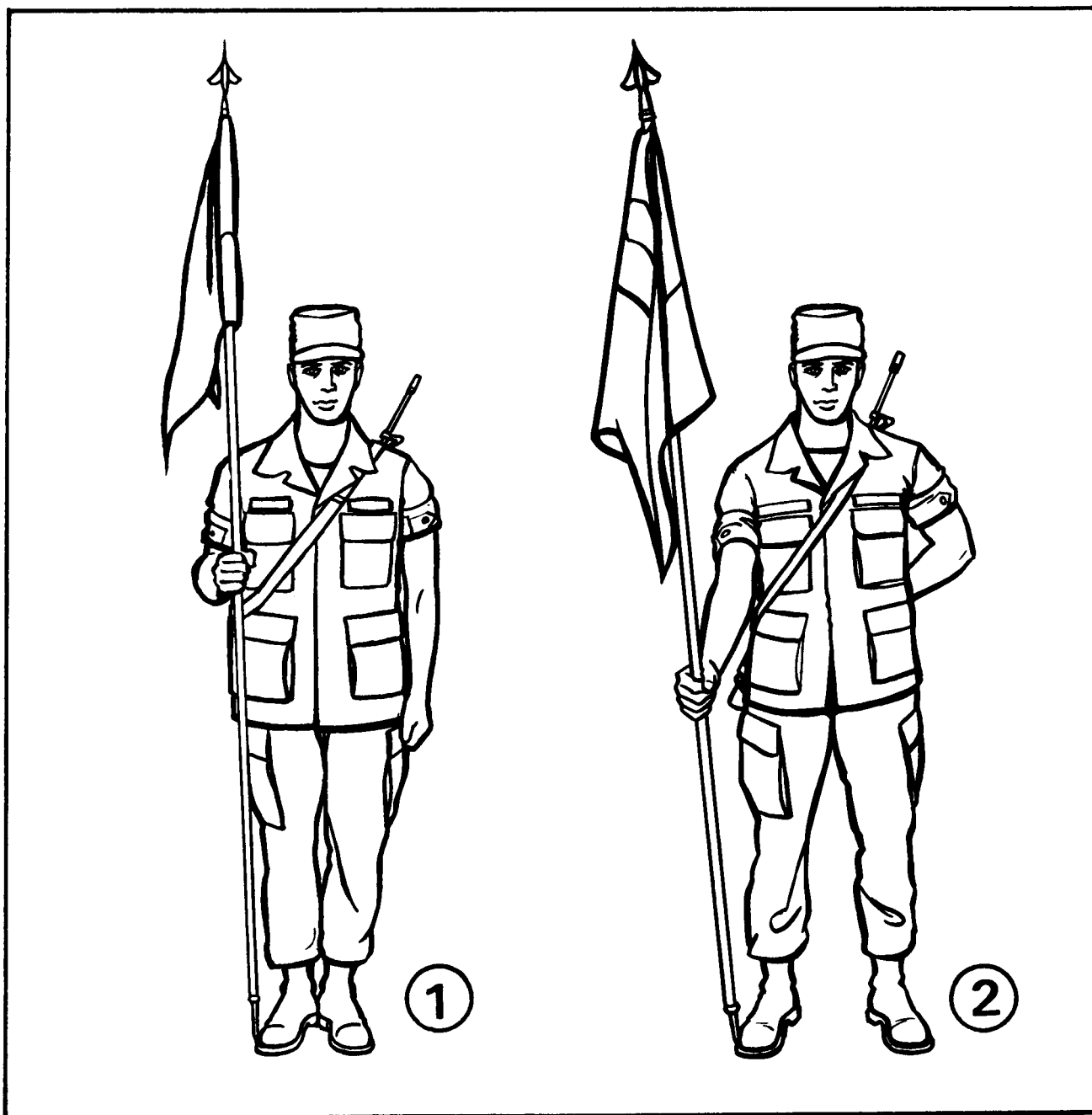


Figure C-2. Parade Rest

C-4. Carry Guidon

- a. On the preparatory command for *marching* movements, execute *carry guidon* from *order guidon* by grasping the staff with the right hand and raising it vertically six inches off the marching surface. At the same time, reach across the body (forearm horizontal) and grasp the staff with the left hand (1, Figure C-3). Hold the staff in position with the left hand while sliding the right hand down six

inches, regrasping the staff. On the command of execution **MARCH**, return the left hand smartly to the left side and simultaneously *step off* (2, Figure C-3).

- b. To resume *order guidon* from *carry guidon*, let the staff slide through the right hand until the ferrule touches the marching surface.
- c. When *double timing*, carry the guidon diagonally across the body in the same manner as *port arms*.

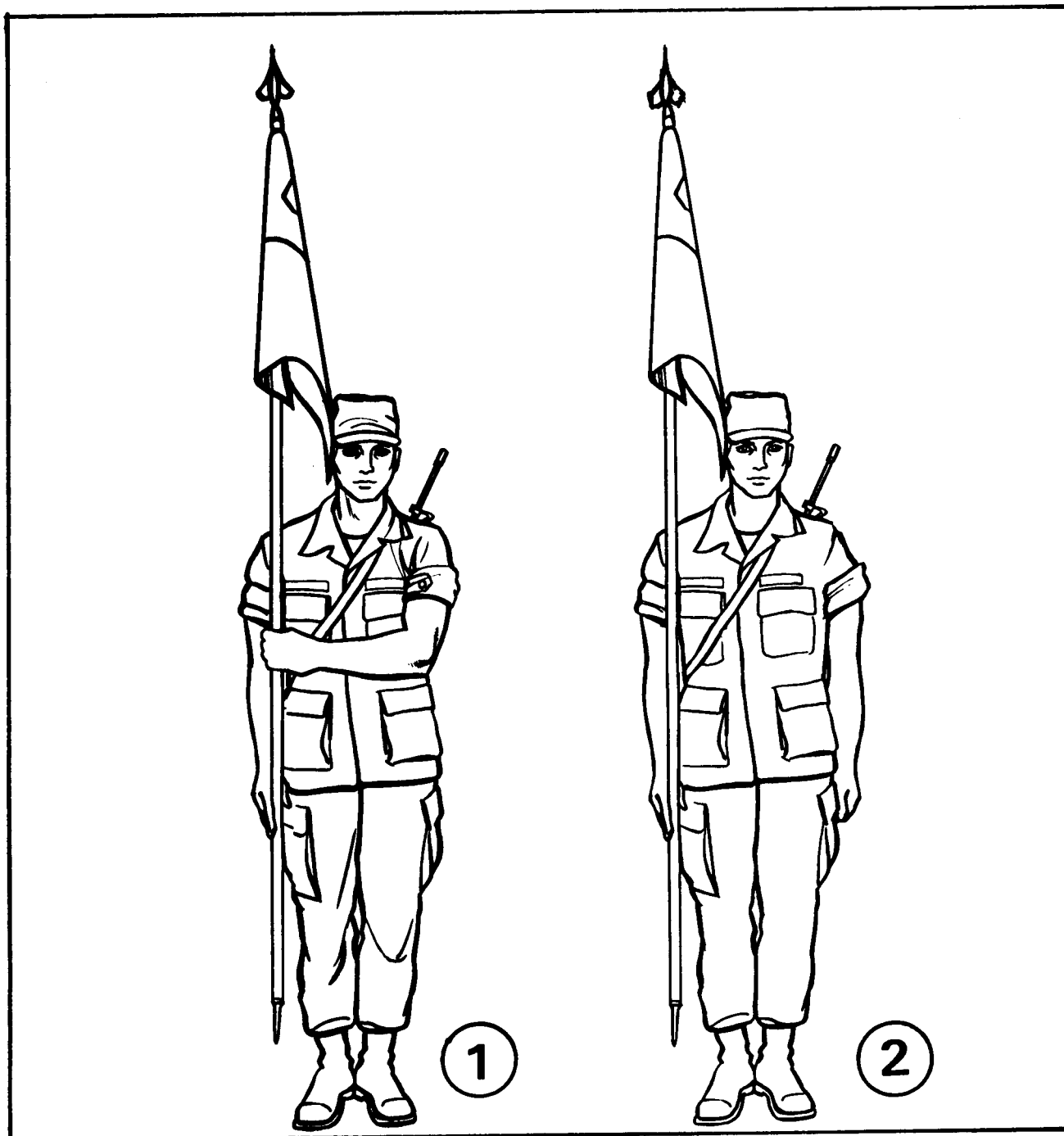


Figure C-3. Carry Position

C-5. Raised Guidon

On the preparatory command **Present** of **Present, ARMS** and **Eyes of Eyes, RIGHT**, raise the guidon vertically by grasping the staff with the right hand. Raise the guidon with the right hand while simultaneously moving the left hand across the body to guide the guidon (with palm to the rear, 1, Figure C-4). Keep raising the guidon until the right hand is on line with the right shoulder. Keep the right elbow into the side. Hold the guidon in this position until the command of execution is given (2, Figure C-4).

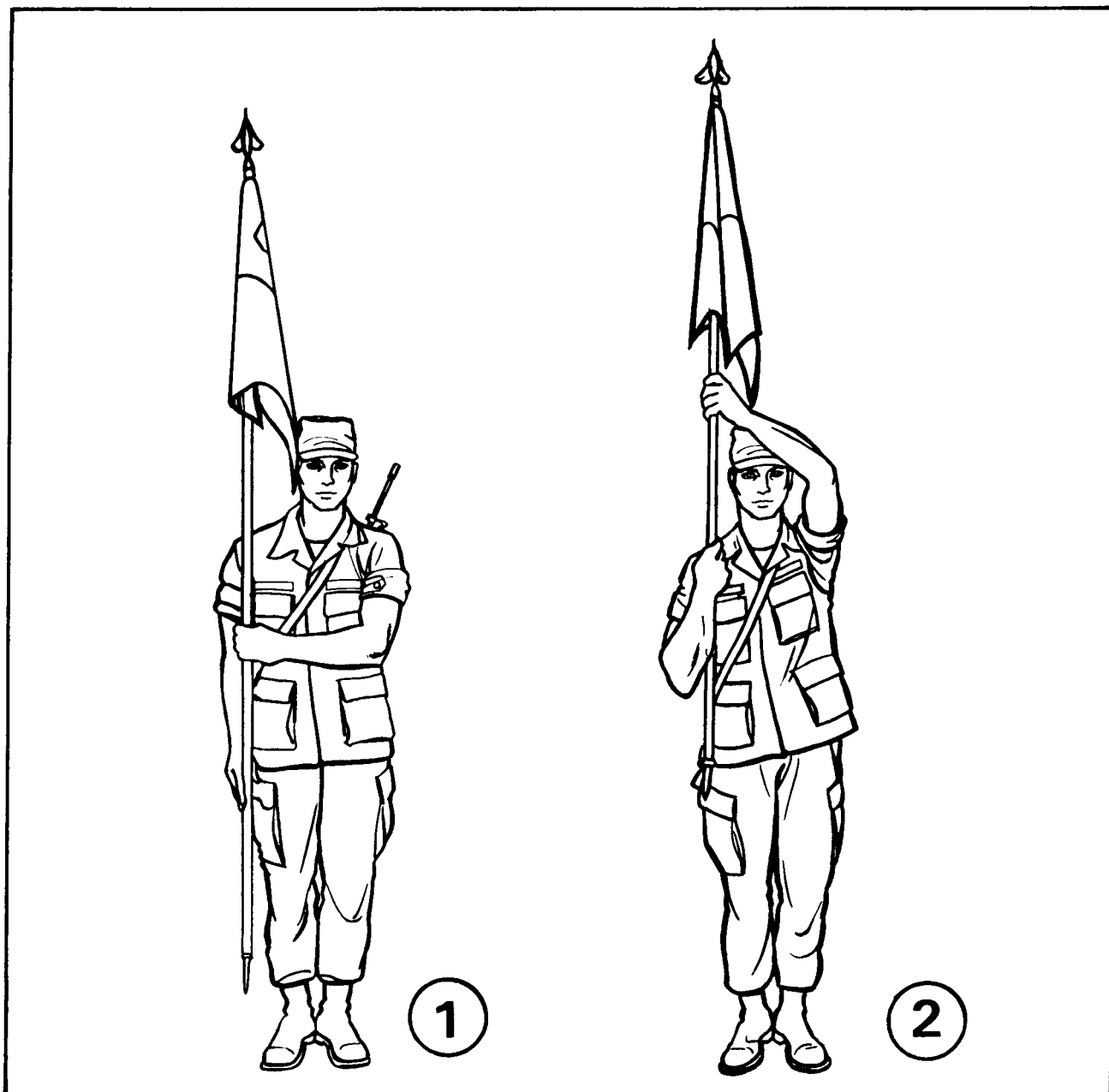


Figure C-4. Raised Guidon

C-6. Present Guidon

- a. On the preparatory commands for **Present ARMS** and **Eyes RIGHT**, execute *raised guidon*. On the command of execution, lower the guidon to the front using the right hand, keeping the left hand in the same position as *raised guidon* until the guidon is in the horizontal position resting under the arm pit. As soon as the staff is horizontal, return the left hand sharply to the left side (Figure C-5).
- b. During a review, execute *eyes right* as the guidon is presented on the command of execution **RIGHT**. Move the head and eyes to the front as the guidon is raised on the command **Ready of Ready, FRONT**.
- c. On the command **Order of Order, ARMS** or **Ready of Ready, FRONT**, regrasp the staff with the left hand at its original position and execute *raised guidon*. On the command of execution **ARMS** or **FRONT**, lower the guidon back to the *carry* or *order* position.

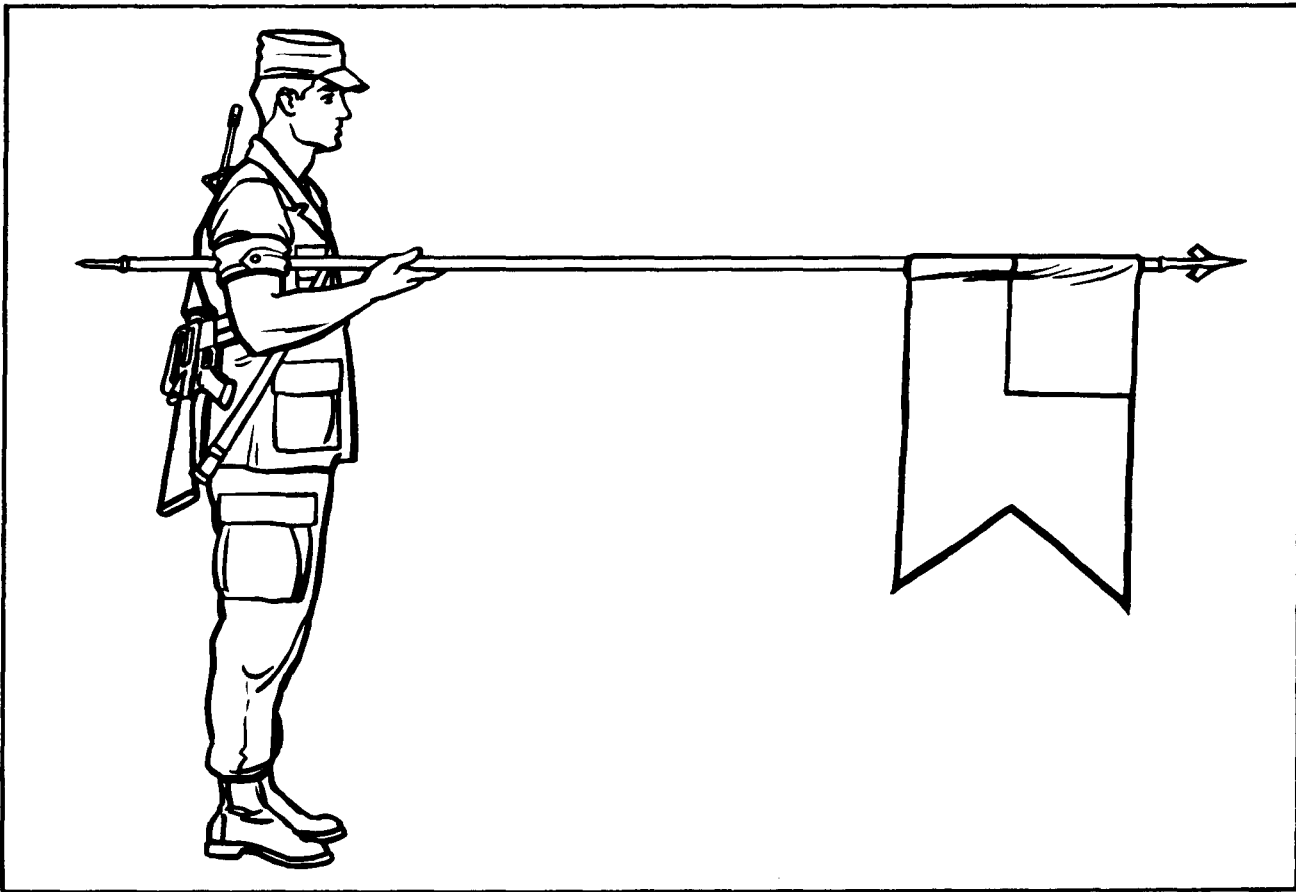


Figure C-5. Present Guidon

C-7. Guidon Bearer's Salute

- a. When the guidon bearer (not in formation) has to *salute* from the *order* or *carry* position, the *salute* is given with the left hand. Move the left hand sharply to a position so that the first joint of the forefinger is touching the staff. The fingers

and thumb are extended and joined, palm down, wrist straight, and forearm horizontal (Figure C-7).

- b. After the *salute* is acknowledged, return the left hand sharply to the side.
- c. When at *double time* (not in formation), return to *quick time*, returning the guidon to the *carry* position and render the *guidon salute* as previously described (subparagraph a). Upon completing the *salute* return to the *carry* position and resume *double time* (Figure C-6).

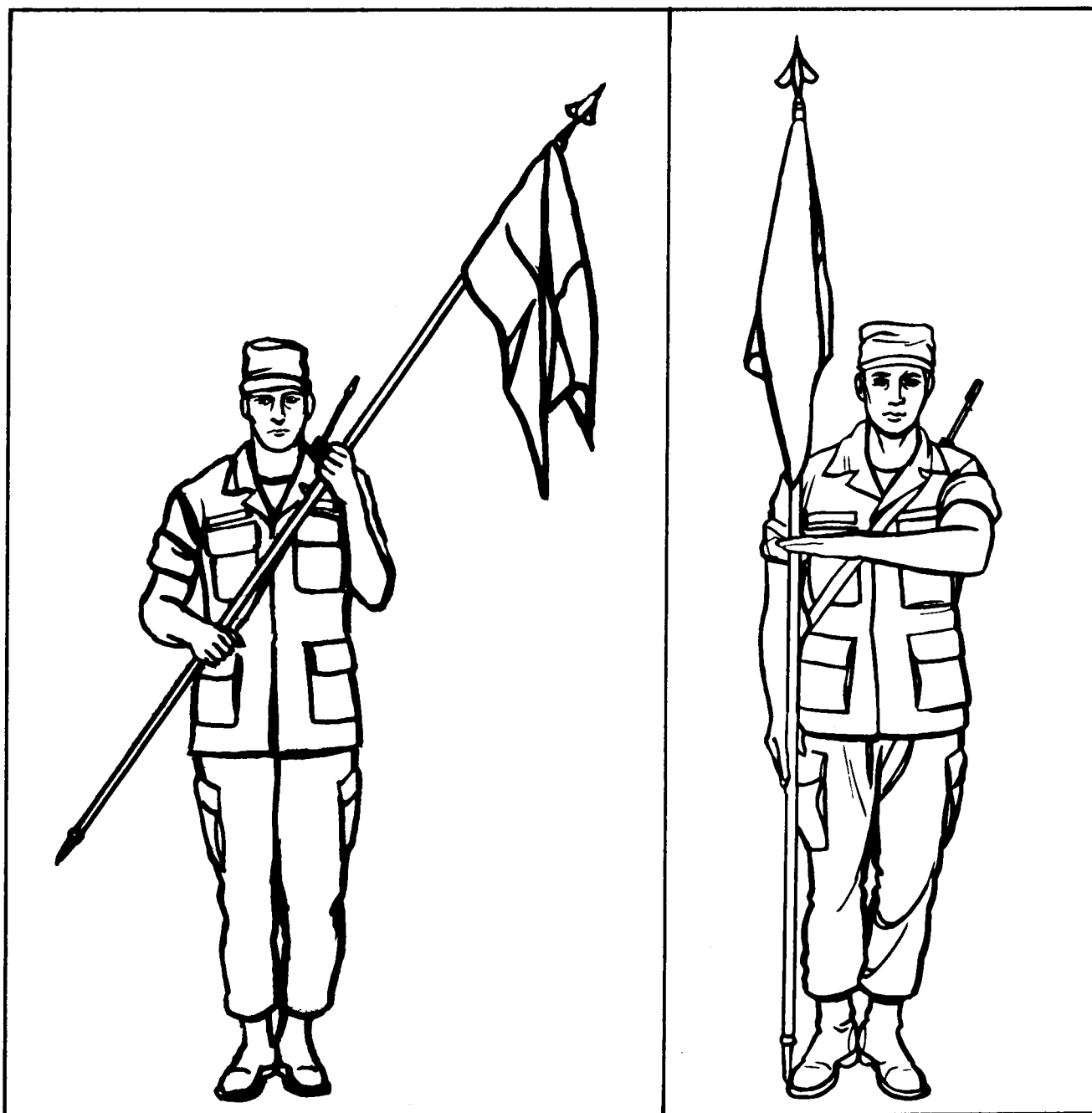


Figure C-6. Double Time

Figure C-7. Individual Salute

APPENDIX D

Mounted Drill

D-1. General

- a. This appendix contains the procedure for the orderly formation and movement of vehicles during drill and ceremonies for motorized and mechanized units. When necessary, the procedures may be modified to conform to local conditions.
- b. Motorized and mechanized units, when dismounted, conduct drill and ceremonies in the same manner as prescribed for infantry units.
- c. When mounted in vehicles, visible troops sit at *attention*. Those armed with a rifle place the butt of the weapon alongside the right foot in the same manner as *order arms*, with the weapon vertical and parallel to the calf of the leg. Grasp the weapon with the right hand so that the right forearm is horizontal. Visible troops not armed with a rifle, fold their arms (right over the left) and raise the elbows so that the upper arms are horizontal.
- d. When marching units and motorized and / or mechanized units take part in the same ceremony: the units form *dismounted* (in a formation corresponding to the marching units) with their vehicles to the rear. On the directive **PASS IN REVIEW**, the commander *faces about* and directs **At your vehicles, FALL IN** or **MOUNT (LOAD) YOUR VEHICLES**. Subordinate commanders and leaders, in sequence from right to left, command **At your vehicles, FALL IN (MOUNT YOUR VEHICLES)** and all vehicle members *double time* to their vehicle. On the signal to mount, they mount their vehicle. Drivers observe their commander or leader for the signal to start engines.

D-2. Formations

- a. The formations for motorized and mechanized units are basically the same as for infantry units. The interval between vehicles is about five steps. The distance is about 10 steps between vehicles one behind the other.
 - (1) **Column.** In this formation, the vehicles are placed one behind the other, and the right edges of the vehicles are aligned.
 - (2) **Line.** In this formation, vehicles are abreast, and the front edges of the vehicles are aligned.
 - (3) **Mass.** A unit formed with two or more columns abreast constitutes a mass. Masses may be grouped as follows:
 - (a) **LINE OF MASSES.** Masses abreast with ten-step intervals (Figure D-1).
 - (b) **COLUMN OF MASSES.** Masses placed one behind another with ten-step intervals between companies (Figure D-2).
 - (c) **LINE OF BATTALIONS IN LINE OF MASSES.** Battalions in line of masses abreast with 20-step intervals between battalions.
 - (d) **LINE OF BATTALIONS IN COLUMN OF MASSES.** Battalions in column of masses abreast with 20-step intervals between battalions.

- (e) COLUMN OF BATTALIONS IN LINE OF MASSES. Battalions in line of masses, placed one behind another, with 20-step intervals between battalions.
 - (f) COLUMN OF BATTALIONS IN COLUMNS OF MASSES. Battalions in column of masses, placed one behind another, with 20-step intervals between battalions.
- b. Mass formations may be used for ceremonies or instruction by companies or larger units.

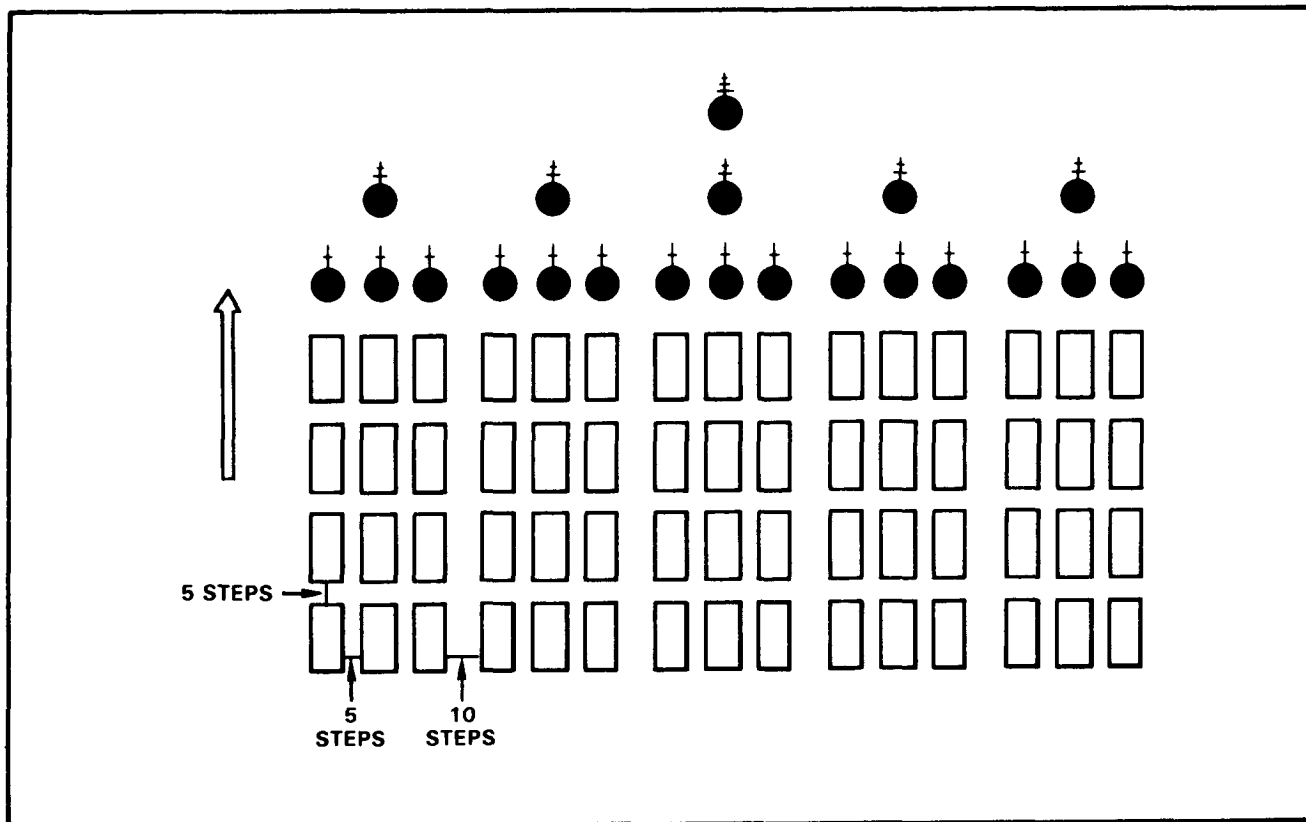


Figure D-1. Armor Battalions, Line of Mass with Vehicles in Mass Formation

D-3. Formation at Vehicles

- a. To format the vehicles from any formation, the command is **At your vehicles, FALL IN**. At the command **FALL IN**, the men move (*double time*) to their assigned vehicles and form as shown in Figure D-3. When there are more than five men, they form two or three ranks with normal distance. When there are more than 15 men, the number of men per rank may be increased. (Artillery sections form as prescribed in service-of-the-piece manuals.)
- b. To load, the command is **Load, VEHICLES**. On the command of execution **VEHICLES**, each man *double times* and forms at his vehicle (as previously described).

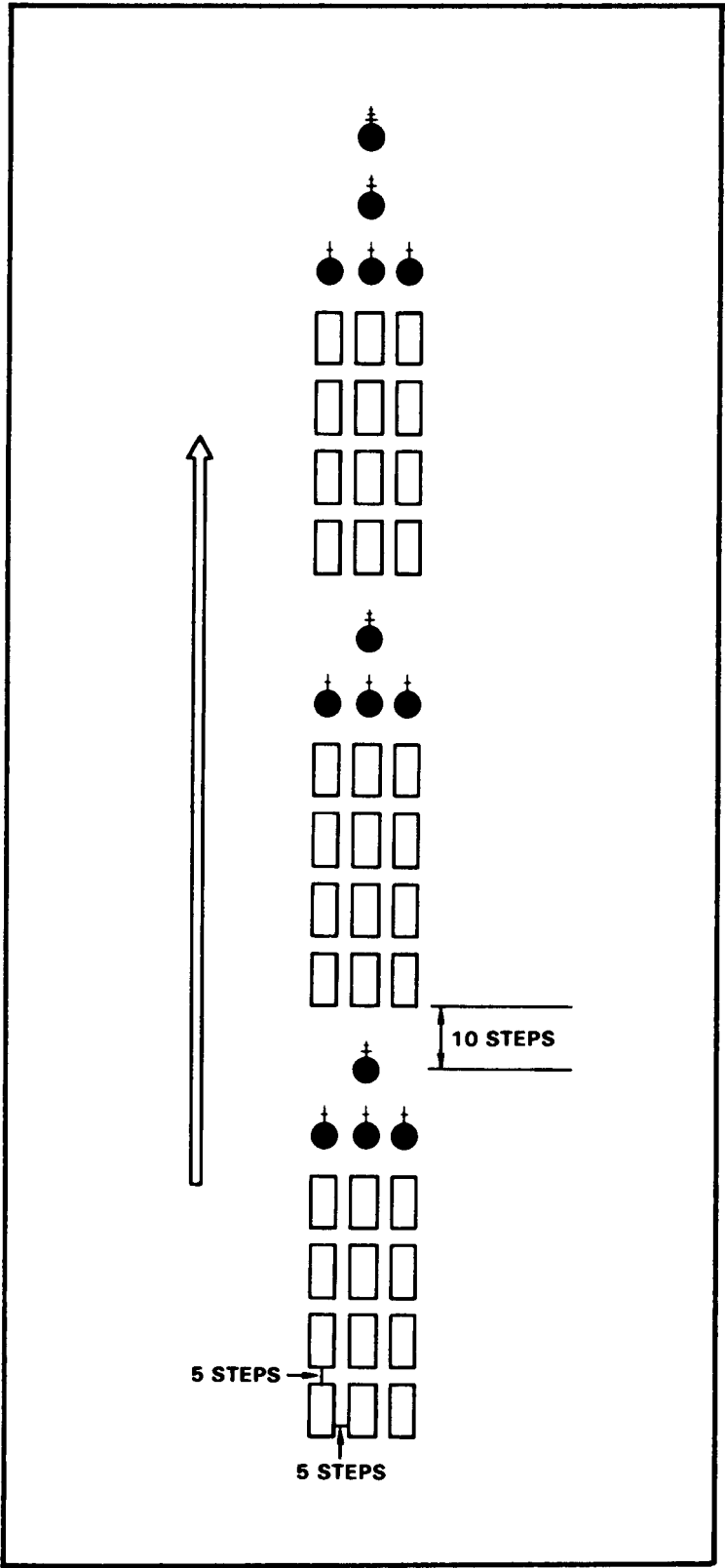


Figure D-2. Column of Masses

D-4. Movement of Vehicles

- a. To move forward, the commander gives the warning signal **FORWARD**, and his vehicle moves out. The other vehicles move forward at the designated distance. They are aligned on the base vehicle (right).
- b. To *halt*, the commander signals **HALT**. The driver then slows down and *halts* the commander's vehicle. The other vehicles close to the prescribed distance and *halt*.
- c. To change the direction of travel of mass formation, the commander gives the appropriate signal. On the commander's signal, the base vehicle turns 90-degrees and slows. Other vehicles turn about 45-degrees and continue traveling in an arc at normal speed until on line with the base vehicle. As the vehicles form online, the base vehicle accelerates as necessary to maintain correct distance on the commander.

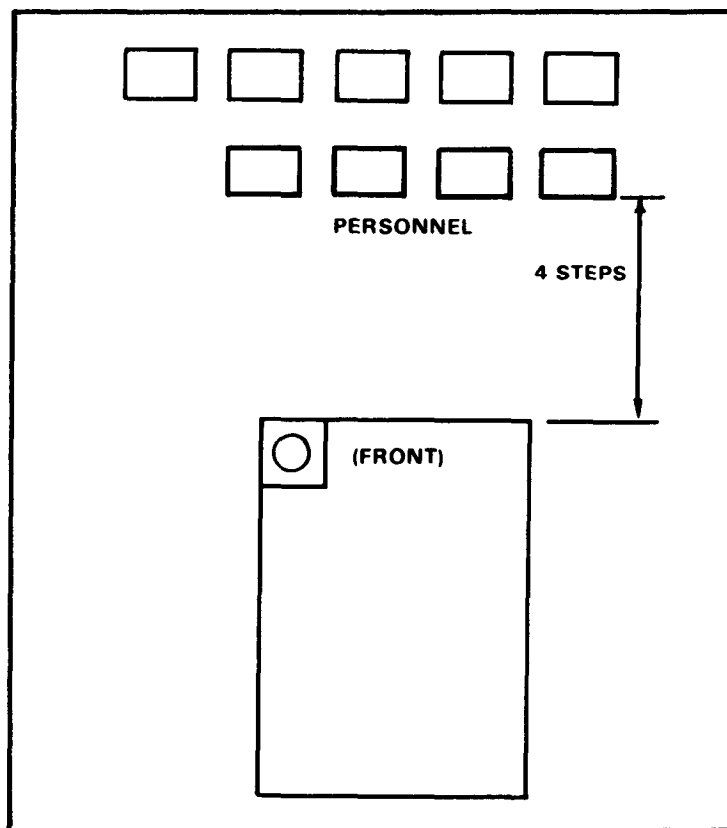


Figure D-3. Formation at the Vehicle

- d. To change a line formation to a column formation, the commander signals for a column. The base vehicle, and those directly behind it, move forward. Other vehicles move at a 45 degree angle until in line with the lead vehicle and then execute a 45-degree turn.
- e. To change a column formation to a line formation, the commander signals a line formation. The base (right flank vehicle) stops and all other vehicles turn at a

45-degree angle, turn again at a 45-degree angle when the prescribed interval is obtained, and then halt when on line with the base vehicle.

D-5. Mounted Reviews

- a. Motorized and mechanized units conduct ceremonies as close as possible to the procedures prescribed for other units. They may participate (exactly as prescribed for marching units) as a dismounted unit, and on the directive **PASS IN REVIEW**, mount their vehicles and pass in review mounted.
- b. When desired, motorized and mechanized units may position their vehicles in a prescribed formation and remain mounted throughout the ceremony.

APPENDIX E

Flags and Colors

E-1. General

- a. For occasions when the flag of the United States is raised, lowered, or flown at half-staff, see AR 600-25 and paragraph E-2 and E-3.
- b. When the flag is to be flown at half-staff, it is first hoisted to the top of the flagpole and then lowered to the half-staff position. Before lowering the flag, it is again raised to the top of the flagpole and then lowered (AR 840-10).
- c. Normally, a flag detail consists of one noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), two halyard pullers, and two to eight flag handlers. The purpose of the flag handlers is to ensure correct folding (unfolding) of the flag and to ensure that the flag does not touch the ground. As a guide, two flag handlers are needed when raising or lowering the storm (small) flag, six handlers for the post (medium) flag, and eight handlers for the garrison (large) flag (paragraph E-5).
- d. The members of the flag detail are equipped according to local standing operating procedure and/or letter of instructions.
- e. The NCOIC inconspicuously gives the necessary commands or directives to ensure proper performance by the flag detail. On windy days, he may assist the flag handlers to secure or fold the flag.

E-2. Raising the Flag (Reveille)

- a. The NCOIC forms the detail in a column of twos at *double interval* between files. He secures the flag from its storage area and positions himself between the files and on line with the last two men. He then *marches* the detail to the flagpole.
- b. The detail is *halted* in column, *facing* the flagpole on the downwind side. They are *halted* so that the flagpole is centered between the halyard pullers. The NCOIC commands **POST**. On this command, the halyard pullers immediately move to the flagpole and ensure that the halyards are free of the pole. The flag handlers *face* to the center. The NCOIC then directs **UNFOLD THE FLAG**. On this directive, the two flag handlers nearest the NCOIC begin to (carefully) *unfold* the flag lengthwise, passing the freed end to the other handlers. When the two handlers nearest the flagpole have firmly secured the flag, the other handlers move away from the flagpole (as necessary) until the flag is fully extended. The flag is not *unfolded* widthwise. The flag handlers hold the flag waist high with their forearms horizontal to the ground (Figure E-1).

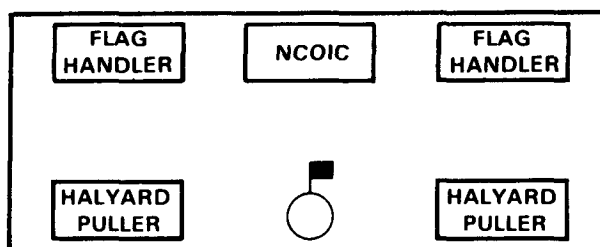


Figure E-1. Flag Detail

- c. At the appropriate time, the NCOIC directs **ATTACH THE FLAG**. On this directive, all flag handlers take one *side step* toward the flagpole. The two handlers nearest the flagpole immediately attach the top of the flag to the halyard. The halyard pullers raise the flag until the bottom of the flag can be attached.

NOTE: When raising the larger flags, the NCOIC may command *Side step*, **MARCH** and **HALT** while the halyard pullers raise the halyard until the lower portion of the flag is attached.

- d. At the first note of the music, the reveille gun is fired and the halyard pullers rapidly raise the flag. The NCOIC *salutes*. As the flag is raised from the handlers' hands, they *face* the flagpole and *salute*. (Reveille is about 20 seconds in duration.) At the last note of the music, the NCOIC commands **Order, ARMS** for himself and the flag handlers while the pullers secure the halyards. The NCOIC then positions himself between the halyard pullers, executes an *about face*, and commands **Ready, FACE**. The detail will *face* in the appropriate direction to depart the flag pole. He then *marches* the detail from the site.

E-3. Lowering the Flag (Retreat)

- a. The detail is *marched* and positioned at the flagpole in the same manner as when raising the flag. On the command **POST**, the halyard pullers free the halyards, untangle them, ensure that they are free from the pole, and then temporarily resecure them; the flag handlers do not *face* to the center. The NCOIC then commands **Parade, REST**.
- b. At the cannon shot or at the last note of "Retreat" (if a cannon is not fired), each halyard puller immediately frees the halyards. The NCOIC commands himself and the flag handlers to **ATTENTION** and **Present, ARMS**. At the first note of "To the Color," the flag is lowered slowly and with dignity.

NOTE: The call, "To the Color," is approximately 40 seconds in duration. As the flag is lowered to within reach, the two flag handlers farthest away from the flag terminate their *salute*, move forward rapidly, secure the flag, and move back from the flagpole. As the flag passes each handler, he terminates his *salute* and assists in securing the flag. The NCOIC terminates his *salute* at the last note of the music. Once the flag is detached, it is then folded (Figure 9-17). After securing the halyard, the handlers assist in the folding. After the flag has been folded and received by the NCOIC, the detail is *marched* to the storage site. Once the flag has been folded (cocked hat), it is treated as a cased Color and not *saluted* by persons meeting the flag detail.

E-4. Display

The flag of the United States represents the living country and is considered a living thing.

- a. Rules and customs for displaying of the US flag, adopted by an act of Congress in 1942 and amended in 1976, are found in Title 36 of the United States Code.

NOTE: No other flag or pennant should be placed above or, if on the same level, to the right of the flag of the United States of America except during church services conducted by naval chaplains at sea, when the church pennant may be flown above the flag during church services for Navy personnel, and except as required by multinational agreements to which the United States is a signatory.

- b. The union, the field of blue with the grouping of stars representing the individual states, is the honor point and is the flag's right. When the flag is displayed, the

union is always to the top and to the flag's own right (the left of the observer). When carried, the flag is always free, never stretched flat or carried horizontally. In the company of other flags, the US flag is always on the marching right (the flag's own right), or if there is a line of other flags, in front of the center of that line. When a number of flags of states, or localities, or pennants of societies are grouped and displayed from staffs, the US flag is in the center and at the highest point of the group. If all flags are displayed from staffs of the same height, the flag of the United States is placed in the honor position, to the right of the other flags (to the left of the observer). When flags of two or more nations are displayed, they are flown from separate staffs of the same height, they are of approximately equal size, and the US flag is to the right of the others.

NOTE: When the US flag is flown in conjunction with other national flags, care must be taken to ensure that the foreign national flag is correct and properly displayed.

- c. The flag of the United States is never used as drapery. It is displayed hung flat against a wall or flown free from a staff. It is not festooned over doorways or arches, tied in a bow, or fashioned into a rosette. It is not used to cover a speaker's desk or draped over the front of a platform. For those purposes, bunting may be used, giving the blue of the bunting the place of honor at the top of the arrangement or in the center of the rosette. Traditionally, there is one permissible departure from the rules for display of the flag of the United States: in a dire emergency, the flag may be flown upside down as a distress signal.

NOTE: For a detailed explanation of the regulations concerning the flag of the United States and other flags and colors see ARs 640-10 and 600-25.

E-5. Classification

- a. A flag as distinguished from a Color is not *saluted* except during the ceremonies of raising and lowering the flag. US flags used by the Army are classified by size as follows:
 - (1) **Garrison Flag.** It is 20 feet hoist by 38 feet fly of nylon wool and displayed on holidays and important occasions.
 - (2) **Post Flag.** It is 8 feet 11 3/8 inch hoist by 17 feet fly of nylon and used for general display, and flown daily.
 - (3) **Field Flag.** It is 6 feet 8 inches hoist by 12 feet fly of nylon wool and used for display with the positional field flag.
 - (4) **Storm Flag.** It is 5 feet hoist by 9 feet 6 inches fly of nylon and flown during inclement weather.
 - (5) **Interment Flag.** It is 5 feet hoist by 9 feet 6 inches fly of cotton bunting.
- b. A Color is the US flag trimmed on three sides with golden yellow fringe 2 1/2 inches wide. The Color is primarily for indoor display. US Colors used by the Army are classified by size as follows:
 - (1) Four feet 4 inches hoist by 5 feet 6 inches fly displayed with the US Army flag, positional colors, the Corps of Cadets Colors, 1st Battalion 3rd Infantry Colors, and the chapel flag.
 - (2) Three feet hoist by 4 feet fly displayed with the Army field flag, distinguishing flags, organizational colors, institutional flags, and the chapel flag.

- c. Other types of military flags include:
 - (1) **Colors.** These are flags of organizations and certain civilian and military officials.
 - (2) **Standards.** A name formerly used for flags of mounted units.
 - (3) **Distinguished Flags.** They identify headquarters, offices, general officers, and organizations, none of which is authorized organizational or individual colors.
 - (4) **Ensign.** It is a rectangular flag flown from aircraft, ships, and boats.
 - (5) **Guidon.** This is a swallow-tailed flag carried by companies, batteries, troops, and certain detachments.
 - (6) **Pennant.** This is a triangular flag used for various utility purposes.
- d. Dismounted organizations traditionally carried the Color while mounted (cavalry, mechanized, and motorized) organizations traditionally carried the standard. Colors were larger than standards. Under present regulations, both are called Colors.
- e. The organizational color is dipped in *salute* during the playing of the United States National Anthem, "To the Color," "Taps" (funerals only), and during the ceremony at reveille. It is dipped in *salute* when rendering honors to the organization's commander or to a person of higher grade, but at no other time. . The US flag is never dipped in *salute*.
- f. Until 1813, the colors of an infantry regiment were carried by ensigns, who were the lowest ranking officers of the regiment. In that year, the regulations were changed and the work was entrusted to Color sergeants. Noncommissioned officers carry them today.

E-6. Army Flags

- a. The United States Army flag is 4 feet 4 inches (hoist) by 5 feet 6 inches (fly) and is trimmed on three sides with yellow fringe 2 1/2 inches in width. On Flag Day, 14 June 1956, the 181st anniversary of the US Army, the newly adopted United States Army flag was publicly unfurled at Independence Hall, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, by the Honorable Wilbur M. Brucker, Secretary of the Army. The flag, of white silk, bears an embroidered replica of the official seal of the Department of the Army in ultramarine blue (without the roman numerals). A scarlet scroll inscribed "United States Army" in white is centered between the device and the ultramarine blue numerals "1775" denoting the year the Army was founded, by action of the Continental Congress, 14 June 1775. The original War Office seal, constituting the central design of the flag, was authorized by the Continental Congress on 8 May 1779. The US Army flag bears all the streamers representing the Army's campaigns since its inception. (When not being carried, the Yorktown streamer should always be prominently displayed.)
- b. The Army field flag was authorized in 1962 and is the same as the United States Army flag except that it is 3 feet (hoist) by 4 feet (fly), the background is ultramarine blue, the seal is white, the scroll is white, "United States Army" is scarlet, the numerals "1775" are white, and streamers are not authorized. The flag is issued to those organizations and headquarters not authorized the United States Army flag. (Units authorized issue are specified in AR 840-10.)

E-7. Courtesies by Individuals

For courtesies by individuals in various dress and circumstances, see charts 1 through 4.

COURTESIES BY INDIVIDUALS (Adapted from AR 600-25, Appendix A.)					
1. MILITARY PERSONNEL IN UNIFORM (WITH OR WITHOUT HEADRESS) AND IN FORMATION.					
REVEILLE	RETREAT WHEN PLAYED AS PRELUDE TO "TO THE COLOR"	"TO THE COLOR" OR NATIONAL ANTHEM	WHEN UNCASSED COLORS PASS BY OR WHEN PASSING UNCASSED COLORS	CANNON SALUTES RENDERED AS HONOR TO A PERSON (NOTE 1)	MILITARY FUNERALS
Execute present arms and order arms at the command of OIC or NCOIC.	Execute parade rest at the command of OIC or NCOIC. Remain at <u>parade rest</u> until given <u>attention</u> by OIC or NCOIC.	Same as for reveille	COLORS ARE PASSING: Execute present arms at the <u>command of OIC or NCOIC</u> . Command is given when Colors are within six paces of the flank of the unit, and the salute is held until the Colors are six paces past the flank of the unit, at which time the <u>command order arms</u> is given. PASSING THE COLORS: Execute orders at the command of OIC or NCOIC.	Execute present arms at the command of OIC or NCOIC. Hold salute until command order arms is given by OIC or NCOIC.	Execute present arms at the command of OIC or NCOIC.
Notes: 1. When the cannon salute to the Union or nation is fired, no individual action is required. 2. Military photographers covering ceremonies will render appropriate courtesy during the playing of the National Anthem.					

COURTESIES BY INDIVIDUALS

2. MILITARY PERSONNEL IN UNIFORM (WITH OR WITHOUT HEADRESS) NOT IN FORMATION.

REVEILLE	RETREAT WHEN PLAYED AS PRELUDE TO "TO THE COLOR"	"TO THE COLOR" OR NATIONAL ANTHEM	WHEN UNCASSED COLORS PASS BY OR WHEN PASSING UNCASSED COLORS	CANNON SALUTES RENDERED AS HONOR TO A PERSON (NOTE 1)	MILITARY FUNERALS
At the first note of music, face the flag (or music if flag is not in view) and render hand salute. End salute on last note of music.	At the first note of music, face the flag (or music if flag is not in view) and stand at <u>attention</u> . Hold that position until the last note of "Retreat" has been played.	(Note 2) At the first note of music: if outdoors, render hand salute; if indoors, stand at attention. Hold that position until last note of music has been played.	COLORS ARE PASSING: When Colors are within six paces: if outdoors, render hand salute; if indoors, stand at attention. Hold that position until Colors have passed six paces. PASSING THE COLORS: Outdoors: When within six paces of the Colors, turn head in direction of the Colors and render hand salute. Hold salute until six paces past the Colors.	At the first note of music or first round of salute, face the ceremonial party and render hand salute. End salute on last note of music or when last round of salute has been fired.	Each time casket is moved: if outdoors, render hand salute; if indoors, stand at attention.

COURTESIES BY INDIVIDUALS

3. ALL MEN (CIVILIAN AND MILITARY) WEARING CIVILIAN CLOTHES (INCLUDING SPORTS UNIFORM) WITH HEADRESS.

REVEILLE	RETREAT WHEN PLAYED AS PRELUDE TO "TO THE COLOR"	"TO THE COLOR" OR NATIONAL ANTHEM	WHEN UNCASD COLORS PASS BY OR WHEN PASSING UNCASD COLORS	CANNON SALUTES RENDERED AS HONOR TO A PERSON (NOTE 1)	MILITARY FUNERALS
At the first note of music, face the flag (or music if flag is not in view), stand at attention, and remove headress with right hand and hold over left shoulder with right hand over the heart. Hold that position until last note of music has been played.	At the first note of music, face the flag (or music if flag is not in view), remove headress with right hand, and stand at attention. Remain at attention until last note of "Retreat" has been played.	(Note 2) At the first note of music: if outdoors, hold headress over the left shoulder with the right hand over the heart; if indoors, stand at attention. Hold that position until last note of music has been played.	COLORS ARE PASSING: When Colors are within six paces: if outdoors, stand at attention, remove headress with right hand, and hold over the left shoulder with right hand over the heart; if indoors, stand at attention. Hold that position until Colors have passed six paces. PASSING THE COLORS. Outdoors, when within six paces of Colors, turn head in direction of Colors, remove headress with right hand, and hold over left shoulder with right hand over the heart. Hold that position until six paces past the Colors.	At the first note of music or first round of salute, face the ceremonial party, remove headress, and stand at attention. Hold that position until last note of music or last round of salute has been fired.	Each time casket is moved: if outdoors, stand at attention, remove headress with right hand, and hold over the left shoulder with right hand over heart; if indoors, stand at attention.

COURTESIES BY INDIVIDUALS

4. MILITARY PERSONNEL AND CIVILIANS IN CIVILIAN DRESS WITHOUT HEADRESS. FEMALE PERSONNEL (CIVILIAN AND MILITARY NOT IN UNIFORM) WITH OR WITHOUT HEADRESS. PERSONNEL ENGAGED IN SPORTS AND ATTIRE IN SPORT UNIFORM WITHOUT HEADRESS.

REVEILLE	RETREAT WHEN PLAYED AS PRELUDE TO "TO THE COLOR"	"TO THE COLOR" OR NATIONAL ANTHEM	WHEN UNCASSED COLORS PASS BY OR WHEN PASSING UNCASSED COLORS	CANNON SALUTES RENDERED AS HONOR TO A PERSON (NOTE 1)	MILITARY FUNERALS
At the first note of music, face the flag (or music if flag is not in view) and stand at attention with right over heart. Hold that position until last note of music has been played	At the first note of music, face the flag (or music if flag is not in view) and stand at attention. Remain at attention until the last note of "Retreat" has been played.	(Note 2) At the first note of music: if outdoors, stand at attention with right hand over heart; if indoors, stand at attention. Hold that position until last note of music has been played.	COLORS ARE PASSING: When Colors are within six paces: if outdoors, stand at attention with right hand over heart; if indoors, stand at attention. Hold that position until Colors have passed six paces. PASSING THE COLORS: No action is required.	At the first note of music or first round of salute, face the ceremonial party and stand at attention. Hold that position until last note of music or last round of salute has been fired.	Each time casket is moved: if outdoors, stand at attention with right hand over heart; if indoors, stand at attention.

APPENDIX F

Manual of Arms—M249E1 Squad Automatic Weapon**F-1. General**

- a. This appendix contains procedures for executing the manual of arms with the M249E1 squad automatic weapon (SAW).

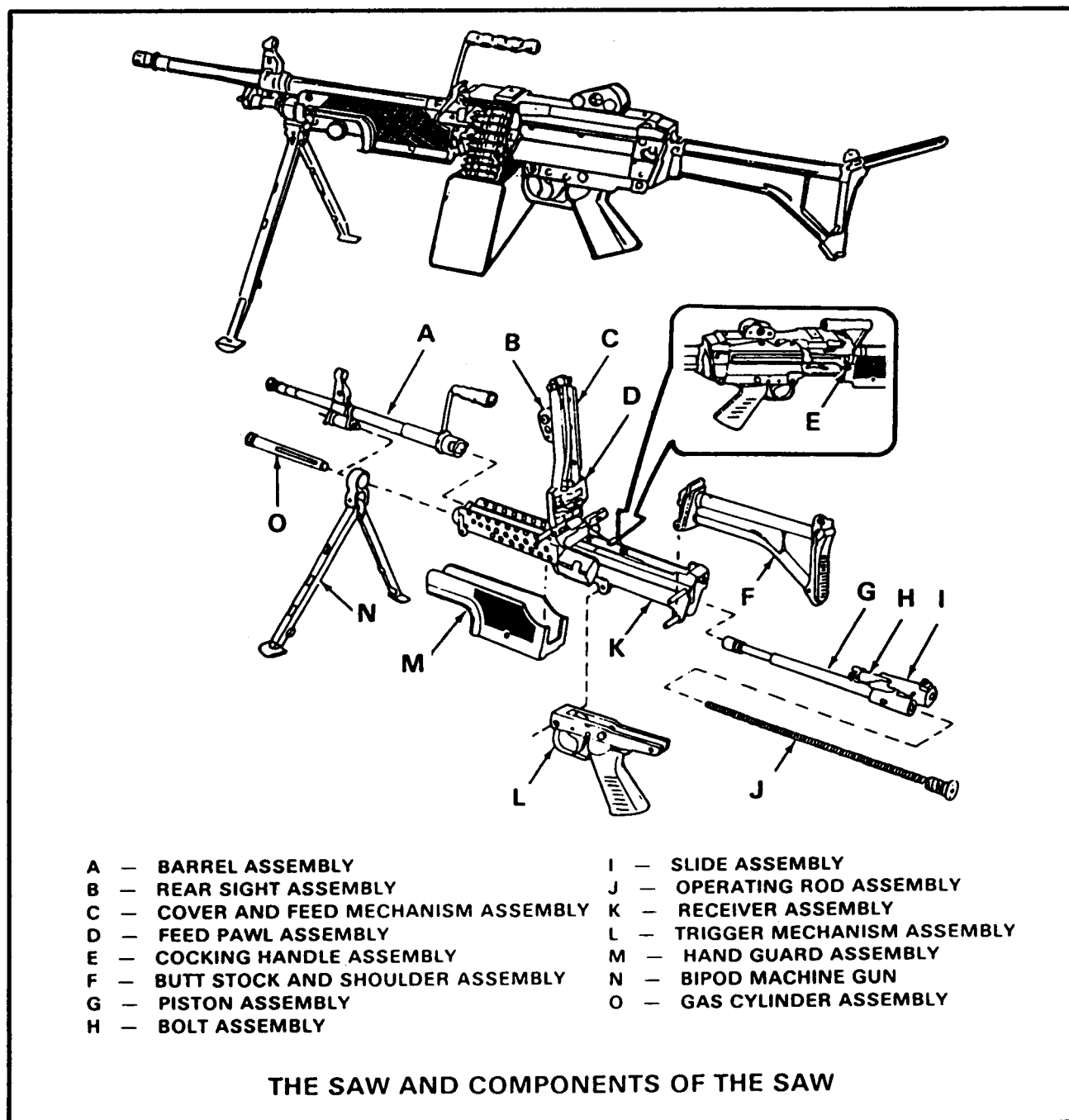


Figure F-1. M249E1

- b. The weapon is earned at *sling arms*. All individual drill movements (as applicable) are executed while at *sling arms*.
- c. When *at ease* or *rest* is commanded (from *parade rest*), the soldier *unslings* the weapon and places the butt of the weapon on the marching surface beside his right foot.
- d. The only manual of arms movements that may be executed are *present arms* (*present arms* at *sling arms*), *unslung arms*, *inspection arms*, and *ready port arms*. During other manual of arms movements, the soldier remains at *sling arms* (1, Figure F-2).

F-2. Inspection Arms

- a. The command for this movement is **Inspection, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* from *sling arms*. On the third count, grasp the pistol grip with the right hand and reach under the weapon with the left hand and grasp the cocking handle (the back of the hand faces toward the muzzle). On the fourth count, sharply push the cocking handle rearward so that the bolt is locked to the rear. On the fifth count, sharply return the cocking handle to its original position. On the sixth count, bring the left hand between the body and weapon, unlock the feed tray cover (with the thumb and forefinger), and raise the feed tray cover. On the seventh count, grasp the feed tray with the left hand, open the feed tray and feed tray cover as far as possible, and observe the chamber. On the eighth count, regrasp the handguard with the left hand and the comb of the stock with the right hand, and come to *inspection arms* (Figure F-2).

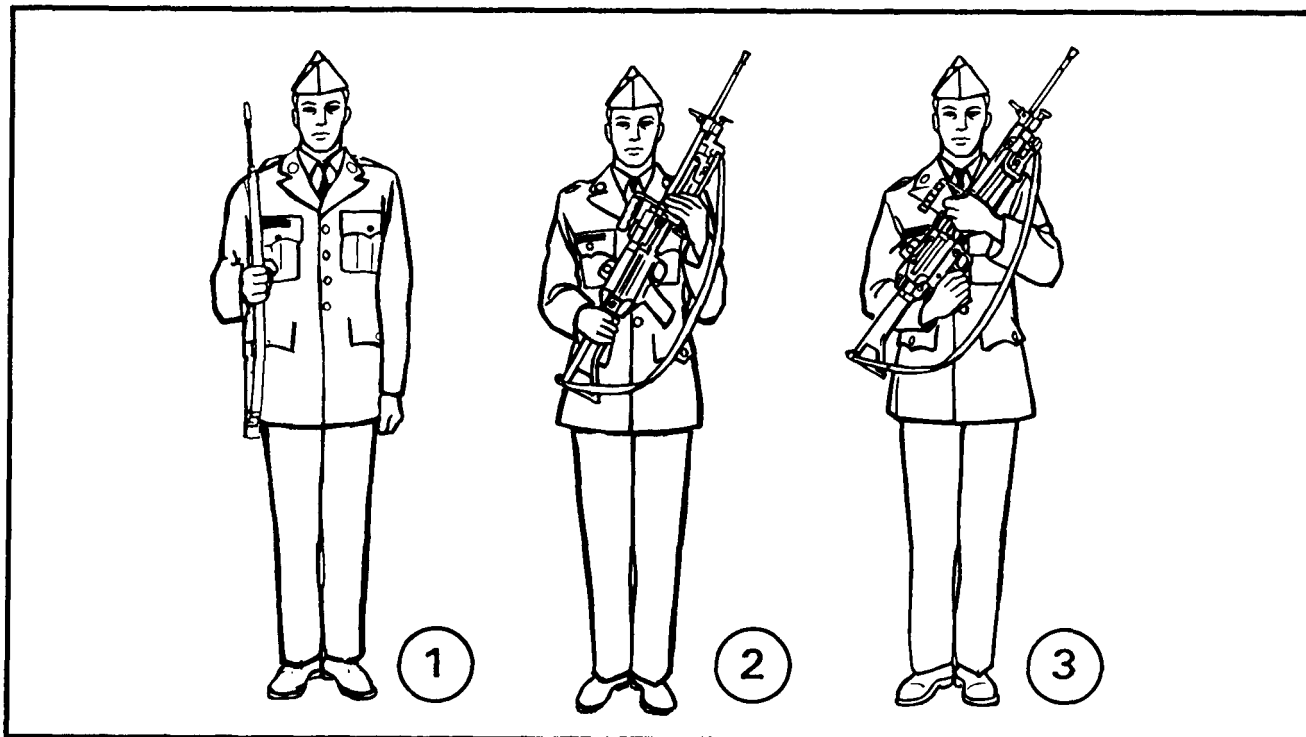
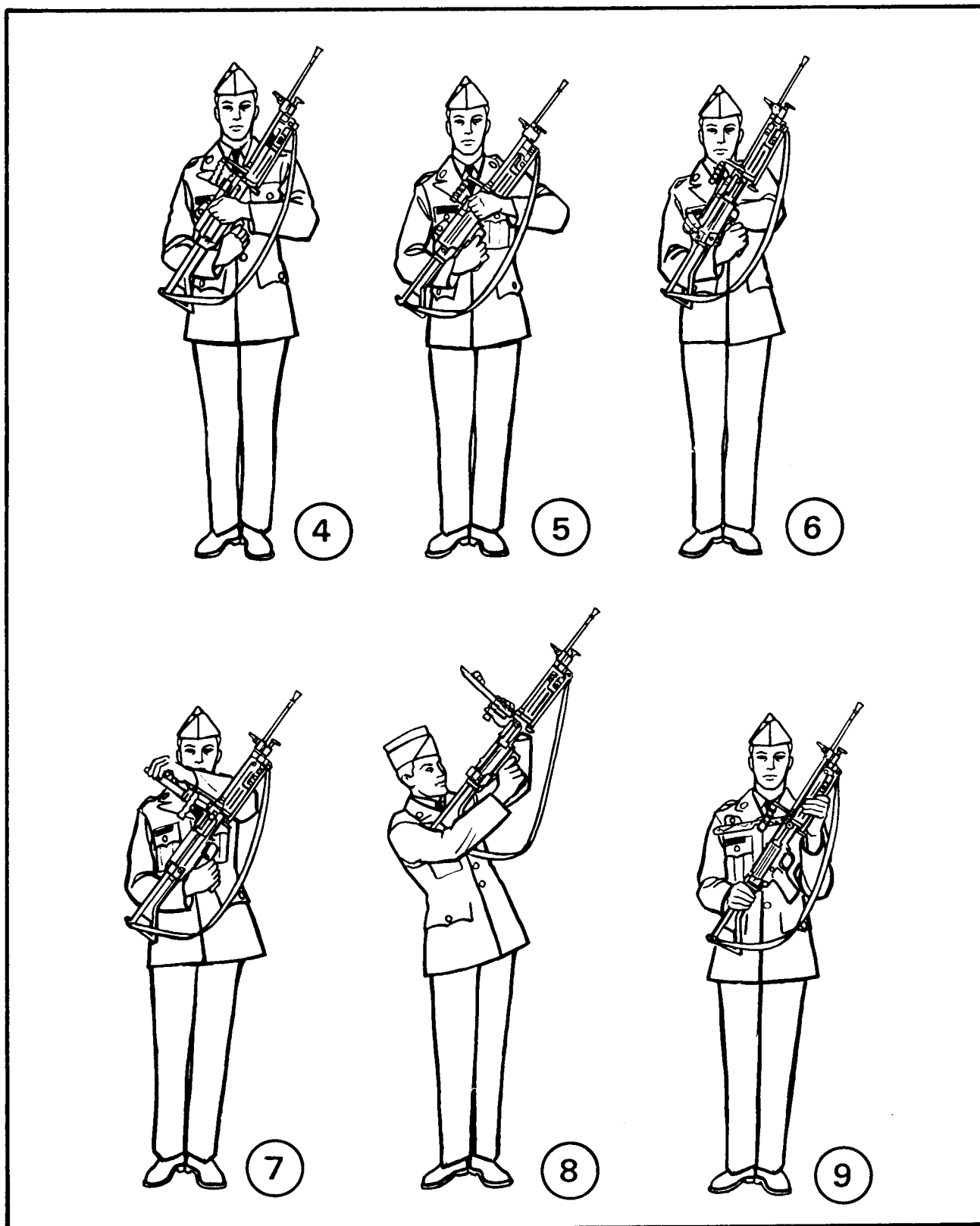


Figure F-2 - Inspection Arms



- b. **Ready, Port ARMS** is the only command that is given from *inspection arms*. On the command **Ready**, grasp the pistol grip with the right hand and the feed tray cover with the left hand and close the feed tray cover. On the command **Port**, grasp the cocking handle with the left hand and sharply push the cocking handle to its most rearward position. On the command **ARMS**, pull the trigger with the right forefinger and ride the bolt forward with the left hand, then return to the *port arms* position (Figure F-2).

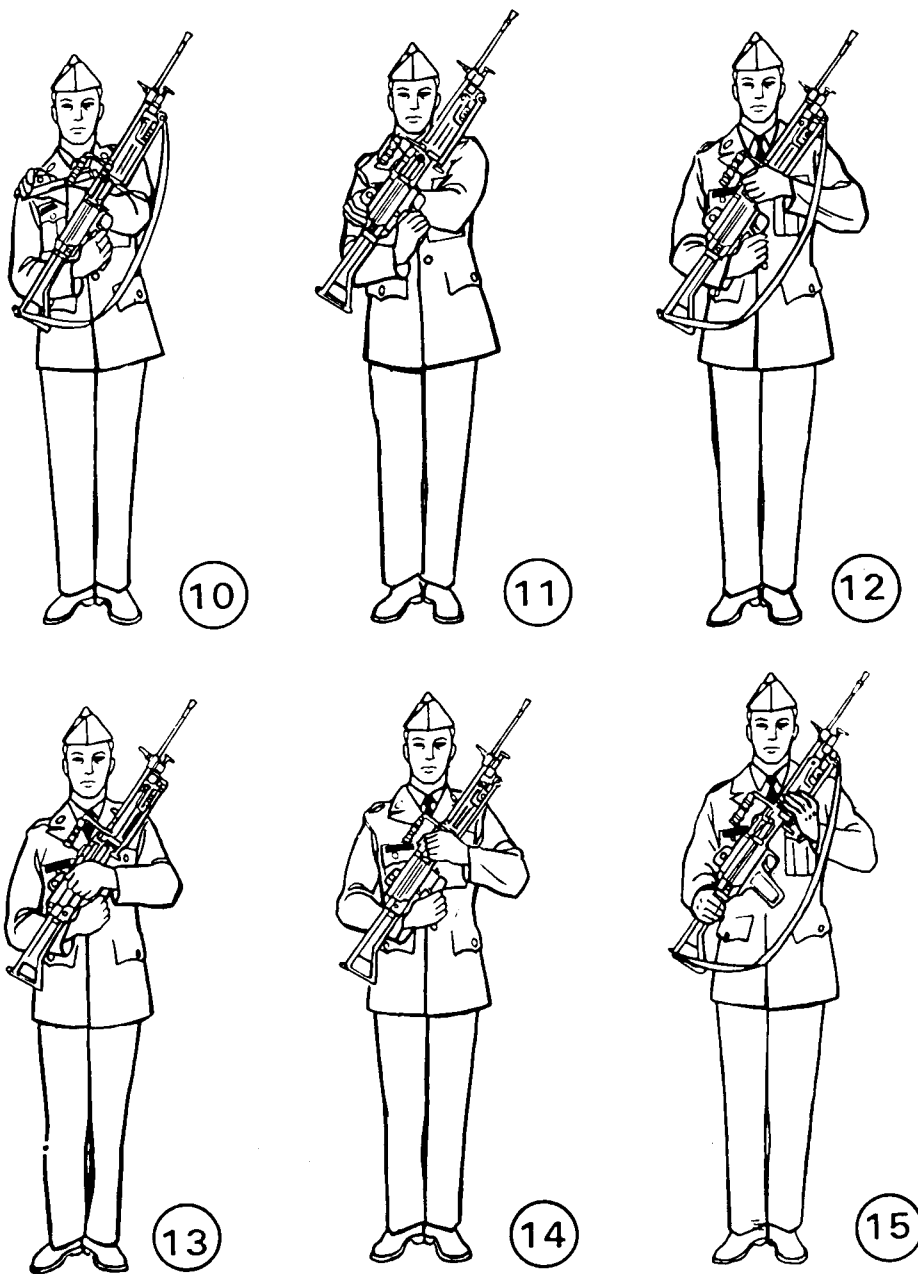


Figure F-2 - Continued

APPENDIX G

Manual of Arms—M14 and M14A1 Rifles

G-1. General

The manual of arms with the M14 (Figure G-1) and M14A1 rifles is executed in the same manner as the manual of arms for the M16 series rifle (Chapter 4) except *inspection arms, stack arms, order arms*, and some movements of *present arms*.

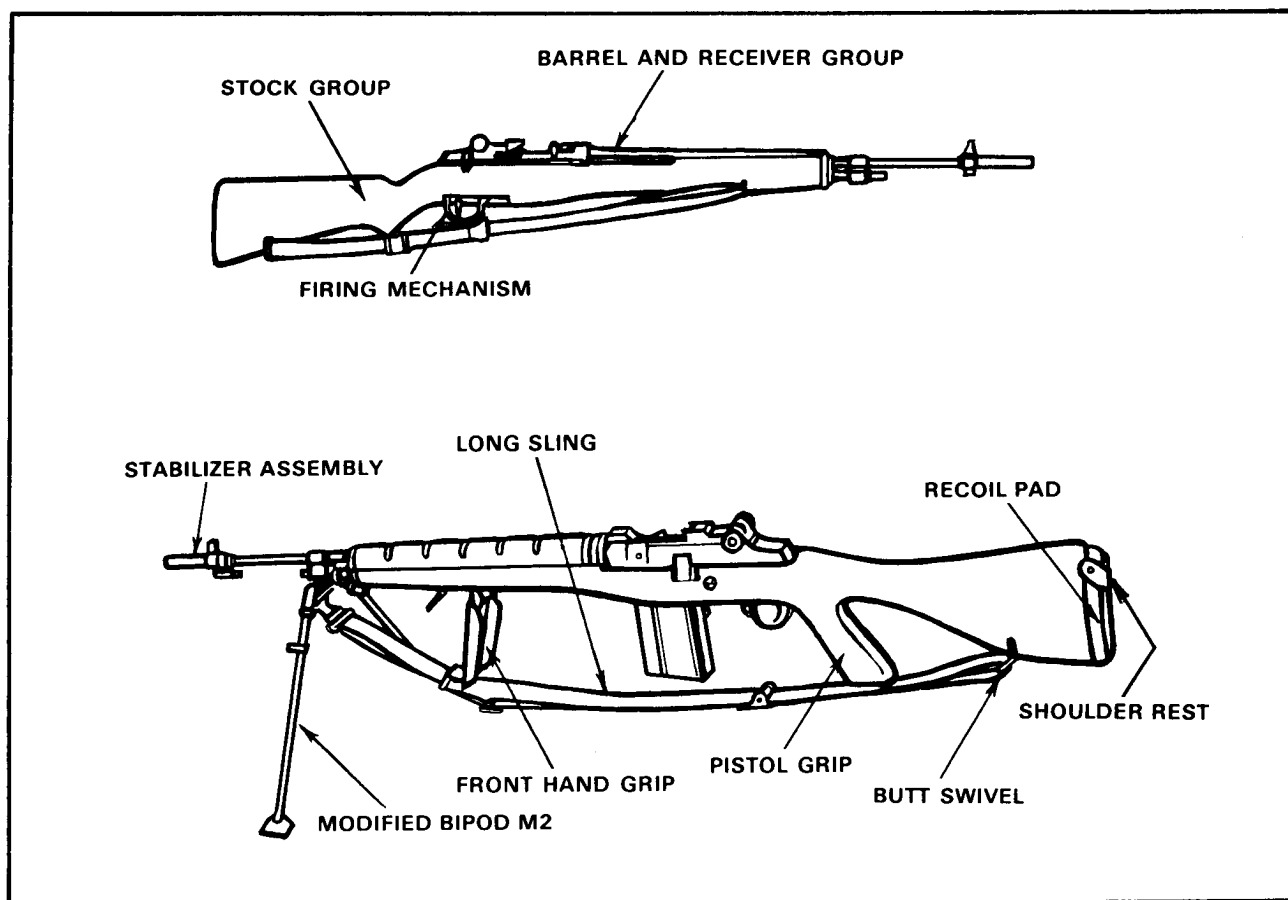


Figure G-1. Nomenclature, M14 Rifle

G-2. Order Arms

Execute *order arms* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle except place the butt of the rifle on the marching surface with the toe of the button line with the front of the right foot (Figure G-2).

G-3. Rest Position

Execute the *rest position* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle except keep the toe of the button line with the front of the right foot (Figure G-2).

G-4. Port Arms

Execute *port arms* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle except change the term of “forward of the balance” to “at the balance” (Figure G-2).

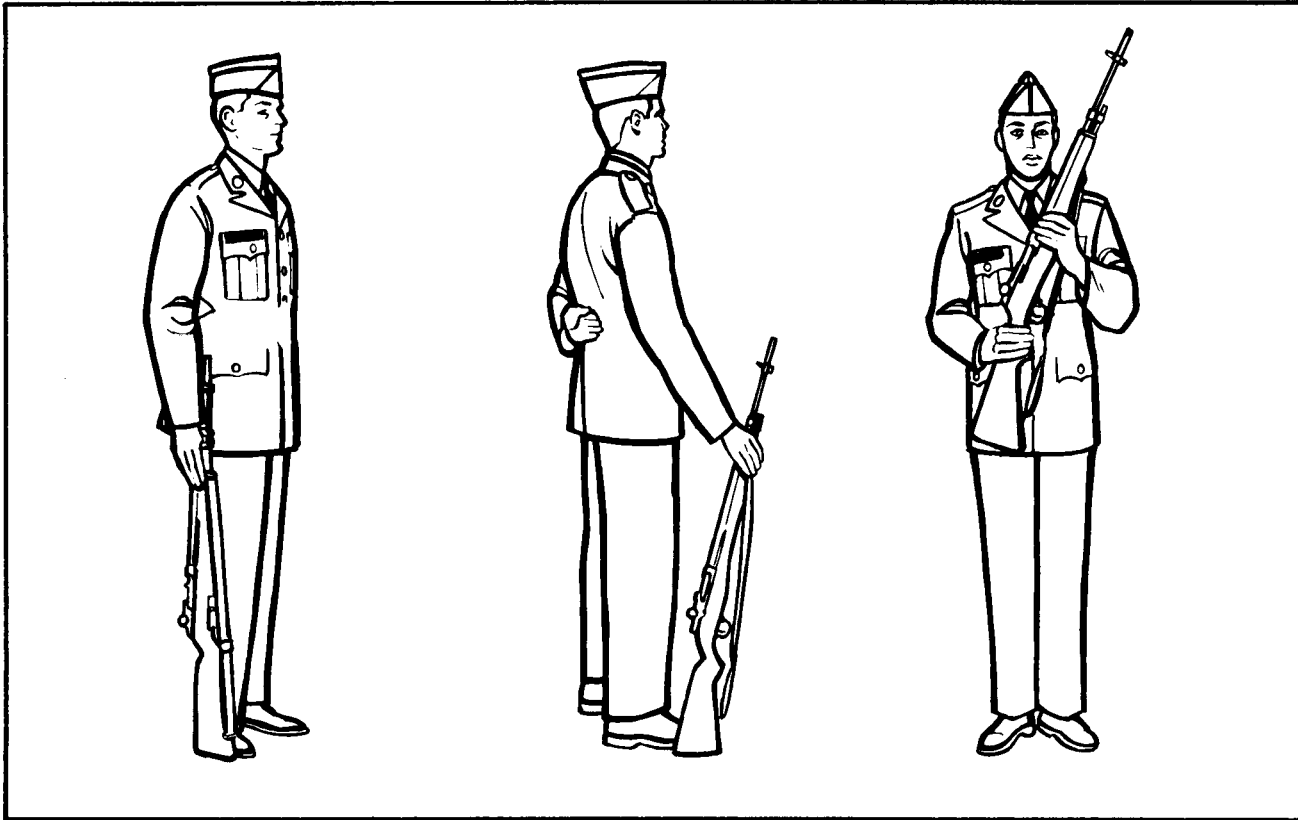


Figure G-2. Order Arms, Parade Rest, and Port Arms

G-5. Present Arms

- a. When at *order arms*, the left arm moves across the body on the first count with the forearm and wrist straight, fingers and thumb extended and joined, and palm down. The first joint of the forefinger touches the rifle at a point below the bayonet stud. If not in ranks, the head and eyes turn toward the person or Color *saluted*. On the second count, the left hand is moved smartly to the side and the head and eyes are turned to the front.

NOTE: When not at order arms, execute the movement in the same manner as previously described for the M16 series rifle.

- b. When at *right shoulder arms*, the movement is executed by moving the left arm across the chest and touching the first joint of the forefinger to the rear of the receiver. The left elbow is held so that the left forearm is horizontal. Fingers, thumb, and wrist are held as described in a. The palm is down. The second count of the rifle *salute* at *right shoulder arms* similar to the return from the rifle *salute* at *order arms*.

- c. When at *left shoulder arms*, the *salute* is executed by moving the right arm across the chest and touching the first joint of the forefinger to the rear of the receiver. The right elbow is held so that the forearm is horizontal. The fingers, thumb, and wrist are as described in a. The palm is down. The second count is similar to the return from the rifle *salute* at *right shoulder arms*.

G-6. Right Shoulder Arms

Execute *right shoulder arms* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle except change the term “charging” to “receiver” (Figure G-3).

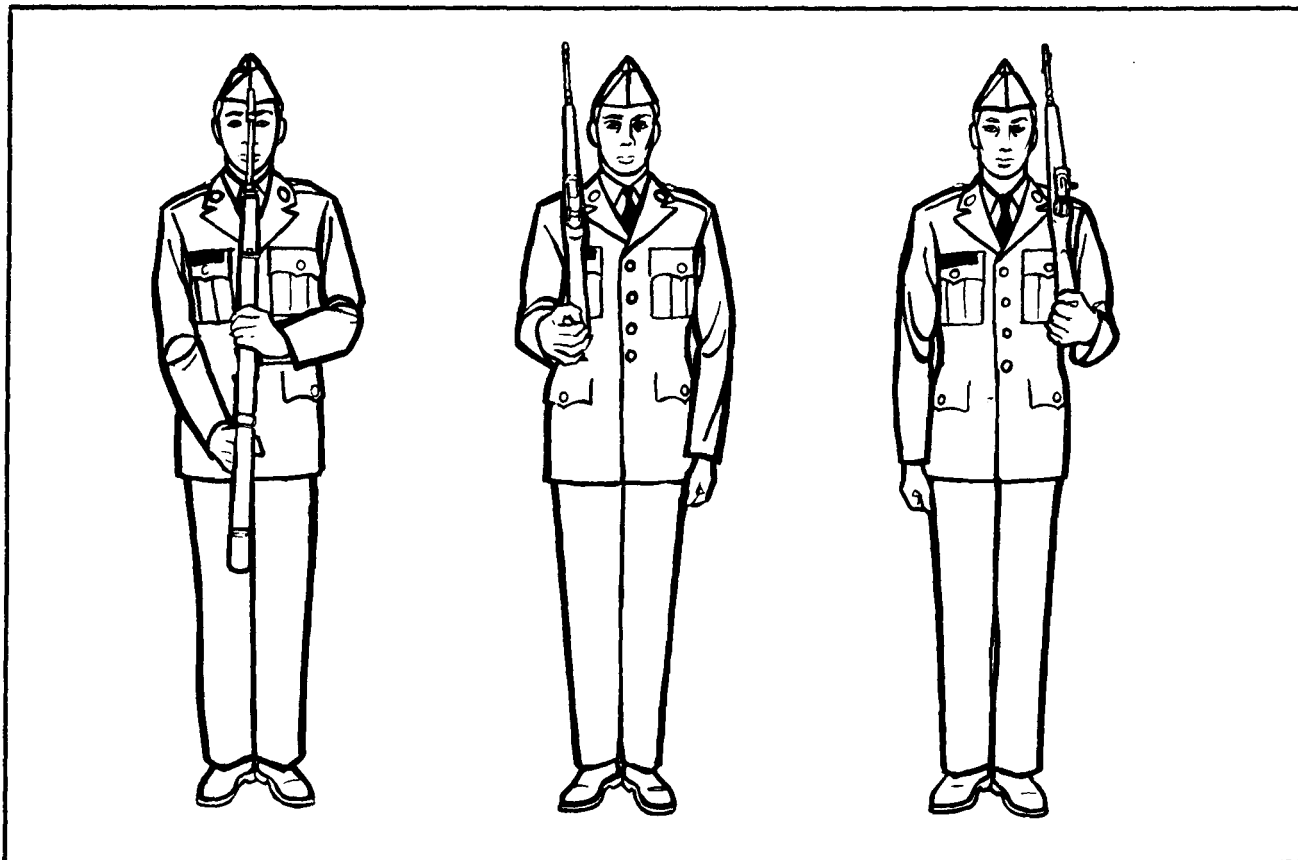


Figure G-3. Present Arms, Right Shoulder Arms, and Left Shoulder Arms

G-7. Left Shoulder Arms

Execute *left shoulder arms* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle (Figure G-3).

G-8. Inspection Arms

a. M14 Rifle (Figure G-4).

- (1) *Inspection arms* with the M14 rifle (FM 23-8) is executed in five counts. Counts one and two are the same as with the M16 series rifle (*port arms*). On count

three, release the small of the stock and move the right hand forward (fingers extended and joined, thumb on the opposite side of the receiver). Place the knife edge on the hand in contact with the operating rod handle. On count four, press the operating rod handle sharply to the rear and lock the bolt to the rear by pressing the bolt lock with the thumb. At the same time, lower the head and eyes to check the receiver. On count five, raise the head and eyes back to the front and regrip the small of the stock with the right hand, assuming the *inspection arms* position.

- (2) **Ready, Port, ARMS** is the only command that is given from *inspection arms*. On the command **Ready**, relax the grip of the right hand and hook the top of the forefinger to the rear. On the command **Port**, release the operating rod handle (allowing the bolt to go forward) and place the forefinger on the trigger. On the command of execution **ARMS**, pull the trigger and come to *port arms*.

b. M14A1 Rifle.

- (1) The command for this movement is **Inspection, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms*. The remaining movements are the same as with the M14 rifle (Figure G-4).
- (2) **Ready, Port, ARMS** is the only command that maybe given from *inspection arms*. The procedures are the same as for the M14 rifle.
- (3) The procedures for executing *inspection arms* with the magazine in the weapon are the same as for the M14 rifle.

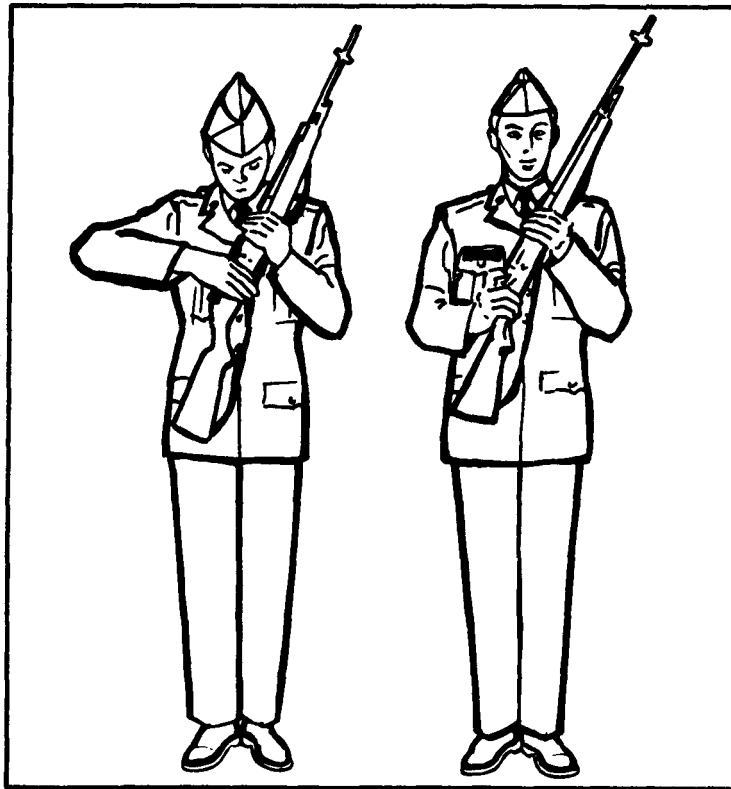


Figure G-4. Inspection Arms

G-9. Fix and Unfix Bayonets

Execute *fix* and *unfix bayonets* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle.

G-10. Sling Arms

Execute *sling arms* in the same manner as explained for the M16 series rifle.

G-11. Stack and Take Arms

- a. *Stack arms* is executed from *order arms* only. It may be executed while at *normal interval* in a line (squad) or a column formation. *Stack arms* is not a precise movement; however, it is executed in a military manner.
- b. The leader designates the stackmen by numbers (2-5-8) when in a line formation, or by squad (second or third) when in a column formation. After the stackmen have been designated, he then commands **Prepare, SLINGS**.
- c. On the command **SLINGS**, each stackman places the butt of his rifle on his right hip and cradles it in the crook of his right arm. He then adjusts the sling keeper to form a 2-inch loop next to the upper sling swivel. As soon as he has prepared the loop, he returns to *order arms*.
- d. When all stackmen have returned to *order arms*, the leader commands **Stack, ARMS**. On the command **ARMS**, each stackman places his rifle directly in front of and centered on his body with the sling facing to the front. The heel of the rifle butt is on the marching surface on line with the toes of his shoes. He grasps the rifle by the handguard with his left hand. The first two fingers of the left hand hold the inner part of the loop against the rifle. He reaches across the front of the rifle with the right hand, grasps the outer part of the loop, and holds it open for the insertion of the other rifles. He holds the rifle vertical at all times (1, Figure G-5).
- e. On the command **ARMS**, the men to the left and right of the stackman perform the following movements simultaneously:
 - (1) The man on the stackman's left raises and centers his rifle in front of his body so that his right hand is shoulder high and the rifle is about 4 inches from his chest, with the sling to the front. He then grasps the rifle with his left hand at the small of the stock and lowers both arms, holding the weapon in a horizontal position (1, Figure G-5).
 - (2) The man on the stackman's right raises and centers his rifle, wrist shoulder high, with the sling facing the front. He then grasps the rifle with his left hand directly below his right hand, and, in the most convenient manner, grasps the rifle with the right hand at the small of the stock. He then lowers both arms, holding the rifle stock. He then lowers both arms, holding the rifle in a horizontal position (1, Figure G-5).
 - (3) As soon as both men have completed these movements, each moves the foot nearest the stackman 18 inches (*half left or right*) toward the stackman. In a continuing motion, the man on the stackman's left inserts the muzzle of his rifle

into the loop held by the stackman until the bayonet stud protrudes past the far end of the loop (2, Figure G-5). He holds his rifle in that position until the man on the stackman's right inserts the muzzle of his rifle through the loop in the same manner and above the muzzle of the rifle of the left man.

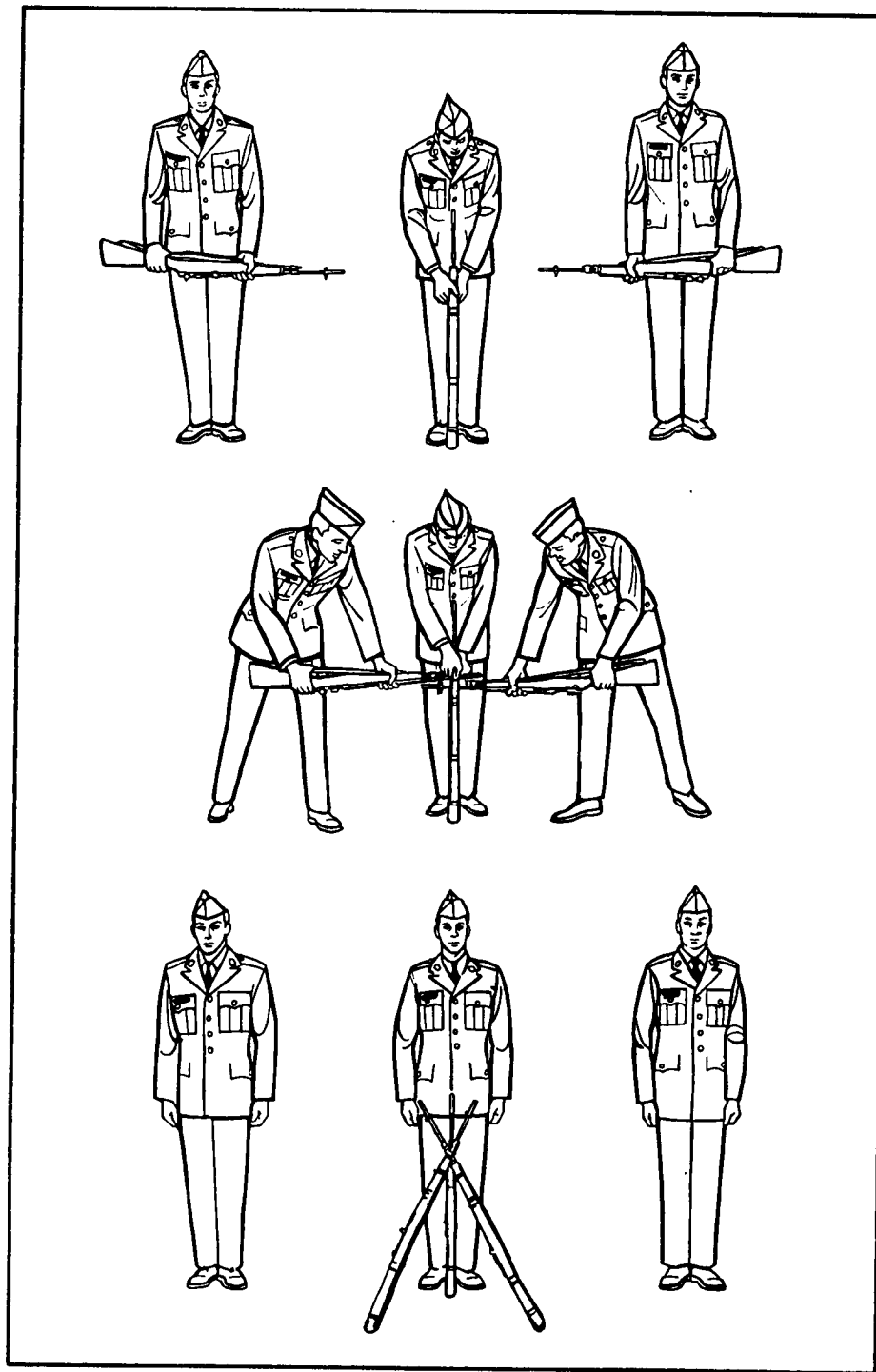


Figure G-5. Stack Arms

- f. When both rifles have been inserted into the loop, the men on each side of the stackman swing the butts of their rifles out and down to the marching surface until the stack is tight with the (two) rifle butts on line and about 2 feet from the baseline.
- g. After necessary adjustments have been made, the three men come to *attention* (3, Figure G-5).
- h. Extra rifles are passed to the nearest stack on the right. As each rifle is passed, it is grasped at the upper part of the handguard with the right hand. Then, with the rifle held vertical, it is passed with fully extended arm to the right front. The man on the right grasps the rifle at the balance with his left hand, brings the rifle to the center of his body, and regrips it at the upper part of the handguard with his right hand. This action continues until the stackman receives the rifle and places it on the stack with his right hand as nearly vertical as possible. He places the rifles on the stack with the slings away from the stack (if the second squad is the stack squad, extra rifles are passed to the left).
- i. To *take arms*, the leader commands **Take, ARMS**.
 - (1) On the command **ARMS**, the stackman passes each extra rifle toward its bearer. The rifles are handled in the manner described for passing them to the stack (left hand at the balance, right hand at the upper part of the handguard). As the men receive their rifles, they come to *order arms*.
 - (2) After all extra rifles have been returned, the stackman grasps the base rifles, holding the loop open as in *stack arms*.

The men to the right and left of the stackman take one step to their left and right fronts, respectively. They reach down, grasp their rifles, and bring the rifles to a horizontal position. The man to the right of the stackman frees his rifle from the stack first. Each man returns to *order arms* after *unsling arms* and retrieves his rifle. He does this by guiding and steadying the rifle with his left hand (as in the next to the last count of *order arms*).
 - (4) The stackman adjusts the sling of his rifle before returning to *order arms*.

APPENDIX H

Manual of Arms—Shotgun (Riot)

H-1. General

- a. Except for *inspection arms*, execute the manual of arms with the shotgun in the same manner as prescribed for the M16 series rifle.
- b. Carry the weapon at the *ready* position when physically guarding prisoners (Figure H-1).

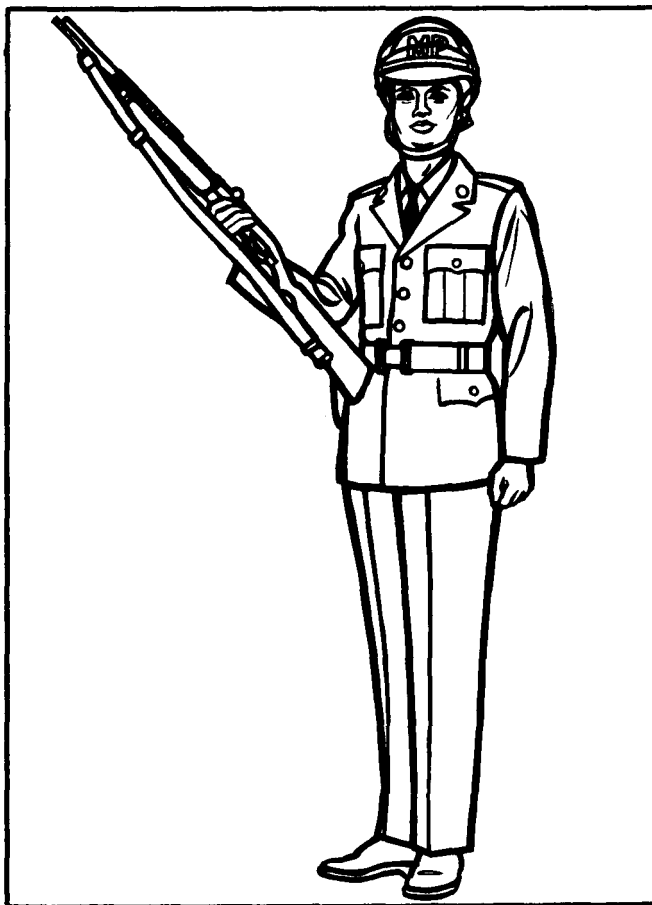


Figure H-1. Ready Position

- c. The courtesy (*salute*) is not rendered to individuals while performing as a prisoner guard; however, during the playing of the National Anthem, "To the Color," "Ruffles and Flourishes," "Reveille," or "Taps," command the prisoners to *attention*, remain *facing* them, and execute *present arms* from the *ready* position.

H-2. Ready Position

- a. Assume the *ready* position in the most convenient manner. Place the butt of the weapon on the right hip and grasp the weapon with the right hand forward of the

trigger guard. Bend the right arm comfortably, and keep the gun barrel at an angle from the body and the muzzle skyward.

- b. To ease fatigue, carry the weapon in the same manner on the left hip.

H-3. Inspection Arms

- a. *Inspection arms* from *order arms* is a three-count movement. The command is **Inspection, ARMS**. On the command of execution **ARMS**, execute *port arms* (M16 series) in two counts. On count three, push the slide to the right with the left hand (over the sling). Twist the weapon to visually inspect the receiver through the ejection port and then come to *inspection arms*.
- b. **Ready, Port, ARMS** is the only command that may be given from *inspection arms*. On the command Ready, take no action. On the command **Port**, move the slide to the left (close the bolt) and place the right forefinger on the trigger. On the command **ARMS**, pull the trigger and come to *port arms*.

APPENDIX I

Manual of Arms—Automatic Pistols

I-1. General

- a. This appendix contains the procedures for executing the manual of arms with automatic pistols (FM 23-35).
- b. All individual drill movements are executed as prescribed with the weapon secure in the holster.
- c. The only manual of arms movements that may be executed are *present arms (hand salute)* and *inspection arms*. During other manual of arms movements, remain at *attention*.
- d. The position of *raised pistol* represents the position of *port arms* when challenging as a sentinel on guard duty.

I-2. Manual Movements

- a. **Present Arms.** The *hand salute* is executed in the same manner as prescribed in individual drill.

- b. **Raised Pistol.**

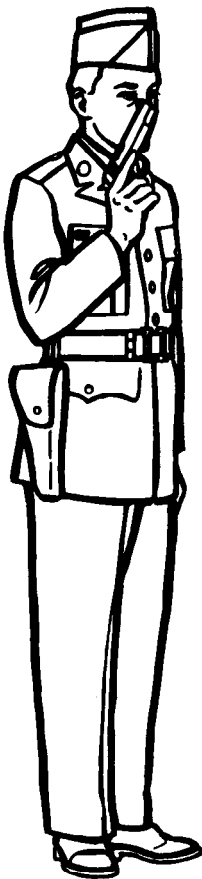
- (1) For instructional purposes, the command ***Raised, PISTOL*** is used to teach individuals the procedures for challenging.
- (2) On the command of execution ***PISTOL***, unbutton the flap of the holster with the right hand and grasp the pistol grip. Withdraw the pistol from the holster, raising the right forearm to the front until the hand is about six inches in front of the right shoulder, and the right elbow is against the right side. Hold the pistol grip in a “U” formed by the thumb and last three fingers. Extend the forefinger outside and alongside the trigger guard. Point the muzzle outward and up at about a 30-degree angle (Figure I-1).
- (3) On the command ***Return, PISTOL***, return the weapon in the most convenient manner to the holster, fasten the flap, and come to *attention*.

- c. **Inspection Arms.**

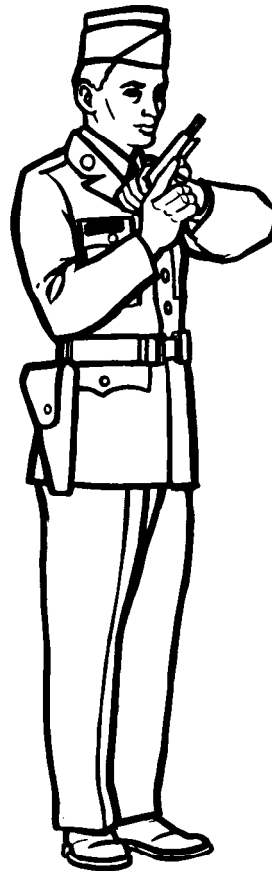
- (1) The command for this movement is ***Inspection, ARMS***. On the command of execution ***ARMS***, execute *raised pistol* and then, without lowering the right hand, reach across the body and grasp the slide with the left thumb and the first two fingers so that the thumb is on the left side of the slide. Shift the grip of the right hand so that the right thumb engages the slide stop. Push the slide fully to the rear and engage the stop in its notch with the right thumb. Return the left hand to the left side and remain at *raised pistol*.
- (2) ***Ready, Port, ARMS*** is the only command that may be given from *inspection arms*. On the command ***Ready***, place the right thumb on the slide stop. On the command ***Port***, press down on the slide stop, allowing the slide to go forward,

and then place the forefinger on the trigger. On the command **ARMS**, pull the trigger and return the weapon to the holster, fasten the flap, and come to *attention*.

- (3) To execute *inspection arms* with the magazine in the weapon, execute *raised pistol* and then remove the magazine and place it between the belt and clothing before locking the slide to the rear. After pulling the trigger, and before returning the pistol to the holster, return the magazine to the weapon.
- (4) If the pistol is inspected in ranks and the inspecting officer takes the weapon, lower the right hand smartly to the right side. When the inspecting officer is ready to return the pistol, raise the right hand back to the raised position and accept the weapon. After the pistol is returned, allow the slide to go forward, pull the trigger, return the pistol to the holster, and come to *attention*.



RAISED PISTOL



INSPECTION ARMS

Figure I-1. Manual of Arms, Automatic Pistols

APPENDIX J

Manual of Arms—Revolver

J-1. General

- a. This appendix contains the procedures for executing the manual of arms with the revolver (FM 23-35).
- b. All individual drill movements are executed as prescribed with the weapon secured in the holster.
- c. The only manual of arms movements that may be executed are *present arms* (*hand salute*) and *inspection arms*. During other manual of arms movements, remain at *attention*.

J-2. Manual Movements

- a. **Present Arms.** The *hand salute* is executed in the same manner as prescribed in individual drill.

- b. **Inspection Arms.**

- (1) On the command of execution **ARMS**, unsnap the holster strap with the right hand and grasp the pistol grip. Withdraw the revolver from the holster and raise the right forearm to the front until the hand is about 6 inches in front of the right shoulder, and the right elbow is against the right side. Hold the pistol grip in a “U” formed by the thumb and last three fingers. Extend the forefinger outside and alongside the trigger guard. Point the muzzle outward and up at about a 30-degree angle (1, Figure J-1). Open the cylinder by operating the thumb latch with the left forefinger (2, Figure J-1), and push the cylinder to the left with the right forefinger. Return the left hand to the left side. Raise the revolver to a point where the cylinder chambers can be visually inspected and checked for clearance (3, Figure J-1). After inspecting the weapon, return (cylinder out) to *raised pistol*.

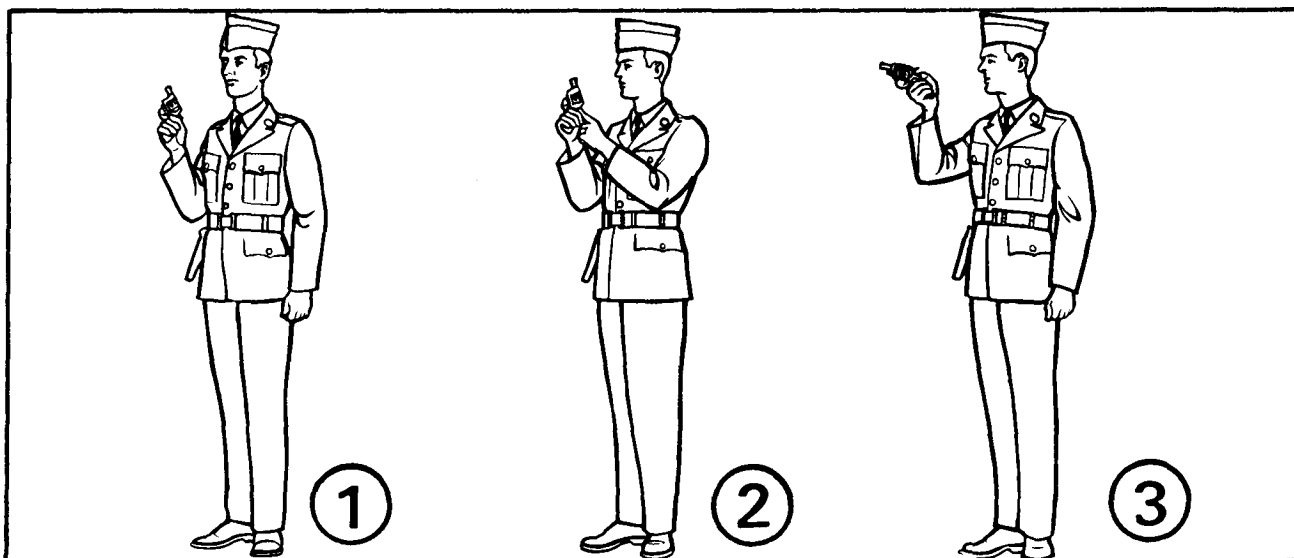


Figure J-1. Inspection Arms

- (2) **Ready, Port, ARMS** is the only command that may be given from *inspection arms*. On the command **Ready**, move the left hand up and across the body and place the left forefinger on the cylinder. On the command **Port**, close the cylinder and return the left hand sharply to the side. On the command **ARMS**, return the revolver to the holster and secure the strap with the right hand and come to *attention*.
- (3) If the revolver is inspected in ranks and the inspecting officer takes the revolver, lower the right hand smartly to the right side. When the inspecting officer is ready to return the revolver, raise the right hand back to the *raised* position and accept the weapon. After the revolver is returned, close the cylinder (left hand), return the weapon to the holster, and come to *attention*.

APPENDIX K

Manual of Arms—Saber and Sword

K-1. General

- a. The nomenclature for the saber is saber, officer, infantry, revolutionary. The blade is 31 inches long. The nomenclature for the sword is sword, infantry, Army, noncommissioned officer, model 1840.
- b. The saber is worn by officers while participating in ceremonies with troops under arms, or as directed. It is earned on the left side of the body attached to the belt by the scabbard chain with the guard of the saber to the rear. The sword is worn by all platoon sergeants and first sergeants while participating in ceremonies with troops under arms, or as directed. It is carried in the same manner as the officer's saber.
- c. Figure K-1 shows the nomenclature for pertinent parts of the saber (sword) and scabbard.

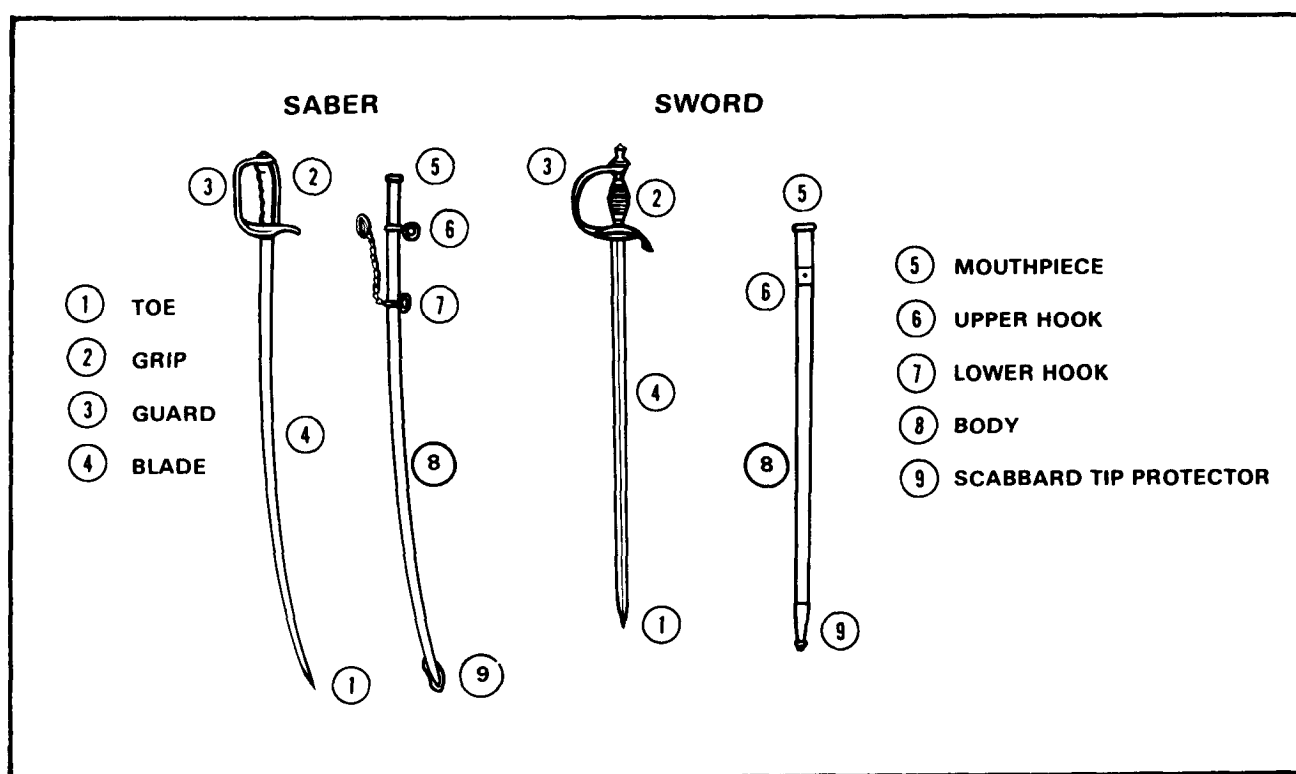


Figure K-1. Nomenclature, Saber and Sword

K-2. Standing Manual of Arms

- a. **Attention.** This is the position before the command **Draw, SABER (SWORD)** and after the command **Return, SABER (SWORD)**. The hands are behind the trouser seams and the thumbs touch the first joint of the forefingers (Figure K-2).

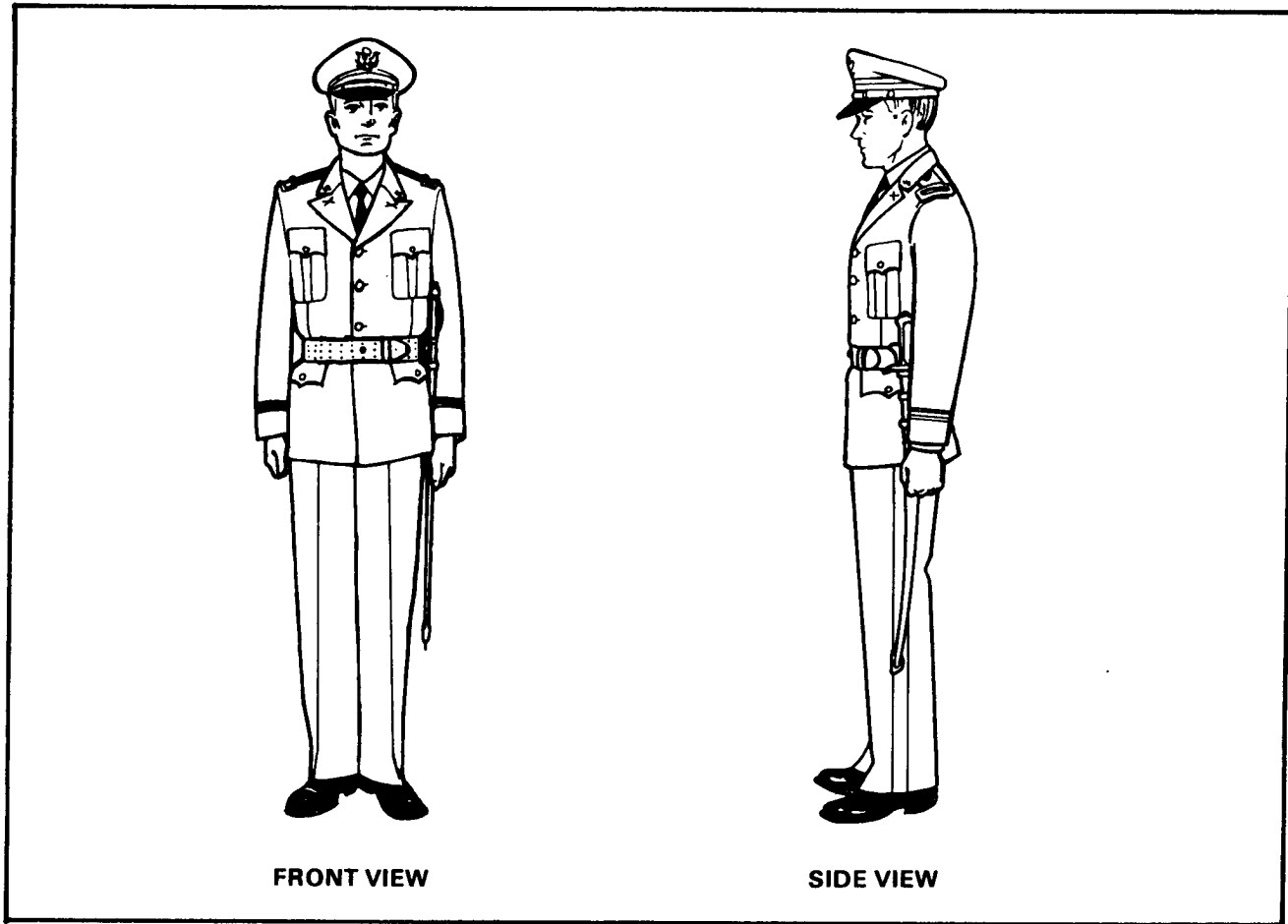


Figure K-2. Position of Attention

b. Draw Saber (Sword).

- (1) Figure K-3 shows the sequence for executing *draw saber (sword)*.
- (2) At the preparatory command **Draw**, grasp the scabbard with the left hand turning the scabbard clockwise 180 degrees, tilting it forward to form an angle of 45 degrees with the ground. Take the saber grip in the right hand and pull the saber about 6 inches from the scabbard. The right forearm should now be roughly parallel to the ground.
- (3) On the command of execution **SABER (SWORD)**, the saber (sword) is pulled out of the scabbard and held in the position of *carry saber (sword)*. The saber (sword) should be held with the inner blade-edge riding in a vertical position along the forward tip of the right shoulder (Figure K-4).

c. Carry Saber (Sword).

- (1) At *carry saber (sword)* (Figure K-4), the officer (NCO) is at the position of *attention*. The saber (sword) is held in the right hand; the wrist is as straight as possible with the thumb along the seam of the trouser leg. The point of the blade

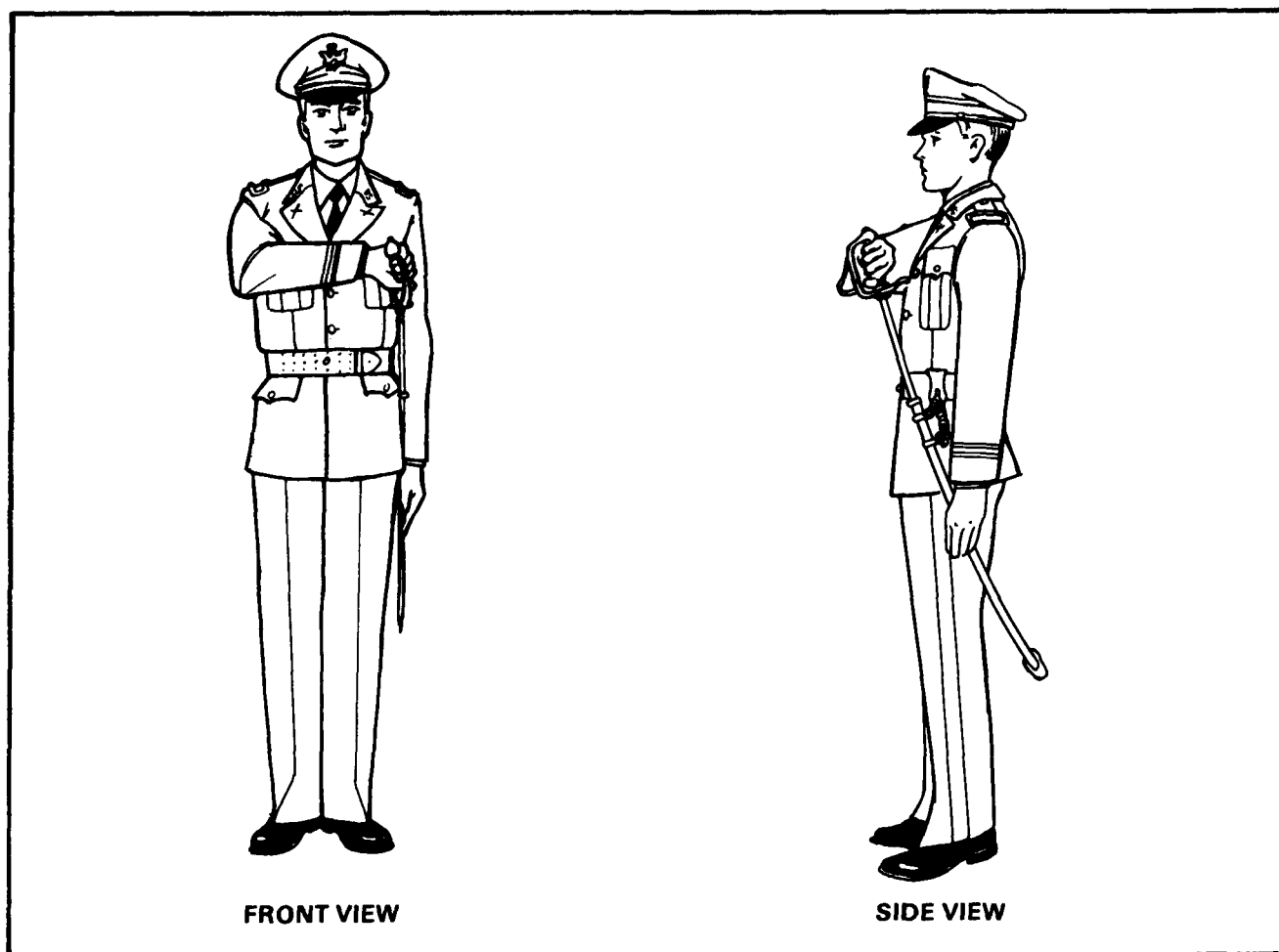


Figure K-3. Draw Saber (Sword)

rests inside the point of the shoulder and not along the arm. The saber (sword) is held in this position by the thumb and forefinger grasping the grip, and it is steadied with the second finger behind the grip.

- (2) The *carry saber (sword)* position is assumed under the following situations:
 - (a) To give commands.
 - (b) To change positions.
 - (c) By officers when officially addressing (or when officially addressed by) another officer, if the saber is drawn.
 - (d) By NCOs when officially addressing a soldier, or when officially addressed by an officer, if the sword is drawn.
 - (e) Before returning the saber (sword) to the scabbard.
 - (f) At the preparatory command for (and while *marching at*) *quick time*.
- (3) *Present saber (sword)* may be executed from the *carry* when serving in the capacity of commander of troops or serving in a command that is not part of a

larger unit. On the preparatory command of **Present**, the saber (sword) is brought to a position (at the rate of two counts) approximately four inches from the nose so that the tip of the saber (sword) is six inches from the vertical (1, Figure K-4). At the command of execution **ARMS**, the right hand is lowered (at the rate of two counts) with the flat of the blade upward, the thumb extended on the left side of the grip (2, Figure K-5), and the tip of the saber (sword) about six inches from the marching surface.

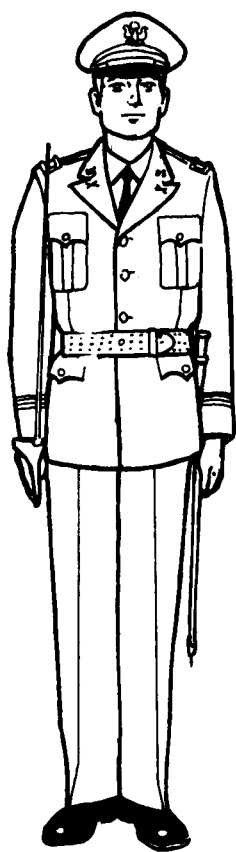


Figure K-4. Carry Saber (Sword)

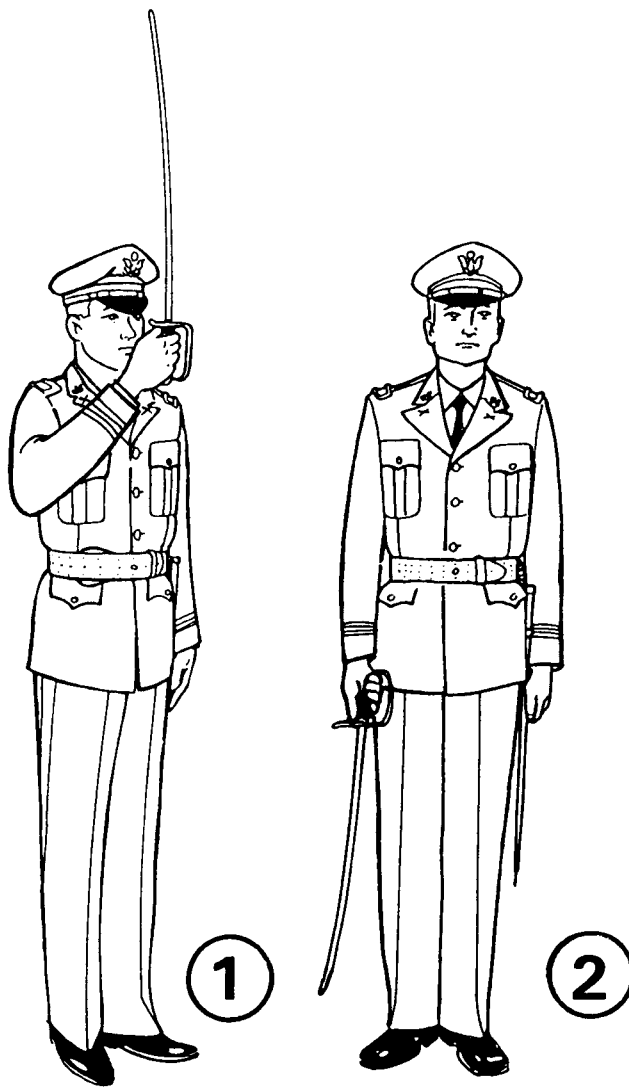


Figure K-5. Present Saber (Sword)

(4) On the command **Order ARMS**, the saber (sword) is returned to the position of *carry saber (sword)*.

d. **Parade Rest.** This position is assumed without moving the saber (sword) from the *order arm* position. At the command of execution, the left foot is moved

about 10 inches to the left (of the right foot), and the left hand is placed in the small of the back, fingers extended and joined, palm to the rear (Figure K-6). At the command of execution **ATTENTION**, the left hand and foot are returned to the position of *attention*.

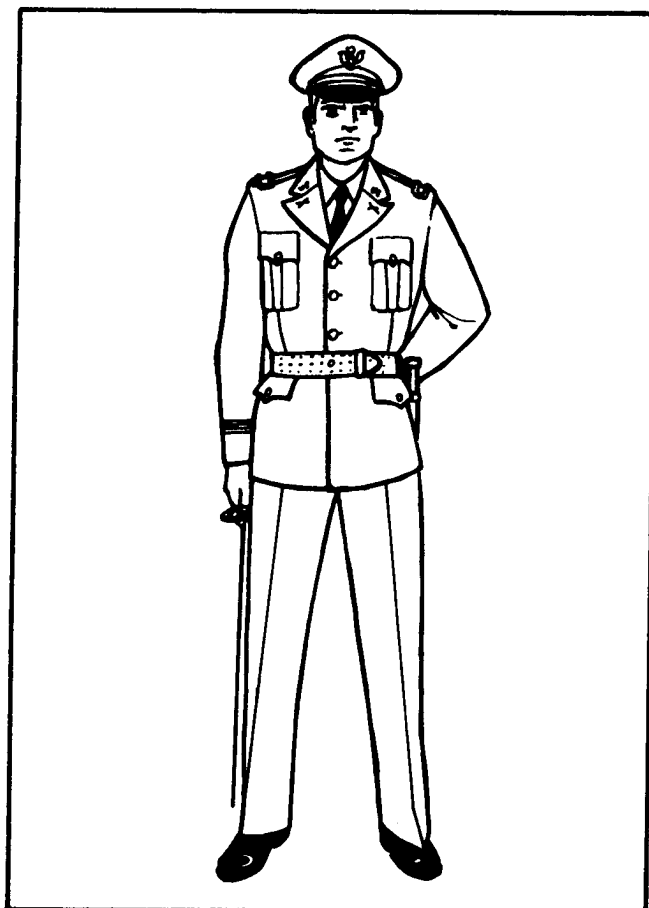


Figure K-6. Parade Rest

NOTE: When ever the saber (sword) is at the *order arms* position the saber (sword) is straight, not at an angle inward or outward in relationship to the body.

e. **Return Saber (Sword).** This movement is executed from *carry saber (sword)* in three counts.

- (1) At the preparatory command **Return** of the command **Officers (Noncommissioned officers), Return, SABER (SWORD)**, the saber (sword) is brought to a vertical position (1, Figure K-7). The forearm (wrist) is held parallel to the marching surface about three inches from the body; the guard is pointed to the left.
- (2) At the command of execution **SABER (SWORD)**, three actions take place simultaneously: the saber (sword) is pivoted downward toward the guard, at the same time grasp the scabbard with the left hand just above the upper brass ring mounting. Tilt it forward and turn it clockwise 180 degrees. The scabbard

should form a 45-degree angle with the ground, and the saber (sword) bearer turns his head to the left and looks down to observe the mouthpiece of the scabbard (the shoulders remain squared to the front and level). As smoothly and as quickly as possible, the saber (sword) is inserted into the scabbard and stopped so that about 12 inches of the blade is showing; the right forearm (wrist) is horizontal to the marching surface and three inches from the body (2, Figure K-7).

- (3) At the command of execution **CUT** of the command **Ready, CUT**, the saber (sword) is thrust smartly into the scabbard, the scabbard is rotated so that its tip is forward, and the saber (sword) bearer comes to *attention* (3, Figure K-7).

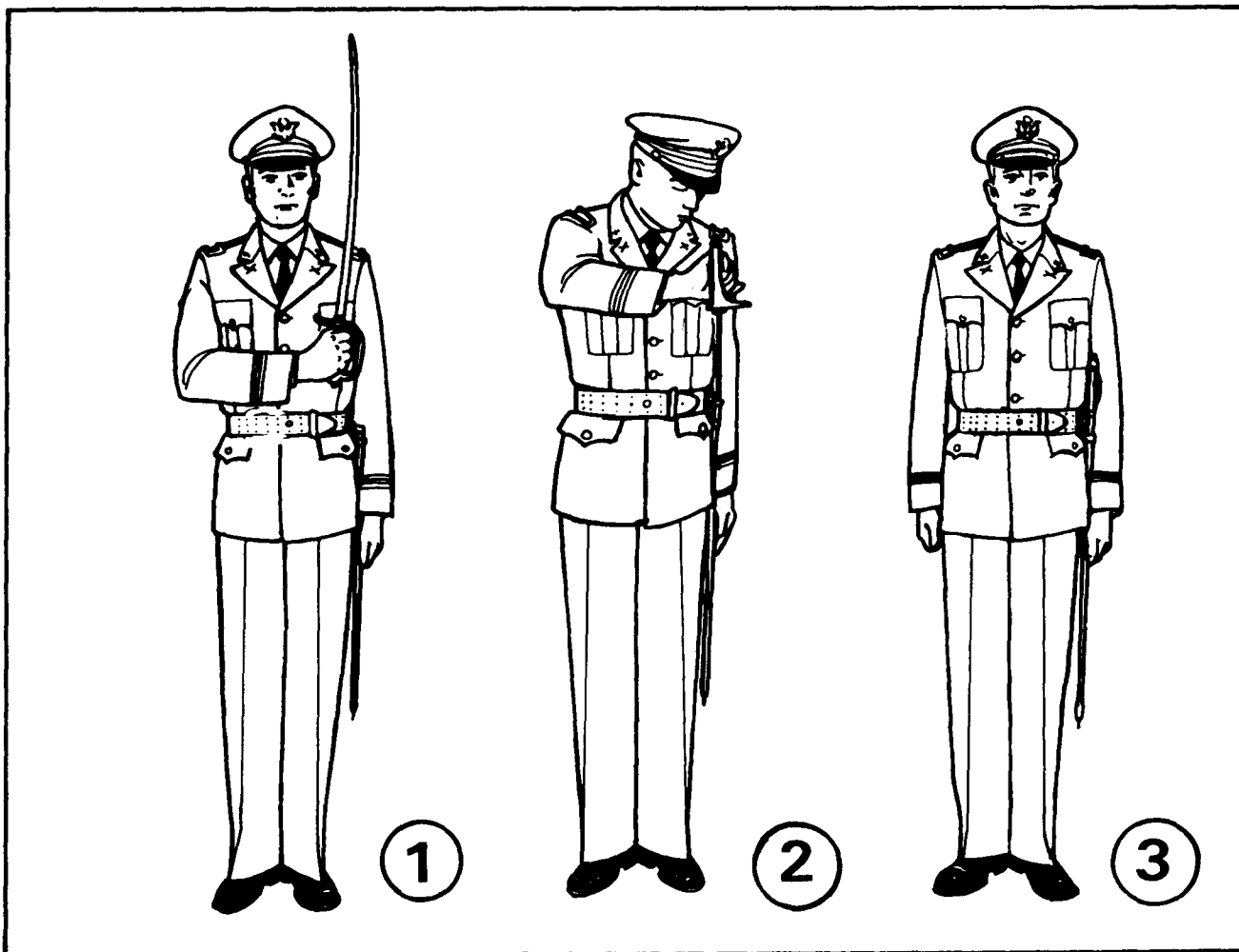


Figure K-7. Return Saber (Sword)

K-3. Marching Manual of Arms

While *marching*, the saber (sword) is carried (Figure K-8) with the inner blade-edge riding in a vertical position along the forward tip of the right shoulder.

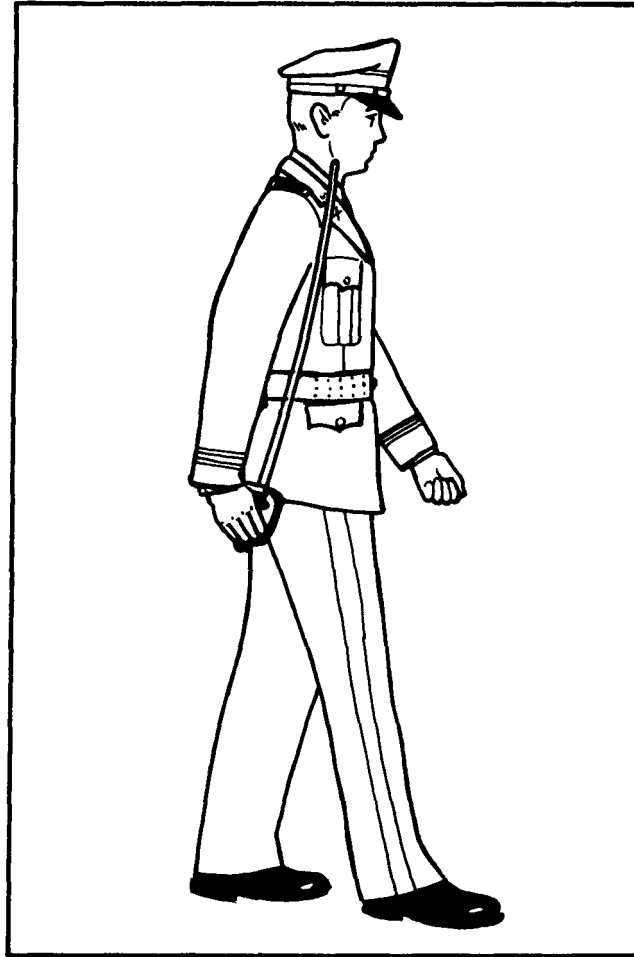


Figure K-8. Marching Position

K-4. Eyes Right While Marching

- a. The command **Eyes, RIGHT** is executed while *marching at carry saber (sword)*. The command **Ready** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface (no action is taken). The second time the right foot strikes the marching surface, the command **Eyes** is given and the saber (sword) is brought to the position (count one position) of *present arms*. No action is taken the third time the right foot strikes the marching surface. The fourth time the right foot strikes the marching surface, the command **Right** is given. As the foot strikes the marching surface, the head is turned sharply to the right at a 45 degree angle, and the saber (sword) is brought downward (Figure K-9).

NOTE: The initial preparatory command *ready* is only used when *marching* with a guidon bearer.

- b. While *marching at present saber (sword)*, the right arm is swung naturally (nine inches to the front and six inches to the rear) in a vertical plane, flexing the wrist to keep the tip of the blade level (about six inches) above the marching surface. This requires extending the wrist on the forward movement and elevating the wrist on the rearward movement.

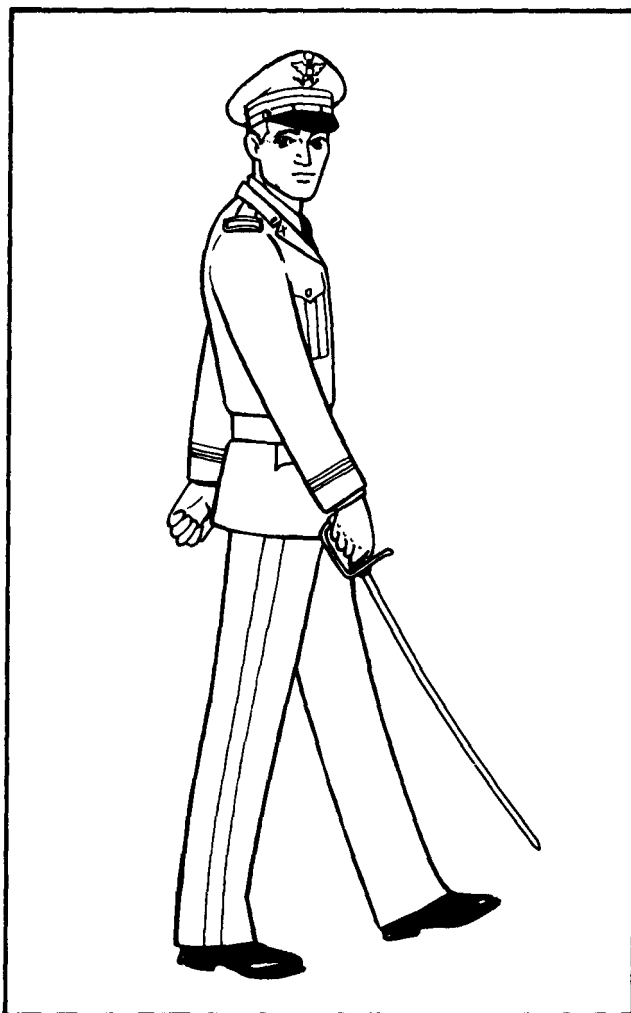


Figure K-9. Eyes Right While Marching

- c. The command **Ready, FRONT** is executed as follows: The command **Ready** is given as the right foot strikes the marching surface (no action is taken). The second time the right foot strikes the marching surface, a second command **Ready** is given (again, no action is taken). The saber (sword) is returned to the *order* position while maintaining the arm swing (subparagraph b) as the right foot strikes the marching surface the third time. The fourth time the right foot strikes the marching surface the command **FRONT** is given. The head is *turned sharply to the front* as the right foot strikes the marching surface and the saber (sword) is returned to the *carry* position the next time the left foot strikes the marching surface.

K-5. Port Arms

Port arms (Figure K-10) is executed on the preparatory command **Double time** of the command **Double time, MARCH**. This position is assumed only from the position of *carry saber (sword)*. The right arm swings naturally across and six inches in front of

the body. The saber (sword) is canted 45 degrees from the vertical with the guard pointed to the left. The left hand grasps the scabbard.

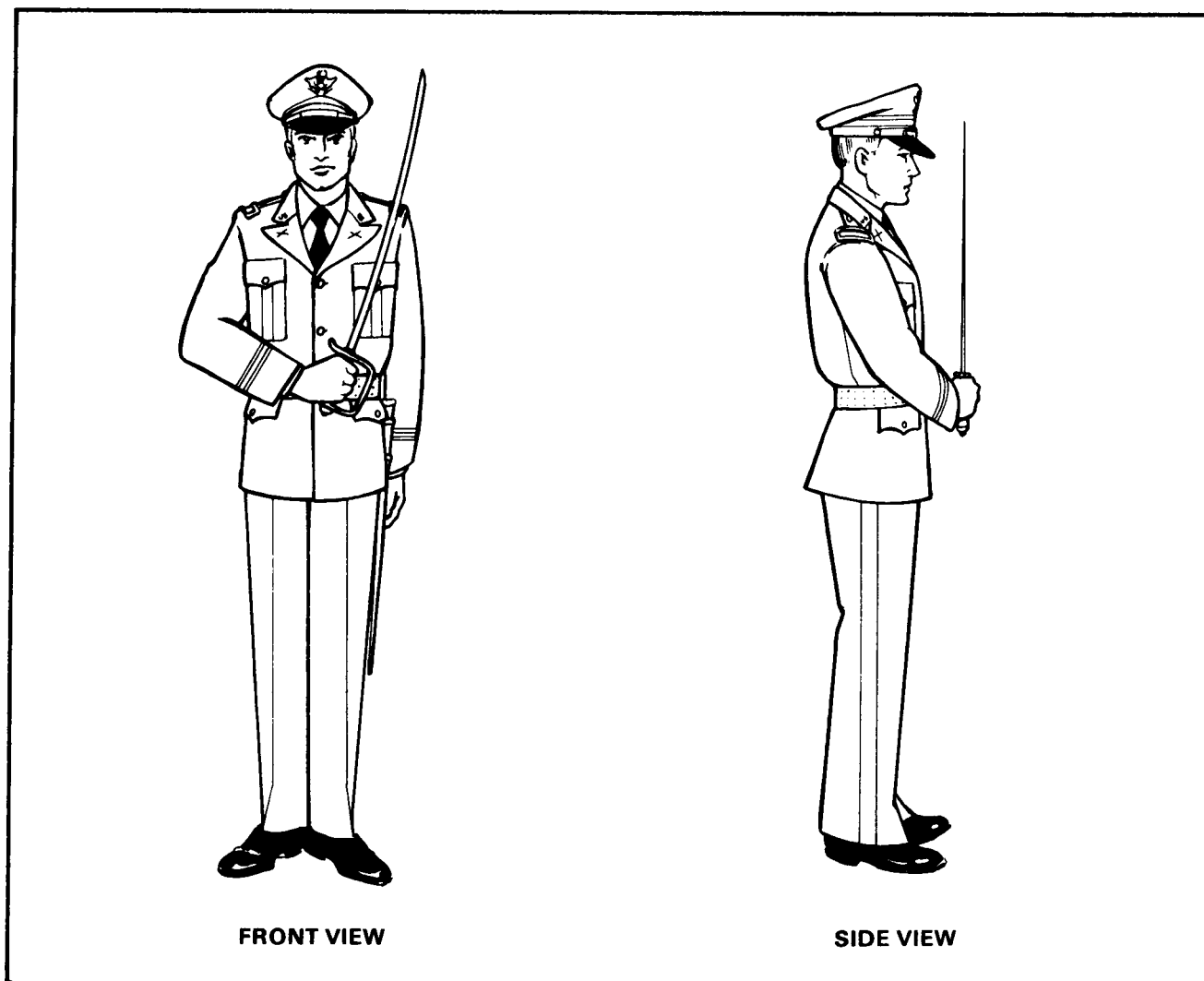


Figure K-10. Port Arms

Glossary

Terminology

alignment. The arrangement of several elements on the same line.

base. The element on which a movement is planned or regulated.

cadence. The uniform rhythm in which a movement is executed, or the number of steps or counts per minute at which a movement is executed. Drill movements are normally executed at the cadence of quick time or double time. Quick time is the cadence of 120 counts or steps per minute; double time is the cadence of 180 counts or steps per minute.

ceremonies. Formations and movements in which a number of troops execute movements in unison and with precision just as in drill; however, their primary value is to render honors, preserve tradition, and stimulate esprit de corps.

commander. Person in charge.

cordon. A line of soldiers to honor a dignitary upon entering or exiting from a given place or vehicle.

cover. Aligning oneself directly behind the man to one's immediate front while maintaining correct distance.

depth. The space from front to rear of a formation, including the front and rear element.

directive. An oral order given by a commander to direct or cause a subordinate leader or lead element to take action.

distance. The space between elements when the elements are one behind the other. Between units, it varies with the size of the formation; between individuals, it is an arm's length to the front plus 6 inches, or about 36 inches, measured from the chest of one man to the back of the man immediately to his front.

drill. Certain movements by which a unit (or individuals) is moved in a uniform manner from one formation to another, or from one place to another. Movements are executed in unison and with precision.

element. An individual, squad, section, platoon, company, or larger unit forming as part of the next higher unit.

file. A column that has a front of one element.

flank. The right or left side of any formation as observed by an element within that formation.

formation. The arrangement of elements of a unit in a prescribed manner:

line. A formation in which the elements are side by side or abreast of each other. In a platoon line, the members of each squad are abreast of each other with the squads one behind the other.

column. A formation in which the elements are one behind the other. In a platoon column, the members of each squad are one behind the other, with the squads abreast of each other. To change a line formation to a column formation, the command is **Right, FACE**. To change a column formation to a line formation, the command is **Left, FACE**.

front. The space from side to side of a formation, including the right and left elements.

guide. The person responsible for maintaining the prescribed direction and rate of march.

head. The leading element of a column.

interval.

close. The lateral space between soldiers, measured from right to left by the soldier on the right placing the heel of his left hand on his hip, even with the top of the belt line, fingers and thumb joined and extended downward, with his elbow in line with the body and touching the arm of the soldier to his left.

double. The lateral space between soldiers, measured from right to left by raising both arms shoulder high with the fingers extended and joined (palms down) so that fingertips are touching the fingertips of the soldiers to the right and to the left.

normal. The lateral space between soldiers, measured from right to left by the soldier on the right holding his left arm shoulder high, fingers and thumb extended and joined, with the tip of his middle finger touching the right shoulder of the soldier to his left.

post. The correct place for an officer or noncommissioned officer to stand in a prescribed formation.

rank. A line that is one element in depth.

re-form. A command to restore the previous element or formation (used only during drill instructions).

step. The prescribed distance measured from one heel to the other heel of a marching soldier.

Acronyms, Abbreviations

NCO — noncommissioned officer.

NCOIC — noncommissioned officer in charge.

ROTC — Reserve Officers' Training Corps.

TOE — table of organization and equipment.

US — United States.

References

REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

NONE

RELATED PUBLICATIONS

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Army Regulations (ARs)

220-90	Bands
310-25	Dictionary of United States Army Terms
310-50	Catalog of Abbreviations and Brevity Codes
600-25	Salutes, Honors, and Visits of Courtesy
670-1	Wear and Appearance of Army Uniforms and Insignia
840-10	Flags, Guidons, Streamers, Tabards, and Automobile and Aircraft Plates

Field Manuals (FMs)

12-50-1	The Marching Band
23-8	M14 and M14A1 Rifles and Rifle Marksmanship
23-9	M16A1 Rifle and Rifle Marksmanship
23-14	M249E1 Squad Automatic Weapons (SAW)
23-31	40-mm Grenade Launchers, M203 and M79
23-35	Pistols and Revolvers

Department of the Army Pamphlets (DA PAMs)

1-1	State, Official, and Special Military Funerals
360-501	Our Flag

- ALIGNING, 5-5, 6-6, 7-5, 7-11**
ARMY FLAG, E-6
AT EASE, 3-3
ATTENTION, 3-2, K-2a
BATTALION
 Column Formation, 8-2
 Dismissing, 8-3
 Forming, 8-3
 Inspecting, 8-4
 Line Formation, 8-2
 Parade, 9-10
BATTERY, SALUTE
 Events
 Conclusion, 9-60g
 Honors, 9-60b, d
 Inspection, 9-60c
 Remarks, 9-60e
 Review, 9-60f
 Preparation, 9-59
BAYONETS
 M14/A1, G-9
 M16A1/A1, 4-10
BRIGADE
 Column Formation, 8-5
 Dismissing, 8-6
 Forming, 8-6
 Line Formation, 8-5
CADENCE, 1-8, 2-11
CHAPLAIN, FUNERAL, 9-38
CIVILIANS
 Awards
 Presenting, 9-64f
 Receiving, 9-65
 Ceremonies, Types of, 9-63
 Honors to, 9-66
COLOR GUARD FORMATIONS
 Colors, Position of at
 Color Salute, 9-57
 Parade Rest, 9-56
 The Carry, 9-55
 The Order, 9-54
 Five-Man, 9-52
 Four-Man, 9-51
 Six-Man, 9-53
 Three-Man, 9-50
COLOR(S)
 Company, 9-48
 Guard
 Casing, Uncasing, 9-47
 Receiving, Dismissing, 9-46
 Posting, Retiring, 9-49a-b
 Salute, 9-44
COMMANDS
 Combined, 2-3
 Directives, 2-6
 Mass, 2-5
 Supplementary, 2-4
 Two-Part, 2-2
 Voice, 2-8 through 2-11
COMMAND RETREAT, 9-18
COMMAND REVEILLE, 9-21
COUNTING OFF, 5-3, 6-4
- DIRECTION IN MARCHING**
 Backward, 3-13
 Facing, 3-15
 Right, Left, 3-12
DRILL
 Demonstrations, 1-3
 Explanation, 1-2
 Instructors, 1-7
 Practice, 1-4
 U-Formations, 1-6
DRILL, COMPANY
 Alignment, 7-5, 7-11
 Changing Interval, 7-4
 Column of Twos, 7-9
 Company Mass, 7-10
 7-12, 7-13
 Correcting Distance,
 Platoons, 7-8
 Direction, Changing, 7-7, 7-12
 Dismissing, 7-15
 Formations, Line, Column, 7-3
 Key Personnel, Posts
 Company Commander, 7-2a
 Executive Officer, 7-2c
 First Sergeant, 7-2d
 Guidon, 7-26
 Officers, Other, 7-2e
 Platoons in Line, 7-14
DRILL, MOUNTED
 Formations, Troop, D-3
 Formations, Vehicle, D-2
 Column
 Line
 Mass
 Movements, Vehicle, D-4
 Reviews, D-5
DRILL, PLATOON
 Aligning, 6-6
 Column, Change
 Direction, 6-12
 Column Formation, 6-1
 Column of Twos, Form,
 re-form, 6-15
 Counting Off, 6-4
 Dismiss, 6-9
 Eyes Right, 6-11
 Flank, March to, 6-13
 Forming the Platoon, 6-2
 Interval, Changing, 6-5
 Line Formation, 6-1
 Ranks, Breaking, 6-3
 Ranks, Open, Close, 6-7
 Rest, 6-8
DRILL, SQUAD
 Aligning, 5-5
 Column of Twos, 5-9
 Count Off, 5-3
 Direction, Change, 5-7
 Dismiss, 5-11
 Forming, 5-2
 Interval, Change, 5-4
 Marching, 5-6, 5-8
 Rest, 5-10
 Stack, Take Arms
 Slings, Prepare, 5-13
 Stack Arms, 5-14
 Take Arms, 5-15
DOUBLE TIME, 3-14
EYES RIGHT, 6-11
FACINGS, 3-4, 3-15
FLAGS, COLORS
 Army, E-6
 Classification, E-5
 Display, E-4
 Individual Courtesies, E-7
 Lowering, E-3
 Raising, E-2
FUNERALS
 Arrangements, 9-39
 Aviation, 9-36
 Cannon Salute, 9-34
 Chaplain, Duties, 9-38
 Chapel Service, 9-30
 Cremation, 9-32
 Firing Party, 9-41
 Flowers, 9-40
 Graveside Service, 9-31
 Off-Post, 9-35
GRENADE LAUNCHER, M203
 Inspection, 4-18c
 Port Arms, 4-18b
 Present Arms, 4-18a
GUIDON
 Carry, C-4
 Order, C-2
 Present, C-6
 Raised, C-5
 Rest, Parade, C-3
 Salute, C-7
HAND SALUTE, 3-5
HONOR GUARD
 Cordon, 9-15
 Event, 9-14
 Purpose, 9-13
INSPECTIONS
 Battalion Formation, 8-4
 Honor Guard, 9-14f through i
 Reviews, 9-3c
 Weapons, F-2, H-3, I-2, J-2
INSPECTIONS, COMPANY
 Field Equipment, 7-16
 In Quarters, 7-18
 In Ranks, 7-17
INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUES
 Cadence, 1-8, 2-11
 Formations, 1-6
 Instructor, 1-7
 Methods, 1-3
INSTRUCTIONS, METHOD OF
 By the Numbers, 1-3c
 Step by Step, 1-3a
 Talk Through, 1-3b

MARCHING

- Backward, 3-13
- Change Step, 3-8
- Double Time, 3-14
- Facing, 3-15
- Forward, Half Step, 3-10
- In Place, 3-11
- Rest Movement, 3-9

MOVEMENTS, STATIONARY

- Attention, 3-2
- Facings, 3-4
- Rest Positions, 3-3
- Salute, Hand, 3-5

PARADE REST, 3-3

PARADES

- Battalion
 - Conclusion, 9-10j
 - Formation, 9-10a
 - Honors, 9-10c
 - Manual of Arms, 9-10e
 - Officer's Center, 9-10h
 - Orders, 9-10g
 - Presentations, 9-10d
 - Report, 9-10f
 - Review, 9-10i
 - Sound Off, 9-10b
- Brigade, 9-11
- Preparation, 9-9
- Street, 9-12

REST POSITIONS

- At Ease, 3-3c
- Parade Rest, 3-3a
- Rest, 3-3d
- Stand at Ease, 3-3b

RETREAT, 9-6, 9-17, 9-23, E-3

REVIEWS

- Battalion, Parade, 9-10i
- Conclusion, 9-3g
- Formation of Troops, 9-3a
- Honors, 9-3b, d
- Inspection, 9-3c
- March In, 9-3f
- Remarks, 9-3e
- Sequence of Events
 - Change of Command, 9-5
 - Decorations, Awards, Retirements, 9-4
 - Retreat, 9-6
- Special, 9-7
- Types of, 9-2

REVEILLE, 9-20, 9-26, E-2

ROUTE STEP, 3-9

SABER, SWORD

- Attention, K-2a
- Carry Saber, K-2c
- Draw Saber, K-2b
- Eyes Right, K-4
- Marching, K-3
- Nomenclature, K-1
- Parade Rest, K-2d
- Port Arms, K-5
- Return Saber, K-2e

SALUTES

- Battery, 9-58
- Color(s), A-8, 9-44
- Formations
 - In, A-7
 - Not In, A-7
- Funeral, Cannon, 9-34
- Reporting
 - For Pay, A-5
 - Indoors, A-3, A-7
 - Outdoors, A-4, A-7
- Ships, Naval, Aboard, A-10
- Vehicles, A-6
- When to, A-2

STACK-TAKE ARMS

- M14/A1, G-11
- M16A1/A2, 5-14, 5-15

STAND AT EASE, 3-3

STAND BY INSPECTION, 7-18

STEPS

- Changing, 3-8
- 15-inch, 3-10, 3-12, 3-13
- Rest, 3-9
- 30-inch, 3-7, 3-14

STREET PARADES, 9-12

UNCOVERING, A-9

VOICE, COMMAND

- Cadence, 2-11
- Control, 2-8
- Distinctive, 2-9
- Inflection, 2-10

WEAPON'S INSPECTION

- M249E1, SAW, F-2
- M14/A1 Rifles, G-8
- M16A1/A2 Rifles, 4-6
- Pistols

- Automatic, I-2
- Revolver, J-2
- Shotgun, H-3

WEAPONS, MANUAL OF ARMS

- M14/A1 Rifles, G-2 through G-7
- M16 Rifles

- Bayonets, 4-10
- Carry Position, 4-12
- Changing Positions, 4-9
- Left Shoulder Arms, 4-8
- Nomenclature, 4-1
- Order Arms, 4-2
- Port Arms, 4-4
- Present Arms, 4-5
- Rest, 4-3
- Right Shoulder Arms, 4-7
- Sling Arms
 - Inspection, 4-16
 - Port Arms, 4-15
 - Salute, 4-14
 - Sling Arms, 4-13

- M249E1, F-1
- Pistols, J-2, I-2
- Shotgun, H-1, H-2

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

JOHN A. WICKHAM, JR.
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

R.L. DILWORTH
Brigadier General, United States Army
The Adjutant General

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, ARNG, and USAR: To be distributed in accordance with DA Form 12-11A, Requirements for Drill and Ceremonies (Qty rgr block no. 178).

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1994 0 - 160-921